DEAR VOLVO OWNER
THANK YOU FOR CHOOSING VOLVO

We hope you will enjoy many years of driving pleasure in your Volvo. The car has been designed for the safety and comfort of you and your passengers. Volvo is one of the safest cars in the world. Your Volvo has also been designed to satisfy all current safety and environmental requirements.

In order to increase your enjoyment of the car, we recommend that you familiarise yourself with the equipment, instructions and maintenance information contained in this owner’s manual.
## Table of contents

### 00 Introduction
- Important information .................................................. 6
- Volvo and the environment .............................................. 10

### 01 Safety
- Seatbelts ........................................................................ 16
- Airbags .......................................................................... 19
- Activating/deactivating the airbag* .................................. 22
- Side airbags (SIPS bags) ................................................... 24
- Inflatable Curtain (IC) ...................................................... 25
- WHIPS ............................................................................ 26
- When the systems deploy .................................................. 28
- Safety mode ..................................................................... 29
- Child safety ..................................................................... 30

### 02 Locks and alarm
- Remote control key/key blade ......................................... 44
- Privacy locking* ............................................................... 50
- Battery replacement, remote control key/PCC* .................. 52
- Keyless drive* ................................................................. 54
- Locking/unlocking ........................................................... 57
- Child safety locks .............................................................. 62
- Alarm* ............................................................................ 63

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
# Table of contents

## 03 Your driving environment
- Instruments and controls........................................ 68
- Volvo Sensus ...................................................... 80
- Key positions.......................................................... 81
- Seats.................................................................. 83
- Steering wheel.......................................................... 88
- Lighting.................................................................. 90
- Wipers and washing.................................................. 102
- Windows, rearview and door mirrors......................... 105
- Compass*............................................................... 110
- Power sunroof*....................................................... 112
- Alcolock*................................................................. 114
- Starting the engine.................................................... 118
- Starting the engine – Flexifuel................................. 122
- Starting the engine – external battery......................... 124
- Gearboxes................................................................. 126
- Start/Stop*................................................................. 134
- All Wheel Drive - AWD*........................................... 140
- Foot brake................................................................. 141
- HDC Hill Descent Control........................................... 143
- Parking brake........................................................... 145
- HomeLink® *............................................................ 149

## 04 Driver support
- DSTC – Stability and traction control system................... 154
- Road sign information - RSI*..................................... 156
- Cruise control*......................................................... 159
- Adaptive cruise control*............................................ 161
- Distance Warning*................................................... 172
- City Safety™.............................................................. 175
- Collision Warning with Auto Brake & Pedestrian Protection*............................ 181
- Driver Alert System*................................................ 189
- Driver Alert System - DAC*......................................... 190
- Driver Alert System - LDW*......................................... 194
- Park assist syst*........................................................ 197
- Park assist camera*................................................... 200
- BLIS*....................................................................... 203

## 05 Comfort and driving pleasure
- Menus and messages.............................................. 210
- Menu source MY CAR............................................. 213
- Climate control....................................................... 221
- Engine and passenger compartment heater*.................. 233
- Additional heater*.................................................... 237
- Trip computer.......................................................... 239
- Adapting driving characteristics.................................. 247
- Comfort inside the passenger compartment.................... 248

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
### Table of contents

#### 06 Infotainment system
- General information on infotainment .................................................. 254
- Radio .................................................................................................. 266
- Media player ....................................................................................... 273
- External audio source via AUX/USB* input ........................................ 277
- Media Bluetooth® ................................................................................ 280
- Bluetooth® handsfree* ....................................................................... 283
- Voice recognition* mobile phone ....................................................... 292
- TV* ....................................................................................................... 296
- Remote control* .................................................................................. 300
- RSE - Rear Seat Entertainment system* ............................................. 302

#### 07 During your journey
- Recommendations during driving ..................................................... 314
- Refuelling ............................................................................................. 317
- Fuel ....................................................................................................... 318
- Loading ................................................................................................. 322
- Cargo area ............................................................................................. 326
- Driving with a trailer ........................................................................... 329
- Towing and recovery ............................................................................ 335

#### 08 Wheels and tyres
- General .................................................................................................. 340
- Changing wheels ................................................................................. 345
- Tyre pressure ......................................................................................... 348
- Warning triangle and first-aid kit* ....................................................... 349
- Emergency puncture repair (TMK)* ..................................................... 350

---

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
09 Maintenance and service
- Engine compartment .................................................. 358
- Lamps ........................................................................ 366
- Wiper blades and washer fluid ..................................... 372
- Battery ........................................................................ 375
- Fuses .......................................................................... 380
- Car care ..................................................................... 392

10 Specifications
- Type designations ............................................................. 400
- Dimensions and weights ................................................ 402
- Engine specifications ...................................................... 408
- Engine oil .................................................................... 410
- Fluids and lubricants ....................................................... 413
- Fuel ............................................................................ 416
- Wheel and tyres, dimensions and pressure ...................... 418
- Electrical system ............................................................. 419
- Type approval ................................................................. 420
- Licenses ..................................................................... 429
- Symbols in the display ..................................................... 432

11 Alphabetical Index
- Alphabetical Index ........................................................ 436
Reading the Owner's Manual

Introduction
A good way of getting to know your new car is to read the owner's manual, ideally before your first journey. This will give you the opportunity to familiarise yourself with new functions, to see how best to handle the car in different situations, and to make the best use of all the car’s features. Please pay attention to the safety instructions contained in the manual.

The specifications, design features and illustrations in this owner's manual are not binding. We reserve the right to make modifications without prior notice.

© Volvo Car Corporation

Option
All types of option/accessory are marked with an asterisk*.

In addition to standard equipment, this manual also describes options (factory fitted equipment) and certain accessories (retrofitted extra equipment).

The equipment described in the owner's manual is not available in all cars - they have different equipment depending on adaptations for the needs of different markets and national or local laws and regulations.

In the event of uncertainty over what is standard or an option/accessory, contact a Volvo dealer.

Special texts

⚠️ WARNING
Warning texts advise of a risk of personal injury.

⚠️ IMPORTANT
Important texts advise of a risk of material damage.

⚠️ NOTE
NOTE texts give advice or tips that facilitate the use of features and functions for example.

Footnote
There is footnote information in the owner's manual that is located at the bottom of the page. This information is an addition to the text that it refers to via a number. If the footnote refers to text in a table then letters are used instead of numbers for referral.

Message texts
Text messages can be shown in the combined instrument panel and in the screen.

These text messages are highlighted in the owner's manual by means of the text being slightly larger and printed in grey. Examples of this are in menu texts and message texts in the screen (e.g. Audio settings).

Decals
The car contains different types of decal which are designed to convey important information in a simple and clear manner. The decals in the car have the following descending degree of importance for the warning/information.

Warning for personal injury

Black ISO symbols on yellow warning field, white text/image on black message field.
Used to indicate the presence of danger.
which, if the warning is ignored, may result in serious personal injury or fatality.

**Risk of property damage**

White ISO symbols and white text/image on black or blue warning field and message field. Used to indicate the presence of danger which, if the warning is ignored, may result in damage to property.

**Information**

White ISO symbols and white text/image on black message field.

**NOTE**

The labels shown in the owner’s manual are not provided as exact reproductions of those in the car. The purpose is to show their approximate appearance and location in the car. The information that applies to your car in particular is available on the label in question in your car.

**Procedure lists**

Procedures where action must be taken in a certain sequence are numbered in the owner’s manual.

1. When there is a series of illustrations for step-by-step instructions each step is numbered in the same way as the corresponding illustration.

A. There are numbered lists with letters adjacent to the series of illustrations where the order of the instructions is not significant.

1. Arrows appear numbered and unnumbered and are used to illustrate a movement.

A. Arrows with letters are used to clarify a movement when the reciprocal order is of no relevance.

If there is no series of illustrations for step-by-step instructions then the different steps are numbered with normal numbers.

**Position lists**

1. Red circles containing a number are used in overview images where different components are pointed out. The number recurs in the position list featured in connection with the illustration that describes the item.
Bulleted lists
A bulleted list is used when there is a list of points in the owner’s manual.

Example:
- Coolant
- Engine oil

Images
The manual’s images are sometimes schematic and may deviate from the car’s appearance depending on equipment level and market.

To be continued
This symbol is located furthest down to the right when a section continues on the following page.

Recording data
Your vehicle contains a number of computers whose function is to continuously check and monitor the vehicle’s operation and functionality. Some of the computers can record information during normal driving if they detect an error. In addition, information is recorded in the event of a collision or incident. Parts of the recorded information are required so that technicians can diagnose and rectify faults in the vehicle during servicing and maintenance and so that Volvo can fulfil legal requirements and other regulations. In addition to this, the information is used for research purposes by Volvo in order to continually develop quality and safety, as the information can contribute to a better understanding of the factors that cause accidents and injuries. The information includes details of the status and functionality of various systems and modules in the vehicle with regard to engine, throttle, steering and brake systems, amongst other things. This information may include details regarding the way the driver drives the vehicle, such as vehicle speed, brake and accelerator pedal use, steering wheel movement and whether or not the driver and passengers have used their seatbelts. For the reasons given this information may be stored in the vehicle’s computers for a certain length of time, but also as a result of a collision or incident. This information may be stored by Volvo as long as it can help to further develop and further enhance safety and quality and as long as there are legal requirements and other regulations that Volvo needs to consider.

Volvo will not contribute to the above-described information being disclosed to third parties without the vehicle owner’s consent. However, due to national legislation and regulations Volvo may be required to disclose such information to authorities such as police authorities, or others who may assert a legal right to have access to it.

To be able to read and interpret the information recorded by the computers in the vehicle requires special technical equipment that Volvo, and workshops that have entered into agreements with Volvo, have access to. Volvo is responsible that the information, which is transferred to Volvo during servicing and maintenance, is stored and handled in a secure manner and that the handling complies with applicable legal requirements. For further information - contact a Volvo dealer.

Accessories and extra equipment
The incorrect connection and installation of accessories can negatively affect the car’s electrical system. Certain accessories only function when their associated software is installed in the car’s computer system. Volvo therefore recommends that you always contact an authorised Volvo workshop before installing accessories which are connected to or affect the electrical system.
**Change of ownership for cars with Volvo On Call***

Volvo On Call is a supplemental service that consists of safety, security and comfort services. If the car has Volvo On Call and there is a change of owner, it is very important that these services are discontinued so that the former owner cannot access the services in the car. Contact an authorised Volvo dealer in the event of a change of ownership.

**Information on the Internet**

At www.volvocars.com there is further information concerning your car.

A QR code reader is required to read the QR code, which is available as a supplemental program for several mobile phones. The QR code reader can be downloaded from App Store or Google Play.
Volvo and the environment

Volvo Cars’ environmental philosophy

Environmental care is one of Volvo Car Corporation’s core values which influence all operations. We also believe that our customers share our consideration for the environment.

Your Volvo complies with strict international environmental standards and is also manufactured in one of the cleanest and most resource-efficient plants in the world. Volvo Car Corporation has global ISO certification, which includes the environmental standard ISO 14001 covering all factories and several of our other units. We also set requirements for our partners so that they work systematically with environmental issues.

Fuel consumption
Volvo cars have competitive fuel consumption in each of their respective classes. Lower fuel consumption generally results in lower emission of the greenhouse gas, carbon dioxide.

It is possible for the driver to influence fuel consumption. For more information read under the heading, Reducing environmental impact.

Efficient emission control
Your Volvo is manufactured following the concept "Clean inside and out" – a concept that encompasses a clean interior environment as well as highly efficient emission control. In many cases the exhaust emissions are well below the applicable standards.

Clean air in the passenger compartment
A passenger compartment filter prevents dust and pollen from entering the passenger compartment via the air intake.
A sophisticated air quality system, IAQS* (Interior Air Quality System) ensures that the incoming air is cleaner than the air in the traffic outside.

The system consists of an electronic sensor and a carbon filter. The incoming air is monitored continuously and if there is an increase in the level of certain unhealthy gases such as carbon monoxide then the air intake is closed. Such a situation may arise in heavy traffic, queues and tunnels for example.

The entry of nitrous oxides, ground-level ozone and hydrocarbons is prevented by the carbon filter.

Interior
The interior of a Volvo is designed to be pleasant and comfortable, even for people with contact allergies and for asthma sufferers. Extreme attention has been given to choosing environmentally-compatible materials.

Volvo workshops and the environment
Regular maintenance creates the conditions for a long service life and low fuel consumption for your car. In this way you contribute to a cleaner environment. When Volvo's workshops are entrusted with the service and maintenance of your car it becomes part of our system. Volvo makes clear demands regarding the way in which our workshops are designed in order to prevent spills and discharges into the environment. Our workshop staff have the knowledge and the tools required to guarantee good environmental care.

Reducing environmental impact
You can easily help reduce environmental impact - here are a few tips:

- Avoid letting the engine idle - switch off the engine when stationary for longer periods. Pay attention to local regulations.
- Drive economically - think ahead.
- Perform service and maintenance in accordance with the owner's manual's instructions - follow the Service and Warranty Booklet's recommended intervals.
- If the car is equipped with an engine block heater*, use it before starting from cold - it improves starting capacity and reduces wear in cold weather and the engine reaches normal operating temperature more quickly, which lowers consumption and reduces emissions.
- High speed increases consumption considerably due to increased wind resistance - a doubling of speed increases wind resistance 4 times.
- Always dispose of environmentally hazardous waste, such as batteries and oils, in an environmentally safe manner. Consult a workshop in the event of uncertainty about how this type of waste should be discarded - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Following this advice can save money, the planet's resources are saved, and the car's durability is extended. For more information and further advice, see the pages 314 and 416.

Recycling
As a part of Volvo's environmental work, it is important that the car is recycled in an environmentally sound manner. Almost all of the car can be recycled. The last owner of the car is therefore requested to contact a dealer for referral to a certified/approved recycling facility.

The owner's manual and the environment
The Forest Stewardship Council® symbol shows that the paper pulp in this publication comes from FSC® certified forests or other controlled sources.
Volvo and the environment
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Seatbelts</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Airbags</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Activating/deactivating the airbag*</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Side airbags (SIPS bags)</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inflatable Curtain (IC)</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WHIPS</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When the systems deploy</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Safety mode</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child safety</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
01 Safety

Seatbelts

**General information**

Heavy braking can have serious consequences if the seatbelts are not used. Ensure that all passengers use their seatbelts.

It is important that the seatbelt lies against the body so it can provide maximum protection. Do not lean the backrest too far back. The seatbelt is designed to protect in a normal seating position.

**Putting on a seatbelt**

Pull the belt out slowly and secure it by pressing its locking tab into the seatbelt buckle. A loud "click" indicates that the belt has locked.

The buckles only fit the intended lock in the rear seat.¹

### Releasing the seatbelt

Press the red button on the seatbelt buckle and then let the belt retract. If the seatbelt does not retract fully, feed it in by hand so that it does not hang loose.

**The seatbelt locks and cannot be withdrawn:**

- if it is pulled out too quickly
- during braking and acceleration
- if the car leans heavily.

**Make sure that you:**

- do not use clips or anything else that can prevent the seatbelt from fitting properly
- ensure that the seatbelt is not twisted or caught on anything
- the hip strap must be positioned low down (not over the abdomen)
- tension the hip strap over the lap by pulling the diagonal shoulder belt up towards the shoulder.

**WARNING**

The seatbelts and airbags interact. If a seatbelt is not used or is used incorrectly, this may diminish the protection provided by the airbag in the event of a collision.

**WARNING**

Each seatbelt is designed for only one person.

**WARNING**

Never modify or repair the seatbelts yourself. Volvo recommends that you contact an authorised Volvo workshop.

If a seatbelt has been subjected to a major load, such as in conjunction with a collision, the entire seatbelt must be replaced. Some of the protective characteristics of the seatbelt may have been lost, even if it appears to be undamaged. In addition, replace the seatbelt if the belt is worn or damaged. The new seatbelt must be type-approved and intended for installation in the same position as the replaced seatbelt.

¹ Certain markets.
Seatbelts and pregnancy

The seatbelt should always be worn during pregnancy. But it is crucial that it be worn in the correct way. The diagonal section should wrap over the shoulder then be routed between the breasts and to the side of the abdomen.

The lap section should lay flat over the thighs and as low as possible under the abdomen. – It must never be allowed to ride upward. Remove the slack from the seatbelt and ensure that it fits as close to the body as possible. In addition, check that there are no twists in the seatbelt.

As the pregnancy progresses, pregnant drivers should adjust their seats and steering wheel such that they can easily maintain control of the vehicle as they drive (which means that they must be able to easily operate the foot pedals and steering wheel). The aim should be to position the seat with as large a distance as possible between abdomen and steering wheel.

Seatbelt reminder

Unbelted occupants will be reminded to fasten their seatbelts by means of an audio and visual reminder. The audible reminder is speed dependent, and in some cases time dependent. The visual reminder is located in the roof console and in the combined instrument panel.

Child seats are not covered by the seatbelt reminder system.

Rear seat

The seatbelt reminder in the rear seat has two subfunctions:

- Provides information on which seatbelts are being used in the rear seat. A message appears in the combined instrument panel when the seatbelts are in use, or if one of the rear doors has been opened. The message is cleared automatically after driving for approximately 30 seconds or after pressing the indicator stalk’s OK button.
- Provides a warning if one of the rear seatbelts is unfastened during travel. This warning takes the form of a message in the combined instrument panel along with the audio/visual signal. The warning stops when the seatbelt is re-fastened, or it can also be acknowledged manually by pressing the OK button.

The message in the combined instrument panel showing which seatbelts are in use is always shown. Press the OK button to see stored messages.
01 Safety

Seatbelts

Certain markets
An acoustic signal and indicator lamp remind the driver and front seat passenger to use a seatbelt if either of them is not wearing one. At low speed, the audible reminder will sound for the first 6 seconds.

Seatbelt tensioner
All the seatbelts are equipped with belt tensioners. A mechanism in the seatbelt tensioner tightens the seatbelt in the event of a sufficiently violent collision. The seatbelt then provides more effective restraint for the occupants.

WARNING
Never insert the tongue of the passenger’s seatbelt into the buckle on the driver’s side. Always insert the tongue of the seatbelt into the buckle on the correct side. Do not make any damages on seatbelts nor insert any foreign objects into a buckle. The seatbelts and buckles would then possibly not function as intended in the event of a collision. There is a risk of serous injury.
**Warning symbol in combined instrument panel**

Analogue combined instrument panel.

Digital combined instrument panel.

The warning symbol in the combined instrument panel illuminates when the remote control key is in key position II. The symbol clears after approx. 6 seconds provided the airbag system is fault-free.

**WARNING**

If the warning symbol for the airbag system remains illuminated or illuminates while driving, it means that the airbag system does not have full functionality. The symbol indicates a fault in the seatbelt tensioner system, SIPS, the IC system or some other fault in the system. Volvo recommends that you contact an authorised Volvo workshop immediately.

As well as the warning symbol, a message may appear on the information display in appropriate cases. If the warning symbol malfunctions, the warning triangle illuminates and **SRS airbag Service required** or **SRS airbag Service urgent** appears in the display. Volvo recommends that you contact an authorised Volvo workshop immediately.

**Airbag system**

Airbag system, left-hand drive car.

Airbag system, right-hand drive car.

The system consists of airbags and sensors. A sufficiently violent collision trips the sensors and the airbag(s) are inflated and become...
Airbags

hot. To cushion the impact, the airbag deflates when compressed. When this occurs, smoke escapes into the car. This is completely normal. The entire process, including inflation and deflation of the airbag, occurs within tenths of a second.

**WARNING**

Volvo recommends that you contact an authorised Volvo workshop for repair. Defective work in the airbag system could cause malfunction and result in serious personal injury.

**NOTE**

The detectors react differently depending on the nature of the collision and whether or not the seatbelts are fastened. Applies to all belt positions.

It is therefore possible that only one (or none) of the airbags may inflate in a collision. The detectors sense the force of the collision on the vehicle and the action is adapted accordingly so that one or more airbags are deployed.

**WARNING**

The seatbelts and airbags interact. If a seatbelt is not used or is used incorrectly, this may diminish the protection provided by the airbag in the event of a collision.

**Airbag on the driver’s side**

The car has an airbag to supplement the protection afforded by the seatbelt on the driver’s side. It is folded up into the centre of the steering wheel. The steering wheel is marked AIRBAG.

**Passenger airbag**

The car has an airbag to supplement the protection afforded by the seatbelt on the passenger side. It is folded up into a compartment above the glovebox. Its cover panel is marked AIRBAG.

**WARNING**

The seatbelts and airbags interact. If the belt is not used or is used incorrectly, this may diminish the protection provided by the airbag in the event of a collision.

To minimise the risk of injury if the airbag deploys, passengers must sit as upright as possible with their feet on the floor and backs against the backrest. Seatbelts must be secured.
**WARNING**

Do not put objects in front of or above the dashboard where the passenger airbag is located.

**WARNING**

Never place a child in a child seat or on a booster cushion in the front seat if the airbag is activated.

Never allow anybody to stand or sit in front of the front passenger seat.

No one shorter than 140 cm should ever sit in the front passenger seat if the airbag is activated.

Failure to follow the advice given above can endanger life.
Activating/deactivating the airbag*

**Key switch off - PACOS***

**General information**
The airbag for the front passenger seat can be deactivated if the car is equipped with a switch, PACOS (Passenger Airbag Cut Off Switch). For information on how to activate/deactivate, see under the heading Activating/deactivating.

**Key switch off/switch**
The switch for the passenger airbag (PACOS) is located on the passenger end of the instrument panel and is accessible when the passenger door is open (see under the heading below, Activating/deactivating).

Check that the switch is in the required position. The remote control key’s key blade should be used to change position.

For information on the key blade, see page 48.

**WARNING**
Failure to follow the advice given above could endanger the life of passengers in the car.

---

**WARNING**
If the car is equipped with a front passenger airbag, but does not have a PACOS switch (Passenger Airbag Cut Off Switch), then the airbag will always be activated.

**WARNING**
Never place a child in a child seat or on a booster cushion in the front seat if the airbag is activated and the symbol in the roof console is illuminated. Failure to follow this advice could endanger the life of the child.

**WARNING**
Do not allow anyone to sit in the front passenger seat if the message in the roof console (see page 23) indicates that the airbag is deactivated, and if the warning symbol for the airbag system is also displayed in the combined instrument panel. This indicates that there has been a severe malfunction. Visit a workshop as soon as possible. Volvo recommends that you contact an authorised Volvo workshop.

---

### Activating/deactivating

#### Location of airbag label plus switch.

**A** The airbag is activated. With the switch in this position, persons taller than 140 cm can sit in the front passenger seat, but never children in a child seat or on a booster cushion.

**B** The airbag is deactivated. With the switch in this position, children in a child seat or on a booster cushion can sit in the front passenger seat, but never persons taller than 140 cm.
**WARNING**

**Activated airbag** (passenger seat):  
Never place a child in a child seat or on a booster cushion on the front passenger seat when the airbag is activated. This applies to everyone shorter than 140 cm.  

**Deactivated airbag** (passenger seat):  
No one taller than 140 cm should ever sit in the front passenger seat when the airbag is deactivated.  

Failure to follow the advice given above can endanger life.

**NOTE**

When the remote control key is in key position II the warning symbol for the airbag is shown in the combined instrument panel for approx. 6 seconds (see page 19).  

Following which, the indicator in the roof console is illuminated showing the correct status for the front passenger seat airbag. For more information about the different key positions for the remote control key, see page 81.

---

**Activated airbag**

Indicator showing that the passenger airbag is activated.  
A warning symbol in the roof console indicates that the airbag for the front passenger seat is activated (see preceding illustration).

**Deactivated airbag**

Indicator showing that the passenger airbag is deactivated.  
A text message and a symbol in the roof console indicate that the airbag for the front passenger seat is deactivated (see preceding illustration).  

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
Side airbags (SIPS bags)

Side airbag

In a side impact collision a large proportion of the collision force is transferred by the SIPS (Side Impact Protection System) to beams, pillars, the floor, the roof and other structural parts of the body. The side airbags at the driver’s and front passenger seats protect the chest area and the hip and are an important part of the SIPS.

The SIPS bag system consists of two main components, side airbag and sensors. The side airbags are located in the front seat backrests.

Location

Driver’s seat, left-hand drive.

Front passenger seat, left-hand drive.

The SIPS bag system consists of side airbags and sensors. A sufficiently violent collision trips the sensors and the side airbags are inflated. The airbag inflates between the occupant and the door panel and thereby cushions the initial impact. The airbag deflates when compressed by the collision. The side airbag is normally only deployed on the side of the collision.

Child seats and side airbags

The protection provided by the car to children seated in a child seat or on a booster cushion is not diminished by the side airbag.

WARNING

- Volvo recommends that repairs are only carried out by an authorised Volvo workshop. Defective work in the SIPS-bag system could cause malfunction and result in serious personal injury.
- Do not put objects in the area between the outside of the seat and the door panel, since this area is required by the side airbag.
- Volvo recommends the use only of car seat covers approved by Volvo. Other seat covers may impede the operation of the side airbags.
- Side airbags are a supplement the seatbelts. Always use a seatbelt.
Properties

The inflatable curtain IC (Inflatable Curtain) is a part of SIPS and the airbags. It is fitted in the headlining along both sides of the roof and protects the car’s occupants sitting in the outer seats. A sufficiently violent collision trips the sensors and the inflatable curtain is inflated. The inflatable curtain helps to prevent the driver and passengers from striking their heads on the inside of the car during a collision.

⚠️ WARNING

Never hang or attach heavy items onto the handles in the roof. The hook is only designed for light clothing (not for solid objects such as umbrellas for example).

Do not screw or install anything onto the car’s headlining, door pillars or side panels. This could compromise the intended protection. Volvo recommends that you only ever use Volvo genuine parts that are approved for placement in these areas.

⚠️ WARNING

Do not load the car higher than 50 mm under the top edge of the door windows. Otherwise, the intended protection of the inflatable curtain, which is concealed in the headlining, may be compromised.

⚠️ WARNING

The inflatable curtain is a supplement to the seatbelts.

Always use a seatbelt.
Protection against whiplash injury – WHIPS

The whiplash protection system (WHIPS) consists of energy absorbing backrests and specially designed head restraints in the front seats. The system is actuated by a rear-end collision, where the angle and speed of the collision, and the nature of the colliding vehicle all have an influence.

**WARNING**
The WHIPS system is a supplement to the seatbelts. Always use a seatbelt.

**Properties of the seat**
When the WHIPS system is deployed, the front seat backrests are lowered backward to alter the seating position of the driver and front seat passenger. This reduces the risk of whiplash injury.

**WARNING**
Never modify or repair the seat or WHIPS system yourself. Volvo recommends that you contact an authorised Volvo workshop.

**WHIPS system and child seats/booster cushions**
The protection provided by the car to children seated in a child seat or on a booster cushion is not diminished by the WHIPS system.

**Correct seating position**
For the best possible protection, the driver and front seat passenger should sit in the centre of the seat with as little space as possible between the head and the head restraint.

**Do not obstruct the WHIPS system**

Do not leave any objects on the floor behind the driver’s seat/passenger seat that may prevent the WHIPS system from functioning.

**WARNING**
Do not squeeze rigid objects between the rear seat cushion and the front seat backrest. Make sure you do not to obstruct the function of the WHIPS system.
Do not place objects on the rear seat that may prevent the WHIPS system from functioning.

**WARNING**

If a rear seat backrest is folded down, the corresponding front seat must be moved forward so that it does not touch the folded backrest.

**WARNING**

If a seat has been subjected to extreme forces, such as due to a rear-end collision, the WHIPS system must be checked. Volvo recommends that it is checked by an authorised Volvo workshop.

Part of the WHIPS system’s protective capacity may have been lost even if the seats appear to be undamaged.

Volvo recommends that you contact an authorised Volvo workshop to have the system checked even after a minor rear-end collision.
# When the systems deploy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>System</th>
<th>Triggered</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Seatbelt tensioner, front seat</td>
<td>In the event of a frontal collision, and/or side-impact collision, and/or rear-end collision and/or overturning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seatbelt tensioner, rear seat</td>
<td>In a frontal collision and/or side-impact accident and/or overturning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Airbags (Steering wheel and passenger airbag)</td>
<td>In a frontal collision(^A)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Side airbags (SIPS)</td>
<td>In a side-impact accident(^A)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inflatable Curtain IC</td>
<td>In the event of a side-impact collision and/or certain frontal collisions(^A)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Whiplash protection WHIPS</td>
<td>In a rear-end collision</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^A\) The bodywork of the car could be greatly deformed in a collision without airbag deployment. A number of factors such as the rigidity and weight of the object hit, the speed of the car, the angle of the collision etc. affects how the different safety systems of the car are activated.

If the airbags have deployed, the following is recommended:

- Recovering the car. Volvo recommends that you have it conveyed to an authorised Volvo workshop. Do not drive with deployed airbags.
- Volvo recommends that you engage an authorised Volvo workshop to handle the replacement of components in the car's safety systems.
- Always contact a doctor.

### NOTE

The airbags and belt tensioner system are deployed only once during a collision.

### WARNING

Never drive with deployed airbags. They can make steering difficult. Other safety systems may also be damaged. The smoke and dust created when the airbags are deployed can cause skin and eye irritation/injury after intensive exposure. In case of irritation, wash with cold water. The rapid deployment sequence and airbag fabric may cause friction and skin burns.
Driving after a collision

If the car is involved in a collision, the text "Safety mode See manual" may appear on the information display. This means that the car has reduced functionality. Safety mode is a protective state that is enforced when the collision may have damaged any of the car’s vital functions, such as the fuel lines, sensors for one of the safety systems, or the brake system.

**Attempting to start the car**

First, check that no fuel is leaking from the car. There must be no smell of fuel either.

If everything seems normal and you have checked for indications of fuel leakage, you may attempt to start the car.

Remove the remote control key and open the driver’s door. If a message is now shown to the effect that the ignition is on, press the start button. Then close the door and reinsert the remote control key. The car's electronics will now try to reset themselves to normal mode. Then try to start the car.

If the message "Safety mode See manual" is still shown on the display then the car must not be driven or towed, but a vehicle recovery service used instead, see page 336. Hidden damage can make the car impossible to manoeuvre during the journey, even if the car seems driveable.

**Moving the car**

If Normal mode is shown after Safety mode See manual has been reset, the car can be moved carefully out of a dangerous position. Do not move the car further than necessary.

**WARNING**

Never attempt to repair your car or reset the electronics yourself if the car has been in safety mode. This could result in personal injury or the car not functioning as normal. Volvo recommends that you engage an authorised Volvo workshop to check and restore the car to normal status after Safety mode See manual has been displayed.

**WARNING**

Never, under any circumstances, attempt to restart the car if it smells of fuel when the Safety mode See manual message is displayed. Leave the car at once.

**WARNING**

If the car is in safety mode it must not be towed. It must be transported from its location. Volvo recommends that it is transported to an authorised Volvo workshop.
Children should sit comfortably and safely

Volvo recommends that children travel in rear-facing child seats until as late an age as possible, at least until 3-4 years of age, and then front-facing booster cushions/child seats until up to 10 years of age.

The position of a child in the car and the choice of equipment are dictated by the child's weight and size, for more information, see page 31.

NOTE
Regulations regarding the placement of children in cars vary from country to country. Check what does apply.

Children of all ages and sizes must always sit correctly secured in the car. Never allow a child to sit on the knee of a passenger.

Volvo has child safety equipment (child seats, booster cushions & attachment devices) which is designed for your particular car. Using Volvo's child safety equipment provides you with optimum conditions for your child to travel safely in the car. Furthermore, the child safety equipment fits and is easy to use.

NOTE

In the event of questions when fitting child safety products, contact the manufacturer for clearer instructions.

Child seats

Child seats and airbags are not compatible.

NOTE
When using child safety products it is important to read the installation instructions included.

WARNING

Do not secure the straps of the child seat to the seat's horizontal adjustment bar, springs or the rails and beams under the seat. Sharp edges may damage the straps.

Look in the installation instructions for the child seat for the correct fitting.

Location of child seats

You may place:

- a child seat/booster cushion on the passenger seat, provided the passenger airbag is not activated.
- one or more child seats/booster cushions in the rear seat.

Always fit child seats/booster cushions in the rear seat if the passenger airbag is activated. If a child is sitting on the front passenger seat then he/she could suffer serious injury if the airbag deploys.

1 For information on activated/deactivated airbag, see page 22.
**WARNING**

Never place a child in a child seat or on a booster cushion in the front seat if the airbag (SRS) is activated.

No one shorter than 140 cm should ever sit in the front passenger seat if the airbag (SRS) is activated.

Failure to follow the advice given above can endanger life.

---

**WARNING**

Booster cushions/child seats with steel braces or some other design that could rest on the seatbelt buckle's opening button must not be used, as they could cause the seatbelt buckle to open accidentally.

Do not allow the upper section of the child seat to rest against the windscreen.

---

**Label Airbag**

The label becomes visible when the passenger door is opened; see the illustration on page 22.

---

**Recommended child seats**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Weight</th>
<th>Front seat (with deactivated airbag)</th>
<th>Outer rear seat</th>
<th>Centre rear seat</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Group 0</td>
<td>Volvo infant seat (Volvo Infant Seat) - rear-facing child seat, secured with the car's seatbelt. Type approval: E1 04301146 (U)</td>
<td>Volvo infant seat (Volvo Infant Seat) - rear-facing child seat, secured with the ISOFIX fixture system. Type approval: E1 04301146 (L)</td>
<td>Volvo infant seat (Volvo Infant Seat) - rear-facing child seat, secured with the car's seatbelt. Type approval: E1 04301146 (U)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>max 10 kg</td>
<td>Type approval: E1 04301146 (U)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group 0+</td>
<td>Volvo infant seat (Volvo Infant Seat) - rear-facing child seat, secured with the car's seatbelt. Type approval: E1 04301146 (U)</td>
<td>Volvo infant seat (Volvo Infant Seat) - rear-facing child seat, secured with the car's seatbelt. Type approval: E1 04301146 (U)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>max 13 kg</td>
<td>Type approval: E1 04301146 (U)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

2 With regard to other child seats your car should be included in the manufacturer's enclosed list of vehicles or be universally approved in accordance with the ECE R44 legal requirement.
## Child safety

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Weight</th>
<th>Front seat (with deactivated airbag)</th>
<th>Outer rear seat</th>
<th>Centre rear seat</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Group 0 max 10 kg</td>
<td>Rear-facing child seat (Child Seat) - rear-facing child seat, secured with the car’s seatbelt and straps. Use a protective cushion between the child seat and the dashboard. Type approval: E5 03135 (L)</td>
<td>Rear-facing child seat (Child Seat) - rear-facing child seat, secured with the car’s seatbelt and straps. Type approval: E5 03135 (L)</td>
<td>Rear-facing child seat (Child Seat) - rear-facing child seat, secured with the car’s seatbelt and straps. Type approval: E5 03135 (L)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group 0+ max 13 kg</td>
<td>Child seats which are universally approved. (U)</td>
<td>Child seats which are universally approved. (U)</td>
<td>Child seats which are universally approved. (U)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group 1 9-18 kg</td>
<td>Volvo rear-facing/turnable child seat (Volvo Convertible Child Seat) - rear-facing child seat, secured with the car’s seatbelt and straps. Type approval: E5 04192 (L)</td>
<td>Volvo rear-facing/turnable child seat (Volvo Convertible Child Seat) - rear-facing child seat, secured with the car’s seatbelt and straps. Type approval: E5 04192 (L)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Child safety

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Weight</th>
<th>Front seat (with deactivated airbag)</th>
<th>Outer rear seat</th>
<th>Centre rear seat</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Group 1</td>
<td>Rear-facing child seat (Child Seat) - rear-facing child seat, secured with the car’s seatbelt and straps. Use a protective cushion between the child seat and the dashboard. Type approval: E5 03135 (L)</td>
<td>Rear-facing child seat (Child Seat) - rear-facing child seat, secured with the car’s seatbelt and straps. Type approval: E5 03135 (L)</td>
<td>Rear-facing child seat (Child Seat) - rear-facing child seat, secured with the car’s seatbelt and straps. Type approval: E5 03135 (L)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9-18 kg</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group 1</td>
<td>Britax Fixway – rear-facing child seat, secured with the ISOFIX fixture system and straps. Type approval: E5 03171 (L)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9-18 kg</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group 1</td>
<td>Child seats which are universally approved. (U)</td>
<td>Child seats which are universally approved. (U)</td>
<td>Child seats which are universally approved. (U)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9-18 kg</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group 2</td>
<td>Volvo rear-facing/turnable child seat (Volvo Convertible Child Seat) - rear-facing child seat, secured with the car’s seatbelt and straps. Type approval: E5 04192 (L)</td>
<td>Volvo rear-facing/turnable child seat (Volvo Convertible Child Seat) - rear-facing child seat, secured with the car’s seatbelt and straps. Type approval: E5 04192 (L)</td>
<td>Volvo rear-facing/turnable child seat (Volvo Convertible Child Seat) - rear-facing child seat, secured with the car’s seatbelt and straps. Type approval: E5 04192 (L)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15-25 kg</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Child safety

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Weight</th>
<th>Front seat (with deactivated airbag)</th>
<th>Outer rear seat</th>
<th>Centre rear seat</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Group 2</td>
<td>Volvo rear-facing/turnable child seat (Volvo Convertible Child Seat) - front-facing child seat, secured with the car's seatbelt.</td>
<td>Volvo rear-facing/turnable child seat (Volvo Convertible Child Seat) - front-facing child seat, secured with the car's seatbelt.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15-25 kg</td>
<td>Type approval: E5 04191 (U)</td>
<td>Type approval: E5 04191 (U)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group 2/3</td>
<td>Volvo booster seat with backrest (Volvo Booster Seat with backrest).</td>
<td>Volvo booster seat with backrest (Volvo Booster Seat with backrest).</td>
<td>Volvo booster seat with backrest (Volvo Booster Seat with backrest).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15-36 kg</td>
<td>Type approval: E1 04301169 (UF)</td>
<td>Type approval: E1 04301169 (UF)</td>
<td>Type approval: E1 04301169 (UF)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group 2/3</td>
<td>Booster cushion with and without backrest (Booster Cushion with and without backrest).</td>
<td>Booster cushion with and without backrest (Booster Cushion with and without backrest).</td>
<td>Booster cushion with and without backrest (Booster Cushion with and without backrest).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15-36 kg</td>
<td>Type approval: E5 04216 (UF)</td>
<td>Type approval: E5 04216 (UF)</td>
<td>Type approval: E5 04216 (UF)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Child safety**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Weight</th>
<th>Front seat (with deactivated airbag)</th>
<th>Outer rear seat</th>
<th>Centre rear seat</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Group 2/3</td>
<td>Integrated two-stage booster cushions*</td>
<td>Integrated booster cushion (Integrated Booster Cushion) - available as a factory fitted option.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15-36 kg</td>
<td>Integrated two-stage booster cushions*</td>
<td>Type approval: E5 04189 (B)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

L: Suitable for specific child seats. These child seats may be intended for use in a special car model, limited or semi-universal categories.

U: Suitable for universally approved child seats in this weight class.

UF: Suitable for front-facing universally approved child seats in this weight class.

B: Built-in child seats approved for this weight class.

**Integrated two-stage booster cushions***

*Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

**Correct position, the seatbelt is positioned above the shoulder.**

**Incorrect position, the head must not be positioned above the head restraint and the seatbelt must not be below the shoulder.**

The booster cushions are specially designed to provide optimum safety. In combination with the seatbelt they are approved for children who weigh between 15 and 36 kg and who are at least 95 cm in height.

Check before driving that:

- the integrated 2-stage booster cushion is correctly set (see table page 36) and in locked position
- the seatbelt is in contact with the child's body and is not slack or twisted
- the seatbelt does not lie across the child's throat or below the shoulder (see preceding illustrations)
- the lap section of the seatbelt is positioned low over the pelvis to provide optimal protection.
Child safety

For instructions on adjusting the booster cushion’s two levels, see pages 36–37.

**Raising the two-stage booster cushion**
The integrated booster cushion can be folded up into two stages. How many stages the cushion should be folded up depends on the child’s weight.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage 1</th>
<th>Stage 2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Weight</td>
<td>22-36 kg</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Stage 1**

1. Pull the handle forward and up in order to release the booster cushion.

2. Press the booster cushion backwards to lock.

**Stage 2**

1. Start from the lower stage. Press the button.
2 Lift the booster cushion up at the front edge and press it back against the backrest to lock.

**WARNING**

Volvo recommends that repair or replacement is only carried out by an authorised Volvo workshop. Do not make any modifications or additions to the booster cushion. If an integrated booster cushion has been subjected to a major load, such as in conjunction with a collision, the entire booster cushion must be replaced. Even if the booster cushion appears to be undamaged, it may not afford the same level of protection. The booster cushion must also be replaced if it is heavily worn.

**NOTE**

It is not possible to adjust the booster cushion from stage 2 to stage 1. It must first be reset by being fully folded into the seat cushion. Refer to the heading below, Lowering the two-stage booster cushion.

**Lowering the two-stage booster cushion**

Lowering can take place from both the upper and lower stage to fully lowered position in the cushion. However, it is not possible to adjust the booster cushion from the upper stage to the lower stage.

1 Pull the handle forwards to release the cushion.

2 Press down with your hand in the centre of the cushion in order to lock it.

**WARNING**

If the instructions regarding the two-stage booster cushion are not followed then this could cause serious injury to a child in the event of an accident.

**IMPORTANT**

Check that there are no loose objects (e.g. toys) left behind in the space under the cushion before lowering.

**NOTE**

The booster cushion must be lowered first when lowering the backrest.

**Child safety locks, rear doors**

The controls for operating the rear door power windows and the rear door opening handles can be blocked from opening from the inside. For more information, see page 62.
Child safety

ISOFIX fixture system for child seats

Mounting points for the ISOFIX fixture system are concealed behind the lower section of the rear seat backrest, in the outer seats.

The location of the mounting points is indicated by symbols in the backrest upholstery (see preceding illustration).

Press the seat cushion down to access the mounting points.

Always follow the manufacturer’s installation instructions when connecting a child seat to the ISOFIX mounting points.

Size classes

Child seats are in different sizes – cars are in different sizes. This means that not all child seats are suitable for all seats in all car models.

Consequently, there is a size classification for child seats using the ISOFIX fixture system in order to assist users in choosing the correct child seat (see the following table).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Size class</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Full size, front-facing child seat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Reduced size (alt. 1), front-facing child seat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B1</td>
<td>Reduced size (alt.2), front-facing child seat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Full size, rear-facing child seat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Reduced size, rear-facing child seat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>Rear-facing infant seat</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**WARNING**

Never place a child in the passenger seat if the car is equipped with an activated airbag.

**NOTE**

If an ISOFIX child seat has no size classification then the car model must be included on the child seat’s vehicle list.

**NOTE**

Volvo recommends that you contact an authorised Volvo dealer for recommendations about which ISOFIX child seats Volvo recommends.
### Types of ISOFIX child seat

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of child seat</th>
<th>Weight</th>
<th>Size class</th>
<th>Passenger seats for ISOFIX installation of child seats</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Front seat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infant seat transverse</td>
<td>max 10 kg</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>G</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infant seat, rear-facing</td>
<td>max 10 kg</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infant seat, rear-facing</td>
<td>max 13 kg</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>D</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>C</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child seat, rear-facing</td>
<td>9-18 kg</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>C</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Child safety

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of child seat</th>
<th>Weight</th>
<th>Size class</th>
<th>Front seat</th>
<th>Outer rear seat</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Front-facing child seat</td>
<td>9-18 kg</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>OK(^A) (IUL)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>B1</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>OK(^A) (IUL)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>A</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>OK(^A) (IUL)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

X: The ISOFIX position is not suitable for ISOFIX child seats in this weight class and/or size class.

IL: Suitable for specific ISOFIX child seats. These child seats may be intended for use in a special car model, limited or semi-universal categories.

IUF: Suitable for front-facing ISOFIX child seats that are universally approved in this weight class.

\(^A\) Volvo recommends rear-facing child seats for this group.
Upper mounting points for child seats

The car is equipped with upper mounting points for certain front-facing child seats. These mounting points are located on the rear of the seat.

The upper mounting points are primarily intended for use with front-facing child seats. Volvo recommends that small children should sit in rear-facing child seats to as late an age as possible.

NOTE

Fold the head restraints in order to facilitate fitting this type of child seat in cars with folding head restraints on the outer seats.

NOTE

For cars equipped with a cargo area cover over the cargo area, this must be removed before a child seat can be fitted in the mounting points.

For detailed information on how the child seat should be tensioned in the upper mounting points, see the seat manufacturer's instructions.

WARNING

The child seat's straps must always be drawn through the hole in the head restraint leg before they are tensioned at the attachment point.
Remote control key/key blade................................................................. 44
Privacy locking*.................................................................................... 50
Battery replacement, remote control key/PCC*................................. 52
Keyless drive*..................................................................................... 54
Locking/unlocking.............................................................................. 57
Child safety locks................................................................................ 62
Alarm*.................................................................................................. 63

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
LOCKS AND ALARM
Remote control key/key blade

General
The car is supplied with 2 remote control keys or PCCs (Personal Car Communicator). They are used to start the car and for locking and unlocking.

Additional remote control keys can be ordered - up to 6 can be programmed and used for the same car.

The remote control key contains a removable key blade made of metal. The visible section is available in two versions so that it is possible to distinguish between the remote control keys.

The PCC has increased functionality compared with the remote control key. The continuation of this chapter describes the functions available in both the PCC and the remote control key.

⚠️ WARNING
If there are children in the car:
Remember to switch off the supply to the power windows and sunroof by removing the remote control key if the driver leaves the car.

Loss of a remote control key
If you lose a remote control key then a new one can be ordered at a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended. The remaining remote control keys must then be taken to the workshop. The code of the missing remote control key must be erased from the system as a theft prevention measure.

The current number of keys registered to the car can be checked in the menu system MY CAR under Information ➔ Number of keys. For a description of the menu system, see page 213.

Key memory

Key memory 1 – door mirrors and driver’s seat
The settings are automatically connected to each respective remote control key, see pages 84 and 107. After locking with the remote control key the setting of the combined instrument panel’s theme is also saved in the key, see page 71.

The function can be activated/deactivated in the menu system MY CAR under Settings ➔ Car settings ➔ Car key memory.

For a description of the menu system, see page 213.
For cars with the Keyless drive system, see page 54.

Indicator for locking/unlocking
When the car is locked or unlocked using the remote control key, the direction indicators confirm that locking/unlocking was correctly performed.

- Locking - one flash and the door mirrors are folded 2 in.
- Unlocking - two flashes and the door mirrors are folded 2 out.

After locking the indication is only given if all locks have been activated once the doors have been closed.

Selecting the function
Different options for indicating locking/unlocking with light can be set in the car’s menu system, see page 213.

Search in the menu system MY CAR for Settings ➔ Car settings ➔ Light settings and select Door lock confirmation light and/or Unlock confirmation light.

1 Only in combination with power driver’s seat and power mirrors.
2 Only for cars with retractable power door mirrors.
Immobiliser
Each remote control key has a unique code. The car can only be started with the correct remote control key with the correct code.

The following error messages in the combined instrument panel's information display are related to the electronic immobiliser:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Specification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Insert car key</td>
<td>Error when reading the remote control key during starting - Remove the key from the ignition switch, press it in again and make a new start attempt.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Car key not found</td>
<td>Error reading the remote control key during starting - Try to start again. If the error persists: Insert the remote control key into the ignition switch and try to start again.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Immobiliser Try start again</td>
<td>Error in immobiliser system during starting. If the error persists: Contact a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For starting the car, see page 118.
Remote control key/key blade

**Unlocking** – Unlocks the doors and tailgate while the alarm is deactivated.
Press and hold (at least 4 seconds) to open all windows simultaneously.
The function can be changed from unlocking all doors simultaneously, to unlocking the driver’s door only with one press of the button and, after a further press of the button - within 10 seconds - unlocking the remaining doors.
The function can be changed in the menu system **MY CAR** under **Settings ➔ Car settings ➔ Lock settings ➔ Doors unlock with both the alternatives All doors and Driver door, then all. For a description of the menu system, see page 213.
The function can be turned off with the same button once it has been active for at least 5 seconds. Otherwise the function switches off automatically after 2 minutes and 45 seconds.

**Range**
The remote control key’s functions have a range of about 20 m from the car.
If the car does not verify a button being pressed - move closer and try again.

**NOTE**
The remote control key functions can be disrupted by surrounding radio waves, buildings, topographical conditions etc. The car can always be locked/unlocked using the key blade, see page 48.

If the remote control key is removed from the car when the engine is running or key position **I** or **II** is active (see page 81) and if all doors are closed, then the information display in the combined instrument panel shows a warning message and an audible reminder signal sounds at the same time.

Press and hold the button for at least 3 seconds or press it twice within 3 seconds to activate the direction indicators and the horn.

**Approach light duration** – Used to switch on the car’s lighting at a distance. For more information, see page 98.

**WARNING**
If the sunroof and windows are closed using the remote control key, check that no one is in danger of getting hands caught.

**Tailgate** - Unlocks and disarms the alarm for the tailgate only. On cars with power tailgate* the tailgate is opened after the button is kept depressed. For more information, see page 59.

**Panic function** – Used to attract attention in an emergency.
The message clears and the audible reminder signal stops when the remote control key is brought back to the car after:

- The remote control key has been inserted in the ignition switch.
- Speed exceeds 30 km/h.
- the OK button has been pressed.

**Unique PCC functions**

The message clears and the audible reminder signal stops when the remote control key is brought back to the car after:

- The remote control key has been inserted in the ignition switch.
- Speed exceeds 30 km/h.
- the OK button has been pressed.

**Using the information button**

- Press the information button.
  > All indicator lamps flash for approximately 7 seconds and the light travels around on the PCC. This indicates that information from the car has been read.

If any of the other buttons are pressed during this time then the reading is interrupted.

**NOTE**

If none of the indicator lamps illuminates with repeated use of the information button and in different locations (as well as after 7 seconds and after the light has travelled around on the PCC), contact a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Indicator lamps display information in accordance with the following illustration:

- **Green continuous light** – the car is locked.
- **Yellow continuous light** – the car is unlocked.
- **Red continuous light** – the alarm has been triggered since the car was locked.
- **Red light flashing alternately in both indicator lamps** – The alarm was triggered less than 5 minutes ago.

**Range PCC**

The PCC’s range for locking, unlocking and tailgate is approx. 20 m from the car - for other functions up to approx. 100 m.

If the car does not verify a button being pressed - move closer and try again.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
02 Locks and alarm

Remote control key/key blade

NOTE
The information button functions can be disrupted by surrounding radio waves, buildings, topographical conditions etc.

Out of PCC range
If the PCC is too far away from the car for the information to be read then the status the car was last left in is shown, without the light travelling around on the PCC.

If several PCCs are used for the car then it is only the PCC last used for locking/unlocking that shows correct status.

NOTE
If no indicator lamps illuminate when the information button is used within range then this may be because the last communication between the PCC and the car was disrupted by surrounding radio waves, buildings, topographical conditions etc.

Detachable key blade
A remote control key contains a detachable key blade of metal with which some functions can be activated and some operations carried out.

The key blade’s unique code is provided by authorised Volvo workshops, which are recommended when ordering new key blades.

Key blade functions
Using the remote control key’s detachable key blade:
- the driver’s door can be opened manually if central locking cannot be activated with the remote control key, see page 55.
- the rear doors’ mechanical child safety locks can be activated/deactivated, see page 62.
- access to the glovebox and cargo area (privacy locking*) can be blocked, see page 50.
- the airbag for front passenger seat (PACOS)* can be activated/deactivated, see page 22.

Removing the key blade
1 Slide the spring-loaded catch to the side.
2 At the same time pull the key blade straight out backwards.

Attaching the key blade
Carefully refit the key blade into its location in the remote control key.
1. Hold the remote control key with the slot pointed up and lower the key blade into its slot.
2. Lightly press the key blade. You should hear a "click" when the key blade is locked in.

Detachable key blade

Removing the key blade

Attaching the key blade
Unlocking doors with the key blade

If central locking cannot be activated with the remote control key - e.g. if the batteries are discharged - then the driver's door can be opened as follows:

1. Unlock the driver's door with the key blade in the door handle's lock cylinder.
   
   See also the illustration and further information see page 55.

   **NOTE**
   
   When the door has been unlocked using the key blade and is opened, the alarm is triggered.

2. Deactivate the alarm by inserting the remote control key in the ignition switch.

For a car with the Keyless system, see page 55.
02 Locks and alarm

**Privacy locking***

**General information on privacy locking**

The privacy locking function is intended for when the car is left for service, with a hotel parking valet or similar. The glovebox is then locked and the tailgate lock is disconnected from the central locking - the tailgate cannot be opened with either the central locking button in the front doors or the remote control key.

This means that the remote control key without key blade can only be used to activate/deactivate the alarm, to open the doors and to drive the car.

The remote control key without key blade can then be handed over to the service or hotel staff - the loose key blade is retained by the car owner.

**NOTE**

Do not forget to pull out the cargo cover over the cargo area before closing the tailgate, see page 328.

**Activate/deactivate**

Activating privacy locking.

To activate privacy locking:

1. Insert the key blade in the glovebox lock cylinder.
2. Turn the key blade 180 degrees clockwise. The keyhole is vertical in the locked position for privacy locking.
3. Pull out the key blade. The combined instrument panel’s information display shows a message at the same time.

The glovebox is then locked and the tailgate can no longer be unlocked with the remote control key or the central locking button.
Privacy locking*

NOTE
Do not reinsert the key blade into the remote control key but keep it in a safe place instead.

- Deactivation takes place in reverse order.
For information on locking the glovebox only, see page 58.
Battery replacement, remote control key/PCC*

Replacing the battery
The batteries should be replaced if:

- the information symbol in the combined instrument panel illuminates and the display shows Low battery in remote control. Please change batteries.
- the locks repeatedly do not react to signals from the remote control key within 20 metres from the car.

Opening
1. Slide the spring-loaded catch to the side.
2. At the same time pull the key blade straight out backwards.
3. Insert a 3 mm slot screwdriver in the hole behind the spring-loaded catch and gently prize the remote control key up.

NOTE
Turn the remote control key over with the buttons facing up, this is to avoid the batteries falling out when it is opened.

IMPORTANT
Avoid touching the battery and its terminals with your fingers, as this could damage their functionality.

Battery replacement
3. Closely study how the battery/batteries are secured on the inside of the cover, with regard to their (+) and (−) sides.

Remove control key (1 battery)
1. Carefully prise out the battery.
2. Install a new one with the (+) side down.

PCC* (2 batteries)
1. Carefully prise out the batteries.
2. First install one new one with the (+) side up.
3. Position the white plastic tab in between and finally install a second new battery with the (+) side down.

Battery type
Use batteries with the designation CR2430, 3V - one in the remote control key and two in the PCC.

Assembly
1. Press the remote control key together.
2. Hold the remote control key with the slot pointed up and lower the key blade into its slot.
3. Lightly press the key blade. You should hear a "click" when the key blade is locked in.
Battery replacement, remote control key/PCC*

**IMPORTANT**
Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally-friendly way.
Keyless drive*

Keyless lock and ignition system (only PCC\(^1\))

General

The keyless drive function in the PCC allows the car to be unlocked, driven and locked without the need for a key. You simply have to have the PCC with you. The system makes it easier and more convenient to open the car, e.g. when your hands are full.

Both of the car's PCCs incorporate the Keyless function. Additional PCCs can be ordered, see page 44.

PCC range

In order to open a door or the tailgate, a PCC must be no more than approx. 1.5 metres from the car door handle or tailgate. This means that the person who wishes to lock or unlock a door must have the PCC with him or her. It is not possible to lock or unlock a door if the PCC is on the opposite side of the car.

The red rings in the preceding illustration indicate the range covered by the system's antennas.

If all PCCs are removed from the car when the engine is running or key position I or II is active (see page 81) and if all doors are closed, then a warning message is shown in the combined instrument panel's display and an audible reminder signal sounds at the same time.

The warning message clears and the audible reminder signal stops when the PCC is brought back to the car after:

- a door has been opened and closed
- the PCC is inserted into the ignition switch
- the OK button has been pressed.

Handling the PCC safely

If a PCC with keyless drive function is left in the car, it is deactivated temporarily when the car is locked. This prevents unauthorised entry.

However, if someone breaks into the car, opens the door and finds the PCC, it can be reactivated. It is therefore important to handle all PCCs with great care.

\[\text{\textbf{IMPORTANT}}\]

Never leave a PCC behind in the car.

Interference to PCC function

Electromagnetic fields and screening can interfere with the keyless drive system.

\[\text{\textbf{NOTE}}\]

Do not place/store the PCC near a mobile phone or metal object - no closer than 10-15 cm.

If interference is experienced nonetheless, use the PCC and the key blade as a remote control key, see page 45.

Locking

---

\(^1\) Personal Car Communicator, see page 47.
Cars with the keyless system have a button on the outside door handles.

Lock the doors and the tailgate by pressing the lock button on one of the door handles on the outside.

All doors and the tailgate must be closed before the car can be locked - otherwise the car is not locked.

**NOTE**
On cars with automatic transmission, the gear selector must be set in the P position - otherwise the car cannot be locked or the alarm armed.

### Unlocking
Unlocking takes place when a hand grasps a door handle or the tailgate's rubberised pressure plate is actuated - open the door or tailgate as normal.

#### Unlocking with the key blade

1. Press the key blade approx. 1 cm straight up into the hole on the underside of the door handle/cover - do not prise.
   > The plastic cover loosens automatically by means of the torque when the blade is pushed straight up and into the opening.
2. Then insert the key blade in the lock cylinder and unlock the door.
3. Refit the plastic cover after unlocking.

**NOTE**
When the driver's door is unlocked using the key blade and is opened, the alarm is triggered. It is switched off by inserting the PCC in the ignition switch, see page 64.

### Key memory² – driver's seat and door mirrors

**PCC memory function**
If several people each with a PCC approach the car, then the settings for seat and mirrors are implemented for the person who opens the driver's door.

After the driver's door has been opened by person A with PCC-A, but person B with

---

² Only in combination with power driver's seat and power mirrors.
PCC-B shall drive, the settings can be changed in three ways:

- Standing by the driver’s door, or sitting behind the steering wheel, person B presses their PCC’s unlock button, see page 45.
- Select one of three possible memories for seat adjustment with seat button 1-3, see page 84.
- Adjust seat and mirrors manually, see page 84 and 107.

**Lock settings**
The Keyless function can be adapted by indicating in the menu system **MY CAR** which doors shall be unlocked, under **Car settings** → **Lock settings** → **Keyless entry** - there select between **All doors unlock**, **Any door**, **Doors on same side** and **Both front doors**.

For a description of the menu system, see page 213.

**Antenna location**
The keyless system has a number of integrated antennae located around the car:

1. Tailgate, by wiper motor
2. Door handle, left rear
3. Cargo area, central and furthest in under the floor
4. Door handle, right rear
5. Centre console, under the rear section
6. Centre console, under the front section.

**WARNING**
People with pacemaker operations should not come closer than 22 cm to the keyless system’s antennae with their pacemaker. This is to prevent interference between the pacemaker and the keyless system.
From the outside

The remote control key can lock/unlock all doors and the tailgate simultaneously. Different sequences for unlocking can be selected, see "Unlocking with the remote control key" page 46.

In order that the lock sequence can be activated, the driver’s door must be closed - if any of the other doors or the tailgate is open, then it/they is/are locked and the alarm is activated only when it/they are closed. With the Keyless* system all the doors and tailgate must be closed.

**NOTE**

Be aware of the risk of locking the remote control key in the car.

If it is not possible to lock/unlock with the remote control key, the battery may be discharged - lock or unlock the driver’s door with the detachable key blade, see page 48.

**NOTE**

Remember that the alarm is triggered when the door is opened after being unlocked with the key blade - the alarm is switched off when the remote control key is inserted into the ignition switch.

**WARNING**

Be aware of the risk of being locked in the car when it is locked from the outside using the remote control key - it is then not possible to open any of the doors from the inside with the door controls. Read more about this in the section "Deadlocks" later on.

**Automatic relocking**

If none of the doors or the tailgate is opened within 2 minutes of unlocking, all are locked again automatically. This function reduces the risk that the car is left unlocked unintentionally. (For cars with alarm, see page 63.)

From the inside

**Central locking**

All of the doors and the tailgate can be locked or unlocked simultaneously using the central locking button on either front door.

- Press one side of the button to lock - the other side to unlock.

**Unlocking**

A door can be unlocked from the inside in two different ways:

- Press the central locking button.
  Press and hold (at least 4 seconds) to also open all the side windows* simultaneously.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
Locking/unlocking

- Pull the door handle once and release - the door is unlocked. Pull the door handle again to open the door.

**Locking**
- Press the central locking button after the front doors have been closed.

Press and hold (at least 2 seconds) to also close all the side windows and the sunroof* simultaneously.

All doors can also be individually locked manually with their lock buttons - the door in question must then be closed.

**Global opening**
Press and hold the central locking button (at least 4 seconds) to also open all the windows simultaneously - for example, to quickly ventilate the passenger compartment during hot weather.

**Automatic locking**
The doors and tailgate are locked automatically when the car starts to move.

The function can be activated/deactivated in the menu system MY CAR under Settings ➔ Car settings ➔ Lock settings ➔ Automatic door locking. For a description of the menu system, see page 213.

**Glovebox**
The glovebox can only be locked/unlocked using the remote control key’s detachable key blade. For information on the key blade, see page 48.

**Locking the glovebox:**
- Insert the key blade in the glovebox lock cylinder.
- Turn the key blade 90 degrees clockwise. The keyhole is horizontal in the locked position.
- Pull out the key blade.
- Unlock by carrying this out in reverse order.

For information on privacy locking, see page 50.

**Tailgate**
The alarm for the tailgate can be disarmed* and the tailgate unlocked on its own by using the remote control key’s button.

If the car is equipped with an alarm* the alarm indicator on the instrument panel stops to show that alarm for the whole of the car is not armed. The alarm’s level and movement sensors and the sensors for opening the tailgate are disconnected.

The doors remain locked and armed.

- The tailgate is unlocked, but remains closed - press lightly on the rubberised pressure plate under the outer handle and lift the tailgate.

---

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
If the tailgate is not opened within 2 minutes then it is relocked and the alarm is re-armed.

Unlocking the car from inside

To unlock the tailgate:
- Press the lighting panel button (1).
  > The tailgate is unlocked and can be opened within 2 minutes (if the car is locked from the inside).

Locking with the remote control key
- Press the remote control key's button for locking, **», see page 45.
  > If the car is equipped with an alarm* the alarm indicator on the instrument panel starts to flash, which means that the alarm is armed.

Power operated tailgate*

Consider the roof height when using electrical operation. Do not use electrical operation of the tailgate under a low roof height, see under the heading "Interrupt opening/closing of tailgate".

NOTE

- If the system has been operating continuously for a long time, it is switched off to avoid overload. It can be used again after about 2 minutes.
- If the battery has been discharged or disconnected then the tailgate must be opened and closed again to reset the system.

Programmable max. opening
Tailgate maximum opening position can be programmed. Can be used for e.g. low roof height in a garage. Proceed as follows:
- Open the tailgate manually, hold it in the desired position and give the button on the tailgate one long press (at least 3 seconds) and then release the tailgate - the programming is complete.
- To clear the programming - move the tailgate manually to a higher position.

Snow and wind
If the tailgate is forced down by something just when it is being opened, e.g. snow, ice or strong wind, and this causes the tailgate to lower, then it is closed automatically.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
Locking/unlocking

Pinch protection
If something with sufficient resistance prevents the tailgate from opening/closing then the pinch protection is activated.

- During opening - power tailgate operation is deactivated and the tailgate is disengaged.
- When closing - the tailgate stops and backs off from the obstacle a couple of centimetres.

WARNING
Pay attention to the risk of crushing when opening/closing. Before starting to open/close; make sure that there is nobody close to the tailgate as a crushing injury could have serious consequences.
Always operate the tailgate with caution.

Opening the tailgate
The tailgate can be opened three ways (two of which involve this button):
- Long press on the button in the lighting panel - hold the button depressed until the tailgate starts to open.
- Long press on the button on the remote control key - hold the button depressed until the tailgate starts to open.
- Push down gently on the rubberised pressure plate under the outer handle.

Closing the tailgate
Close using this button on the tailgate or manually.
- Press the button – the tailgate closes automatically.

Stop the opening/closing of the tailgate
This can be done four ways (of which three involve this button):
- Press the lighting panel button
- Press the remote control key button
- Press the tailgate’s button
- Press the rubberised pressure plate beneath the outside handle.
  - The tailgate’s movement is interrupted and it stops.

Manual tailgate operation
The system is disengaged if the opening/closing sequence is interrupted in accordance with the preceding section.
- The tailgate can then be operated manually.

Deadlocks *
Deadlocks means that all lock buttons and door handles are mechanically disengaged, which prevents doors being opened from the inside.
The deadlocks are activated with the remote control key and are set after an approximately 10 second delay after the doors have been locked.

NOTE
If a door is opened within the delay time then the sequence is interrupted and the alarm is deactivated.
The car can only be unlocked from a deadlock state with the remote control key. The front left door can also be unlocked with the detachable key blade.
**WARNING**

Do not allow anyone to remain in the car without first deactivating the deadlocks in order to avoid the risk of anyone being locked in.

**Temporary deactivation**

1. Access the menu system **MY CAR** under **Settings ➔ Car settings ➔ Reduced Guard** (for a detailed description of the menu system, see page 213).
2. Select **Activate once**.
   - The combined instrument panel’s display shows the message **Reduced guard See manual** and the deadlocks function is switched off when the car is locked.

   or

   - Select **Ask when exiting**.
     - Each time the engine is switched off the centre console’s screen shows the message **Activate Reduced Guard until engine has started again? followed by the alternatives Confirm with OK and Cancel with EXIT**.

If the deadlocks function shall be switched off

- Press **OK/MENU** and lock the car. (Note that the alarm’s movement and tilt detectors* are switched off at the same time, see page 64.)
  - The next time the engine is started, the system is reset to zero and the display in the combined instrument panel shows the message **Full guard** at which the deadlocks function and the alarm’s movement and tilt detectors are re-engaged.

If the locking system shall not be changed

- Press **EXIT** and lock the car.

**NOTE**

- Remember that the alarm is activated when the car is locked.
- If any of the doors are opened from the inside then the alarm is triggered.

---

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
**Child safety locks**

**Manual blocking of the rear doors**

The child safety locks prevent children from opening a rear door from the inside.

To activate/deactivate the child safety locks:
- Use the remote control key’s detachable key blade to turn the knob - see page 48.

**NOTE**

- A door's knob control only blocks that particular door - not both rear doors simultaneously.
- Cars with an electric child safety lock do not have a manual child lock.

**Electrical locking of the rear doors**

The child safety locks are located on the trailing edge of the rear doors and are only accessible when the doors are open.

To activate/deactivate the child safety locks:

1. Start the engine or choose a key position higher than 0.
2. Press the button in the driver’s door control panel.
   > The display in the combined instrument panel shows the message Rear child locks Activated and the button’s lamp illuminates - the locks are active.

When the electric child safety lock is active then the rear:
- windows can only be opened with the driver’s door control panel
- doors cannot be opened from inside.

The current setting is stored when the engine is switched off - if the child safety locks are activated at engine shutdown, the function will remain activated the next time the engine is started.
General
Activated alarm is triggered if:

- a door, the bonnet or the tailgate is opened
- a movement is detected in the passenger compartment (if fitted with a movement detector*)
- the car is raised or towed away (if fitted with a tilt detector*)
- the battery’s cable is disconnected
- the siren is disconnected.

If there is a fault in the alarm system then the information display in the combined instrument panel shows a message. In which case, contact a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

NOTE
The movement sensors trigger an alarm in the event of movement in the passenger compartment - air currents are also registered. For this reason the alarm is triggered if the car is left with a window or the sunroof open or if the passenger compartment heater is used.

To avoid this: Close the window/sunroof when leaving the car. If the car’s integrated passenger compartment heater (or a portable electric heater) shall be used - direct the airflow from the air vents so that they are not pointing upwards in the passenger compartment. Alternatively, reduced alarm level can be used, see page 64.

NOTE
Do not attempt to repair or modify alarm system components. All such attempts could affect the terms of insurance.

Alarm indicator

A red LED on the instrument panel indicates the alarm system’s status:

- LED not lit – Alarm not armed
- The LED flashes once every other second – Alarm is armed
- The LED flashes rapidly after disarming the alarm (and until the remote control key is inserted in the ignition switch and key position I is selected) – Alarm has been triggered.

Arming the alarm
- Press the remote control key lock button.

Deactivate the alarm
- Press the remote control key unlock button.
Deactivating a triggered alarm
- Press the remote control key unlock button or insert the remote control key in the ignition switch.

Other alarm functions
Automatic re-arming of the alarm
This function prevents the car being left with the alarm disarmed unintentionally.
If the car is unlocked with the remote control key (and the alarm is disarmed) but none of the doors or the tailgate is opened within 2 minutes, then the alarm is automatically re-armed. The car is relocked at the same time.

Remote control key not working
If the alarm cannot be deactivated with the remote control key, e.g. if the key’s battery is discharged - the car can be unlocked, disarmed and the engine started as follows:
1. Open the driver’s door with the detachable key blade - see page 55.
   > The alarm is triggered, the alarm indicator flashes rapidly and the siren sounds.
2. Insert the remote control key in the ignition switch.
   > The alarm is deactivated and the alarm indicator goes out.
3. Start the engine.

Alarm signals
When the alarm is triggered, the following happens:
- A siren sounds for 30 seconds or until the alarm is switched off. The siren has its own battery and works independently of the car battery.
- The direction indicators flash for 5 minutes or until the alarm is switched off.

Reduced alarm level
To avoid accidental triggering of the alarm - e.g. if a dog is left in a locked car or during transport on a car train or car ferry - temporarily deactivate the movement and tilt detectors.
The procedure is the same as with the temporary disengaging of deadlocks, see page 60.
Instruments and controls................................................................. 68
Volvo Sensus .................................................................................. 80
Key positions ................................................................................. 81
Seats ............................................................................................... 83
Steering wheel ................................................................................ 88
Lighting ........................................................................................... 90
Wipers and washing ......................................................................... 102
Windows, rearview and door mirrors ............................................ 105
Compass* ....................................................................................... 110
Power sunroof* ............................................................................. 112
Alcolock* ....................................................................................... 114
Starting the engine ........................................................................ 118
Starting the engine – Flexifuel ...................................................... 122
Starting the engine – external battery ............................................ 124
Gearboxes ....................................................................................... 126
Start/Stop* .................................................................................... 134
All Wheel Drive - AWD* ............................................................... 140
Foot brake ...................................................................................... 141
HDC Hill Descent Control ............................................................. 143
Parking brake ................................................................................. 145
HomeLink®* .................................................................................. 149

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
YOUR DRIVING ENVIRONMENT
03 Your driving environment

Instruments and controls

Instrument overview

Left-hand drive.
## Instruments and controls

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Menus and messages, direction indicators, main/dipped beam, trip computer</td>
<td>210, 96, 92, 239</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual gear changing in an automatic gearbox*</td>
<td>128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cruise control*</td>
<td>159, 161</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Horn, airbags</td>
<td>88, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Combined instrument panel</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Menu navigation, audio control, phone control*</td>
<td>213, 257, 255, 283</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>START/STOP ENGINE button</td>
<td>118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ignition switch</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Screen for infotainment system and display of menus</td>
<td>254, 257, 213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hazard warning flashers</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Door handle</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Control panel</td>
<td>57, 62, 105, 107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Control panel for infotainment system and menu navigation</td>
<td>255, 257, 213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Control panel for climate control</td>
<td>221</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gear selector</td>
<td>126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Controls for active chassis (Four-C)*</td>
<td>247</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wipers and washing</td>
<td>102, 103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steering wheel adjustment</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parking brake</td>
<td>145</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parking brake</td>
<td>145</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bonnet opener</td>
<td>358</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seat adjustment*</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Headlamp control, opener for fuel filler flap and tailgate</td>
<td>90, 317, 58</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
Instruments and controls

Right-hand drive.
# 03 Your driving environment

## Instruments and controls

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hazard warning flashers</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Screen for infotainment system and display of menus</td>
<td>254, 257, 213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>START/STOP ENGINE button</td>
<td>118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ignition switch</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual gear changing in an automatic gearbox*</td>
<td>128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cruise control*</td>
<td>159, 161</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Combined instrument panel</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Horn, airbags</td>
<td>88, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Menu navigation, audio control, phone control*</td>
<td>213, 255, 257, 283</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wipers and washing</td>
<td>102, 103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Headlamp control, opener for fuel filler flap and tailgate</td>
<td>90, 317, 58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Door handle</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Control panel</td>
<td>57, 62, 105, 107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seat adjustment*</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bonnet opener</td>
<td>358</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parking brake</td>
<td>145</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steering wheel adjustment</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Menus and messages, direction indicators, main/dipped beam, trip computer</td>
<td>210, 96, 92, 239</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Controls for active chassis (Four-C)*</td>
<td>247</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gear selector</td>
<td>126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Control panel for climate control</td>
<td>221</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Control panel for infotainment system and menu navigation</td>
<td>213, 255, 257</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
Instruments and controls

The car's functions, e.g. cruise control and trip computer, as well as messages. The information is shown with symbols and text. There are further descriptions under the functions that use the display.

Gauges and indicators, analogue instrument panel

1. Fuel gauge. When the indicator lowers to only one white marking\(^1\), the yellow indicator symbol for low level in the fuel tank is illuminated. See also Trip computer page 239, and Refuelling page 317.

2. Eco meter. This meter provides an indication of how economically the car is driven. The higher the reading on the scale, the more economical it is.

3. Speedometer

4. Tachometer. The meter indicates engine speed in thousands of revolutions per minute (rpm).

5. Gear shift indicator\(^2\) / Gear position indicator\(^3\). See also gearboxes page 126.

Gauges and indicators, digital instrument panel

Alternative themes can be selected for the digital combined instrument panel. Possible themes are "Elegance", "Eco" and "Performance". The setting for the theme can be stored in the remote control key's memory when locking the car, see pages 44 and 215.

A theme can only be selected when the engine is running.

To change the theme, press the left-hand stalk switch's OK button and then select the Themes menu option by turning the thumb-wheel on the lever. Confirm selection by pressing the OK button. For more information on menus, see page 210.

1. Fuel gauge. When the display's message "Distance to empty fuel tank:" starts to show "----", the marking becomes red.

2. Manual gearbox

3. Automatic gearbox
Gauges and indicators, theme "Eco".

1. Fuel gauge. When the indicator lowers to only one white marking\(^1\), the yellow indicator symbol for low level in the fuel tank is illuminated. See also Trip computer page 239, and Refuelling page 317.

2. Eco guide. See also page 73.

3. Speedometer

4. Tachometer. The meter indicates engine speed in thousands of revolutions per minute (rpm).

5. Gear shift indicator\(^2\) / Gear position indicator\(^3\). See also gearboxes page 126.

Gauges and indicators, theme "Performance".

1. Fuel gauge. When the indicator lowers to only one white marking\(^1\), the yellow indicator symbol for low level in the fuel tank is illuminated. See also Trip computer page 239, and Refuelling page 317.

2. Temperature gauge for engine coolant

3. Speedometer

4. Tachometer. The meter indicates engine speed in thousands of revolutions per minute (rpm).

5. Power guide, see page 74.

6. Gear shift indicator\(^2\) / Gear position indicator\(^3\). See also gearboxes page 126.

**Eco guide & Power guide***

**General**

The Eco guide and Power guide instruments help the driver to drive the car while maintaining the best possible economy.

The car also stores statistics of journeys made, which can be viewed in the form of a block diagram, see page 246.

**Eco guide**

This meter provides an indication of how economically the car is being driven.

To view this function, select the theme "Eco", see page 73.

---

\(^1\) When the display’s message "Distance to empty fuel tank:" starts to show "----", the marking becomes red.

\(^2\) Manual gearbox

\(^3\) Automatic gearbox

---

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
03 Your driving environment

Instruments and controls

1 Instantaneous value
2 Average value

**Instantaneous value**
The instantaneous value is shown here - the higher the reading on the scale, the better.

The instantaneous value is calculated based on speed, engine speed, engine power utilised plus use of the foot brake.

Optimum speed (50-80 km/h) and low engine speeds are encouraged. The pointers fall during acceleration and braking.

Very low instantaneous values illuminate the red zone on the meter (with a short delay), which means poor economy and hence should be avoided.

---

**Average value**
The average value slowly follows the instantaneous value and describes how the car has been driven most recently. The higher the pointers on the scale, the better the economy achieved by the driver.

**Power guide**
This instrument shows the relationship between how much power (Power) is being taken from the engine and how much power is available.

To view this function, select the theme "Performance", see page 73.

---

1 Available engine power
2 Engine power utilised

**Available power**
The smaller, upper pointer shows the available engine power\(^4\). The higher the reading on the scale, the more power is available in the current gear.

**Utilised power**
The larger, lower pointer shows the engine power utilised\(^4\). The higher the reading on the scale, the more power is being taken from the engine.

A large gap between the two pointers indicates a large power reserve.

---

\(^4\) Power is dependent on engine speed.
Indicator and warning symbols

Indicator and warning symbols, analogue instrument panel.

1 Indicator symbols
2 Indicator and warning symbols
3 Warning symbols

Functionality check
All indicator and warning symbols illuminate in key position II or when the engine is started. When the engine has started, all the symbols should go out except the parking brake symbol, which only goes out when the brake is disengaged.

If the engine does not start or if the functionality check is carried out in key position II then all symbols go out within 5 seconds except the symbol for faults in the car’s emissions system and the symbol for low oil pressure.

Indicator symbols

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Specification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>✈️</td>
<td>ABL fault</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>✈️</td>
<td>Emissions system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🚗</td>
<td>ABS fault</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🚗</td>
<td>Rear fog lamp on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>⚠️</td>
<td>Stability system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>⚠️</td>
<td>Stability system, sport mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🚗</td>
<td>Engine preheater (diesel)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🚗</td>
<td>Low level in fuel tank</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🚗</td>
<td>Information, read display text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🔆</td>
<td>Main beam On</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5 For certain engine variants, the symbol for low oil pressure is not used. Warnings are made via display text. For information on checking the oil level, see page 360.
## Instruments and controls

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Specification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Left-hand direction indicator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Right-hand direction indicator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Start/Stop, the engine auto-stopped, see page 134</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### ABL fault
The symbol illuminates if a fault has arisen in the ABL function (Active Bending Lights).

### Emissions system
If the symbol illuminates then it may be due to a fault in the car's emissions system. Drive to a workshop for checking. Volvo recommends that you seek assistance from an authorised Volvo workshop.

### ABS fault
If this symbol illuminates then the system is not working. The car's regular brake system continues to work, but without the ABS function.

1. Stop the car in a safe place and turn off the engine.
2. Restart the engine.

3. If the symbol remains illuminated, drive to a workshop to have the ABS system checked. Volvo recommends that you seek assistance from an authorised Volvo workshop.

### Rear fog lamp on
This symbol illuminates when the rear fog lamp is switched on.

### Stability system
A flashing symbol indicates that the stability system is operating. If the symbol illuminates with constant glow then there is a fault in the system.

### Stability system, sport mode
Sport mode allows for a more active driving experience. The system then detects whether the accelerator pedal, steering wheel movements and cornering are more active than in normal driving and then allows controlled skidding of the rear section up to a certain level before it intervenes and stabilises the car.

### Engine preheater (diesel)
This symbol illuminates during engine preheating. Preheating takes place mostly due to low temperature.

### Low level in fuel tank
When the symbol illuminates the level in the fuel tank is low, refuel as soon as possible.

### Information, read display text
When one of the car's systems does not behave as intended, this information symbol illuminates and a text appears on the information display. The message text is cleared with the OK button, see page 210, or it disappears automatically after a time (time depending on which function is indicated). The information symbol can also illuminate in conjunction with other symbols.

### NOTE
When a service message is shown, the symbol and message are cleared using the OK button, or disappear automatically after a time.

### Main beam On
The symbol illuminates when main beam is on and with main beam flash.

### Left/right-hand direction indicator
Both direction indicator symbols flash when the hazard warning flashers are used.

### Start/Stop
The symbol shines when the engine is auto-stopped.
**Warning symbols**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Specification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Low oil pressure" /></td>
<td>Low oil pressure&lt;sup&gt;A&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Parking brake applied" /></td>
<td>Parking brake applied</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Parking brake applied, alternative symbol" /></td>
<td>Parking brake applied, alternative symbol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Airbags – SRS" /></td>
<td>Airbags – SRS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Seatbelt reminder" /></td>
<td>Seatbelt reminder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Alternator not charging" /></td>
<td>Alternator not charging</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Fault in brake system" /></td>
<td>Fault in brake system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Warning" /></td>
<td>Warning</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>A</sup> For certain engine variants, the symbol for low oil pressure is not used. Warnings are made via display text, see pages 360 and 361.

**Low oil pressure**
If this symbol illuminates during driving then the engine’s oil pressure is too low. Stop the engine immediately and check the engine oil level, top up if necessary. If the symbol illuminates and the oil level is normal, contact a workshop. Volvo recommends that you seek assistance from an authorised Volvo workshop.

**Parking brake applied**
This symbol illuminates with a constant glow when the parking brake is applied. The symbol flashes during application, and then changes over to a constant glow.

A flashing symbol in any other situation means that a fault has arisen. Read the message on the information display.

For more information, see page 145.

**Airbags – SRS**
If this symbol remains illuminated or illuminates while driving, it means a fault has been detected in the seatbelt buckle, SRS, SIPS, or IC systems. Drive immediately to a workshop to have the system checked. Volvo recommends that you seek assistance from an authorised Volvo workshop.

**Seatbelt reminder**
This symbol illuminates if someone in a front seat has not put on their seatbelt or if someone in a rear seat has taken off their seatbelt.

**Alternator not charging**
If a fault has occurred in the electrical system. Visit a workshop. Volvo recommends that you seek assistance from an authorised Volvo workshop.

**Fault in brake system**
If this symbol illuminates, the brake fluid level may be too low. Stop the car in a safe place and check the level in the brake fluid reservoir, see page 364.

If the brake and ABS symbols illuminate at the same time, there may be a fault in the brake force distribution system.

1. Stop the car in a safe place and turn off the engine.
2. Restart the engine.
   - If both symbols extinguish, continue driving.
   - If the symbols remain illuminated, check the level in the brake fluid reservoir, see page 364. If the brake fluid level is normal but the symbols are still illuminated, the car can be driven, with great care, to a workshop to have the brake system checked. Volvo recommends that you seek assistance from an authorised Volvo workshop.

---

**Warning symbols**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Specification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Low oil pressure" /></td>
<td>Low oil pressure&lt;sup&gt;A&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Parking brake applied" /></td>
<td>Parking brake applied</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Parking brake applied, alternative symbol" /></td>
<td>Parking brake applied, alternative symbol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Airbags – SRS" /></td>
<td>Airbags – SRS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Seatbelt reminder" /></td>
<td>Seatbelt reminder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Alternator not charging" /></td>
<td>Alternator not charging</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Fault in brake system" /></td>
<td>Fault in brake system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Warning" /></td>
<td>Warning</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>A</sup> For certain engine variants, the symbol for low oil pressure is not used. Warnings are made via display text, see pages 360 and 361.

**Low oil pressure**
If this symbol illuminates during driving then the engine’s oil pressure is too low. Stop the engine immediately and check the engine oil level, top up if necessary. If the symbol illuminates and the oil level is normal, contact a workshop. Volvo recommends that you seek assistance from an authorised Volvo workshop.

**Parking brake applied**
This symbol illuminates with a constant glow when the parking brake is applied. The symbol flashes during application, and then changes over to a constant glow.

A flashing symbol in any other situation means that a fault has arisen. Read the message on the information display.

For more information, see page 145.

**Airbags – SRS**
If this symbol remains illuminated or illuminates while driving, it means a fault has been detected in the seatbelt buckle, SRS, SIPS, or IC systems. Drive immediately to a workshop to have the system checked. Volvo recommends that you seek assistance from an authorised Volvo workshop.

**Seatbelt reminder**
This symbol illuminates if someone in a front seat has not put on their seatbelt or if someone in a rear seat has taken off their seatbelt.

**Alternator not charging**
If a fault has occurred in the electrical system. Visit a workshop. Volvo recommends that you seek assistance from an authorised Volvo workshop.

**Fault in brake system**
If this symbol illuminates, the brake fluid level may be too low. Stop the car in a safe place and check the level in the brake fluid reservoir, see page 364.

If the brake and ABS symbols illuminate at the same time, there may be a fault in the brake force distribution system.

1. Stop the car in a safe place and turn off the engine.
2. Restart the engine.
   - If both symbols extinguish, continue driving.
   - If the symbols remain illuminated, check the level in the brake fluid reservoir, see page 364. If the brake fluid level is normal but the symbols are still illuminated, the car can be driven, with great care, to a workshop to have the brake system checked. Volvo recommends that you seek assistance from an authorised Volvo workshop.
**WARNING**

If the brake fluid is under the *MIN* level in the brake fluid reservoir, do not drive further before topping up the brake fluid. The loss of brake fluid must be investigated by a workshop. Volvo recommends that you contact an authorised Volvo workshop.

**WARNING**

If the brake and ABS symbols are illuminated at the same time, there is a risk that the rear end will skid during heavy braking.

**Warning**

The red warning symbol illuminates when a fault has been indicated which could affect the safety and/or driveability of the car. An explanatory text is shown on the information display at the same time. The symbol remains visible until the fault has been rectified but the text message can be cleared with the **OK** button, see page 211. The warning symbol can also illuminate in conjunction with other symbols.

### Action:

1. Stop in a safe place. Do not drive the car further.
2. Read the information on the information display. Implement the action in accordance with the message in the display. Clear the message using the **OK** button.

**Reminder – doors not closed**

If one of the doors is not closed properly then the information or warning symbol illuminates together with an explanatory image in the information display. Stop the car in a safe place as soon as possible and close the door that is open.

- ![Symbol](image1)
  - If the car is driven at a speed lower than approx. 7 km/h then the information symbol illuminates.
- ![Symbol](image2)
  - If the car is driven at a speed higher than approx. 7 km/h then the warning symbol illuminates.

If the bonnet[6] is not closed properly then the warning symbol illuminates together with an explanatory image in the information display. Stop the car in a safe place as soon as possible and close the bonnet.

If the tailgate is not closed properly then the information symbol illuminates together with an explanatory image in the information display. Stop the car in a safe place as soon as possible and close the tailgate.

### Trip meter

#### Trip meter.

1. ![Symbol](image3)

**Display for trip meter**[7]

Both trip meters T1 and T2 are used to measure short distances. The distance is shown in the display.

Turn the left-hand stalk switch’s thumbwheel to show the required meter.

---

[7] The appearance of the display may vary depending on variant.
One long press (more than 1 second) on the left-hand stalk switch’s RESET button resets the trip meter currently displayed. A longer press (4 seconds) resets the trip computer if the car is fitted with the digital instrument. For more information, see page 239.

**Clock**

The clock can be adjusted in the menu group **MY CAR**, for more information see page 213.

1. Locate **Settings** ➔ **System options** ➔ **Time**.
2. The cursor is located in the first box for Hour: Press **OK/MENU** - the box is activated.
3. Turn **TUNE** to set the correct hour and press **OK/MENU** - the box is deactivated.
4. Turn **TUNE** to select the box for Minute (A) and press **OK/MENU** - the box is activated (B).
5. Turn **TUNE** to set the correct minute and press **OK/MENU** - the box is deactivated.
6. Turn **TUNE** to select the box for **OK** and press **OK/MENU** - the setting is complete.

The menu option **Settings** ➔ **System options** ➔ **Time format** selects the 24h or 12h system (AM/PM).

---

8 The time is shown in the centre of an analogue instrument panel.
Volvo Sensus

General

Volvo Sensus is the car’s operating system, the heart of your personal Volvo experience. Volvo Sensus combines and presents many functions in several of the car’s systems in the screen. With Volvo Sensus the car can be personalised by means of an intuitive user interface. Settings can be made in Car settings, Infotainment, Climate, etc.

With the centre console buttons and controls or the steering wheel’s right-hand keypad* functions can be activated or deactivated and many different settings can be made.

With a press on MY CAR all settings related to the driving and control of the car are presented, such as City Safety, Locks and alarm, setting the clock, etc.

With a press on the respective function: RADIO, MEDIA, TEL*, NAV* and CAM* other sources, systems and functions can be activated, e.g. AM, FM1, CD, DVD*, TV*, Bluetooth*, navigation* and park assist camera*.

For more information on all functions/systems, see the respective section in the owner’s manual.

Control panel in centre console

1 Navigation* - NAV, see separate owner’s manual (Road and Traffic Information System - RTI).
2 Infotainment (RADIO, MEDIA, TEL*), see page 254.
3 Car settings - MY CAR, see page 213.
4 Park assist camera - CAM*, see page 200.
5 Climate control, see page 221.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
Insert and remove the remote control key

**Insert the key**

1. Hold the end of the remote control key with the detachable key blade and insert the key in the ignition switch.
2. Then press the key in the lock up to its end position.

**Withdraw the key**

- Push in the remote control key, allow it to eject, then pull it out from the ignition switch.

**Functions at different levels**

To enable the use of a limited number of functions with the engine switched off, the car's electrical system can be set in 3 different levels (key positions) - 0, I and II - with the remote control key. This owner's manual describes these levels throughout using the denomination "key positions".

The following table shows the functions available in each key position/level.

**IMPORTANT**

Foreign objects in the ignition switch may jeopardise the function or destroy the lock.

Do not press the remote control key incorrectly turned - Hold the end with the detachable key blade, see page 48.

**NOTE**

For cars with the Keyless* function the key does not need to be inserted into the ignition switch but can be stored in e.g. a pocket. For more information on Keyless functions - see page 54.

### Level | Functions
--- | ---
0 | • Odometer, clock and temperature gauge are illuminated.  
• Electrically operated seats can be adjusted.  
• The audio system can be used for a limited time - see page 254.

I | • Sunroof, power windows, 12 V socket in the passenger compartment, RTI, phone, ventilation fan and windscreen wipers can be used.

II | • The headlamps come on.  
• Warning/indicator lamps illuminate for 5 seconds.  
• Several other systems are activated. However, electric heating in seat cushions and the rear window can only be activated after starting the engine.

This key position consumes a lot of current from the battery and should therefore be avoided!
03 Your driving environment

**Key positions**

Selecting key position/level

**Key position 0**
- Unlock the car - at which point the car’s electrical system is at level 0.

**Key position I**
- With the remote control key fully inserted into the ignition switch\(^1\) - Briefly press [START/STOP ENGINE].

**NOTE**
To reach level I or II without starting the engine - do not depress the brake/clutch pedal when these key positions are due to be selected.

**Key position II**
- With the remote control key fully inserted into the ignition switch\(^1\) - Give one long\(^2\) press on [START/STOP ENGINE].

**Back to key position 0**
- To return to key position 0 from position II and I - Briefly press on [START/STOP ENGINE].

Audio system
For information on the audio system’s functions with remote control key removed - see page 254.

---

1. Not required for cars with the Keyless* function.
2. Approx. 2 seconds.
Front seats

1. Lumbar support adjustment, turn the wheel.
2. Forward/backward: lift the handle to adjust the distance to the steering wheel and pedals. Check that the seat is locked after changing position.
3. Raise/lower front edge of seat cushion, pump up/down.
4. Adjust backrest rake, turn the wheel.
5. Raise/lower the seat, pump up/down.
6. Control panel for power seat*.

**WARNING**
Adjust the position of the driver's seat before setting off, never while driving. Make sure that the seat is in locked position in order to avoid personal injury in the event of sudden braking or an accident.

**Lowering the front seat backrest**

The passenger seat backrest can be folded forward to make room for long loads.

1. Lift the catches on the rear of the backrest and fold it forward.
2. Move the seat as far back/down as possible.
3. Adjust the backrest to an upright position.
4. Push the seat forward so that the head restraint "locks" in under the glovebox.

Raising takes place in reverse order.

**WARNING**
Grasp the backrest and make sure that it is properly locked after being folded up in order to avoid personal injury in the event of sudden braking or an accident.

---

1 Also applies to power seat.
03 Your driving environment

Seats

Power seat*

1. Front edge of seat cushion up/down
2. Seat forward/backward and up/down
3. Backrest rake

The power front seats have overload protection which is tripped if a seat is blocked by an object. If this happens, go to key position I or 0 and wait a short time before adjusting the seat again.

Only one movement (forward/back/up/down) can be made at a time.

Preparations

The seats can be adjusted for a certain time after unlocking the door with the remote control key without the key in the ignition switch. Seat adjustment is normally made in key position I and can always be made when the engine is running.

Seat with memory function*

1. Adjust the seat and the door mirrors.
2. Hold the button depressed to store settings while depressing one of the memory buttons.

Using a stored setting

Hold one of the memory buttons depressed until the seat and the door mirrors stop. If you release the button then the movement of the seat will stop.

Key memory* in remote control key

All remote control keys can be used by different drivers to store the settings for the driver’s seat and door mirrors. Proceed as follows:

- Memory button
- Memory button
- Memory button
- Button for storing settings

1. Adjust the seat and the door mirrors.

---

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

2 For key memory for Keyless function, see page 55.
3 Only if the car is equipped with power seat with memory and retractable power door mirrors.
• Adjust the seat as you want it.
• Lock the car by pressing the lock button on the remote control key that you normally use. This stores the positions of the seat and door mirrors in the remote control key’s memory⁴.
• Unlock the car (by pressing the unlock button on the same remote control key) and open the driver’s door. The driver’s seat and door mirrors will automatically adopt the positions that are stored in the remote control key’s memory (if the seat has been moved since you locked the car).

The key memory can be activated/deactivated in the menu system MY CAR under Settings ➔ Car settings ➔ Car key memory. For a description of the menu system, see page 213.

Emergency stop
If the seat accidentally begins to move, press one of the setting buttons for the seat or memory buttons in order to stop the seat.

Restarting to reach the seat position stored in the key memory is performed by pressing the unlock button on the remote control key. The driver’s door must then be open.

WARNING
Risk of crushing! Make sure that children do not play with the controls. Check that there are no objects in front of, behind or under the seat during adjustment. Ensure that none of the backseat passengers will be trapped.

Heated/ventilated seats* For heated/ventilated seats, see page 225.

Rear seats

Head restraint, centre seat, rear

Adjust the head restraint according to passenger height so that the whole of the back of the head is covered if possible. Slide it up as required.

To lower the head restraint again, the button (located in the centre between the backrest and head restraint, see illustration) must be pressed in while the head restraint is pressed down carefully.

Manual lowering of the outer head restraints, rear seat

Pull the locking handle closest to the head restraint to fold the head restraint forward.

The head restraint is moved back manually until a “click” can be heard.

⁴ This setting does not affect settings that have been stored in the power seat’s memory function.
03 Your driving environment

Seats

**WARNING**

The head restraints must be in locked position after being raised.

**IMPORTANT**

There must be no objects on the rear seat when the backrest is to be folded down. The seat belts must not be connected either. Otherwise there is a risk of damaging the rear seat upholstery.

The triple-section backrest can be folded in different ways.

**NOTE**

The front seats may need to be pushed forwards, and/or the backrests adjusted upwards, in order that the rear backrests can be folded forward fully.

- The left-hand section can be folded separately.
- The centre section can be folded separately.
- The right-hand section can only be folded together with the centre section.

- If the entire backrest is to be folded then the different sections should be folded separately.

Raising takes place in reverse order.

**NOTE**

When the backrest has been raised, the red indicator should no longer be showing. If it is still showing then the backrest is not locked in place.

**WARNING**

Check that the backrests and head restraints in the rear seats are firmly locked after raising.

**Electrical lowering of the rear seat's outer head restraints**

1. If the centre backrest is being lowered - fold and adjust the centre backrest’s head restraint downwards, see page 85.
2. The outer head restraints are lowered automatically when the outer backrests are lowered. Pull up the backrest’s locking handle A while folding the backrest forward at the same time. A red indicator on the lock catch B shows that the backrest is no longer locked in place.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
1. The remote control key must be in position II.

2. Press the button to lower the rear outer head restraints to improve rearward visibility.

**WARNING**
Do not lower the outer head restraints if there are any passengers using of the outer seats.

Move the head restraint back manually until a click is heard.

**WARNING**
The head restraints must be in locked position after being raised.
03 Your driving environment

Steering wheel

**Adjusting**

1. Lever - releasing the steering wheel
2. Possible steering wheel positions

The steering wheel can be adjusted for both height and depth:

1. Pull the lever towards you to release the steering wheel.
2. Adjust the steering wheel to the position that suits you.
3. Push back the lever to fix the steering wheel in place. If the lever is stiff, press the steering wheel lightly at the same time as you push the lever back.

**WARNING**

Adjust and secure the steering wheel before driving.

With speed related power steering* the level of steering force can be adjusted, see page 247.

**Keypads* and paddles***

1. Cruise control, see page 159
2. Adaptive cruise control*, see page 161
3. Paddle for manual gear changing in an automatic gearbox, see page 128
4. Audio and phone control, see page 255

**Horn**

Press the centre of the steering wheel to signal.
Heating* of the steering wheel

Button position may vary depending on equipment selected and market.

Repeatedly press the button to switch between the following functions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Indicator</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Switched off</td>
<td>Button lamp extinguished</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heating</td>
<td>Button lamp illuminated</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Automatic steering wheel heating

With activated automatic start of steering wheel heating, the heating of the steering wheel starts when the engine is started. Automatic start takes place when the car is cold and the ambient temperature is below 7 °C.

Activate/deactivate the function in the menu system MY CAR, see page 213.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
**Light switches**

**Overview, light switches.**

1. Thumbwheel for adjusting display and instrument lighting as well as ambient lighting*
2. Button for rear fog lamp
3. Knob for daytime running lights and parking lamps
4. Thumbwheel\(^1\) for headlamp levelling

**Knob positions**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Position</th>
<th>Specification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>Daytime running lights(^A) when the car’s electrical system is in key position II or the engine is running. Main beam flash can be used.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AUTO</td>
<td>Daytime running lights and position/parking lamps/side marker lamps when the car’s electrical system is in key position II or the engine is running. Automatic switching to position/parking lamps/side marker lamps when the car is parked. Main beam flash can be used.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Posi-**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Position</th>
<th>Specification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AUTO</td>
<td>Daytime running lights and position/parking lamps/side marker lamps during the day when the car’s electrical system is in key position II or the engine is running. Automatic switching to dipped beam and position/parking lamps/side marker lamps in poor light conditions or when the windscreen wipers or rear fog lamps are activated. The &quot;Tunnel detection*&quot; function is activated, see page 92. The &quot;Active high beam*&quot; function can be used, see page 93. Main beam can be activated when dipped beam is switched on. Main beam flash can be used.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^1\) Not available for cars equipped with active Xenon headlamps*.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
03 Your driving environment

Lighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Position</th>
<th>Specification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dipped beam and position/parking lamps/side marker lamps.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Main beam can be activated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Main beam flash can be used.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Position/parking lamps

Knob for headlamp control in the position for position/parking lamps.

Thumbwheel positions for different load cases.

1. Only driver
2. Driver and passenger in the front passenger seat
3. Occupants in all seats
4. Occupants in all seats and maximum load in the cargo area
5. Driver and maximum load in the cargo area

Cars with active Xenon headlamps* have automatic headlamp levelling and are therefore not equipped with the thumbwheel.

Instrument lighting

Different display and instrument lighting is switched on depending on key position, see page 81.

The display lighting is automatically subdued in darkness - the sensitivity is set with the thumbwheel.

The intensity of the instrument lighting is adjusted with the thumbwheel.

Headlamp levelling

The load in the car changes the vertical alignment of the headlamp beam, which could dazzle oncoming motorists. Avoid this by adjusting the height of the beam.

1. Leave the engine running, or have the car’s electrical system in key position I.
2. Roll the thumbwheel up/down to raise/lower beam alignment.

A Fitted in or under the front bumper.

Volvo recommends that AUTO mode is used when the car is being driven, as long as traffic situations or weather conditions are unfavourable for the "Active high beam*" function.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
the knob is in or what key position the car’s electrical system is in.

**Daytime running lights during the day.**

**DRL**

With the knob for headlamp control in **AUTO** position the daytime running lights (Daytime Running Lights - DRL) are activated automatically when the car is driven during the day. A light sensor on the top of the instrument panel changes from daytime running lights to dipped beam at twilight or when daylight becomes too weak. Switching to dipped beam also takes place if the windscreen wipers or rear fog lamps are activated.

**WARNING**

This system help to save energy - it cannot determine in all situations when daylight is too weak or sufficiently strong, e.g. in mist and rain.

The driver is always responsible for ensuring that the car is driven with its lights in a correct state and in accordance with applicable traffic regulations.

**Tunnel detection**

The function is available in cars with rain sensor*. The sensor detects the entrance to a tunnel and resets the lighting from daytime running lights to dipped beam. Approx. 20 seconds after the car has left the tunnel, the lighting returns to daytime running lights. If the car is driven into another tunnel within this time period then dipped beam is kept switched on. This avoids repeated changes to the car’s light settings.

Note that the headlamp control’s knob must remain in **AUTO** position for tunnel detection to work.

**Main/dipped beam**

With the knob in **AUTO** position, dipped beam is activated automatically at twilight or when daylight becomes too weak. Dipped beam is also activated automatically if the windscreen wipers or rear fog lamps are activated.

With the knob in position **II** dipped beam is always switched on when the engine is running or when key position **II** is active.

**Main beam flash**

Move the stalk switch gently towards the steering wheel to the position for main beam
flash. Main beam comes on until the stalk switch is released.

**Main beam**
Main beam can be activated when the knob is in position AUTO² or . Activate/deactivate main beam by moving the stalk switch towards the steering wheel to the end position and then releasing.

When main beam has been activated the symbol illuminates in the combined instrument panel.

**Active high beam - AHB**
Active high beam (Active High Beam - AHB) is a function which uses a camera sensor at the top edge of the windscreen to detect the headlamp beams of oncoming traffic or the rear lights of vehicles in front, and then switches from main beam to dipped beam. The function can also take streetlights into account.

The lighting returns to main beam about a second after the camera sensor no longer detects the headlamp beams from oncoming traffic or the rear lights from vehicles in front.

Activating/deactivating
AHB can be activated when the headlamp control's knob is in position AUTO.

![Stalk switch and knob for headlamp control in AUTO position.](image)

The function can start while driving in the dark when the car's speed is 20 km/h or higher.

Activate/deactivate AHB by moving the left-hand stalk switch towards the steering wheel to the end position and then releasing. Deactivation when main beam is on means that the lights are reset directly to dipped beam.

**Car with analogue combined instrument panel**

When AHB is activated the symbol illuminates in the instrument’s information display.

When main beam is switched on the symbol also illuminates in the combined instrument panel.

**Car with digital combined instrument panel**

When AHB is activated the symbol turns white in the instrument’s information display.

When main beam is activated, the symbol turns blue.

**Manual operation**

*NOTE*

Keep the windscreen surface in front of the camera sensor clean from ice, snow, mist and dirt.

Do not attach or fit anything to the windscreen in front of the camera sensor, as this could reduce or prevent the function of one or more camera-dependent systems.

If the message Active main beam Temporary unavailable Switch manually is
Your driving environment

Lighting

shown in the combined instrument panel’s information display then you have to switch manually between main and dipped beam. However, the knob for headlamp control can still remain in position AUTO. The same applies if the message Windscreen sensors blocked See manual and the symbol are shown. The symbol goes out when these messages are shown.

AHB may be temporarily unavailable e.g. in situations with dense fog or heavy rain. When AHB becomes available again, or the windscreen sensors are no longer blocked, the message extinguishes and the symbol illuminates.

**WARNING**

AHB is an aid for using optimum light composition when conditions are favourable.

The driver always bears responsibility for manually switching between main and dipped beam when traffic situations or weather conditions so require.

**IMPORTANT**

Examples of when manual switching between main and dipped beam may be required:

- In heavy rain or dense fog
- In freezing rain
- In snow flurries or slush
- In moonlight
- When driving in poorly lit built-up areas
- When the traffic ahead has weak lighting
- If there are pedestrians on or beside the road
- If there are highly reflective objects such as signs in the vicinity of the road
- When the lighting from oncoming traffic is obscured by e.g. a crash barrier
- When there is traffic on connecting roads
- On the brow of a hill or in a hollow
- In sharp bends.

For more information on the limitations of the camera sensor, see page 186.

Active Xenon headlamps - ABL*

Headlamp pattern with function deactivated (left) and activated (right) respectively.

If the car is equipped with active Xenon headlamps (Active Bending Lights – ABL) the light from the headlamps follows the steering wheel movement in order to provide maximum lighting in bends and junctions and so provide increased safety.

The function is activated automatically when the car is started (provided that it has not been deactivated in the menu system MY CAR). In the event of a fault in the function the symbol illuminates in the combined instrument panel at the same time as the information display shows an explanatory text and a further illuminated symbol.
03 Your driving environment

Lighting

### Symbol

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Display</th>
<th>Specification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Headlamp system malfunction Service required" /></td>
<td>Headlamp system malfunction Service required</td>
<td>The system is disengaged. Visit a workshop if the message remains. Volvo recommends that you contact an authorised Volvo workshop.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The function is only active in twilight or darkness and only when the car is moving.

The function can be deactivated/activated in the menu system MY CAR under Settings → Car settings → Light settings → Active Bending Lights. For a description of the menu system, see page 214.

For headlamp pattern adjustment, see page 98.

**Auxiliary lamps**

If the car has auxiliary lamps, the driver can use the MY CAR menu system to choose whether they should be deactivated or switched on/off simultaneously with the main beam, see page 215.

---

#### Rear fog lamp

**Button for rear fog lamp.**

The rear fog lamp can only be switched on when key position II is active or the engine is running and the headlamp control’s knob is in position **AUTO** or **OFF**.

Press the button for On/Off. The rear fog lamp’s indicator symbol in the combined instrument panel and the light in the button both illuminate when the rear fog lamp is switched on.

The rear fog lamp is switched off automatically when the engine is switched off or when the headlamp control’s knob is turned to position **0** or **OFF**.

---

**NOTE**

Regulations for using rear fog lamps vary between different countries.

#### Brake lights

The brake light automatically comes on during braking. For information on the emergency brake lights and automatic hazard warning flashers, see page 141.

#### Hazard warning flashers

**Button for hazard warning flashers.**

---

3 Activated on delivery from the factory.

4 Auxiliary lamps must be connected to the electrical system by a workshop. Volvo recommends that you contact an authorised Volvo workshop.
Press the button to activate the hazard warning flashers. Both direction indicator symbols in the combined instrument panel flash when the hazard warning flashers are used.

The hazard warning flashers are activated automatically when the car has been braked so suddenly that the emergency brake lights have been activated at a speed below 10 km/h. The hazard warning flashers remain on when the car has stopped and are deactivated automatically when the car is driven off again or the button is depressed. For more information on Emergency brake lights and automatic hazard warning flashers, see page 141.

**Direction indicators/flashers**

**Short flash sequence**

Move the stalk switch up or down to the first position and release. The direction indicators flash three times. The function can be activated/deactivated in the menu system MY CAR under Settings ➔ Car settings ➔ Light settings ➔ Triple indicator. For a description of the menu system, see page 214.

**Continuous flash sequence**

Move the stalk switch up or down to the outer position.

The stalk switch remains in its position and is moved back manually, or automatically by the steering wheel movement.

**Direction indicator symbols**

For direction indicator symbols, see page 75.

**Interior lighting**

Controls in roof console for the front reading lamps and passenger compartment lighting.

1. Reading lamp, left-hand side
2. Reading lamp, right-hand side
3. Interior lighting

All lighting in the passenger compartment can be switched on and off manually within 30 minutes from when:

- the engine has been switched off and the car’s electrical system is in key position 0
- the car has been unlocked but the engine has not been started.
Front roof lighting
The front reading lamps are switched on or off by pressing the relevant button in the roof console.

Rear roof lighting
The lamps are switched on or off by pressing each respective button.

Courtesy lighting
Courtesy lighting (and passenger compartment lighting) is switched on and off respectively when a side door is opened or closed.

Glovebox lighting
Glovebox lighting is switched on and off respectively when the lid is opened or closed.

Vanity mirror lighting
The lighting for the vanity mirror, see page 250, is switched on and off respectively when the cover is opened or closed.

Lighting, cargo area
The lighting in the cargo area is switched on and off respectively when the tailgate is opened or closed.

Automatic lighting
The switch for passenger compartment lighting has three positions for the lighting in the passenger compartment:

- **Off** – right-hand side pressed in, automatic lighting deactivated.
- **Neutral position** – automatic lighting activated.
- **On** – left-hand side pressed in, passenger compartment lighting switched on.

Neutral position
When the button is in neutral position the passenger compartment lighting is switched on and off automatically in accordance with the following.

- the car is unlocked with the remote control key or key blade, see page 45 or 49
- the engine has been switched off and the car’s electrical system is in key position 0.

Passenger compartment lighting is switched off when:

- the engine is started
- the car is locked.

The passenger compartment lighting comes on and remains on for two minutes if one of the doors is open.

If any lighting is switched on manually and the car is locked then it will be switched off automatically after two minutes.

Mood lights
When the normal passenger compartment lighting is switched off and the engine is running, a number of LEDs illuminate, including one in the roof lighting, in order to provide a low-light and enhance the mood while driving. This lighting goes out for a little while after the normal passenger compartment lighting when the car is locked. The brightness is controlled using the thumbwheel on the headlamp control, see page 90.
Home safe light duration
Some of the exterior lighting can be kept switched on to work as home safe lighting after the car has been locked.

1. Remove the remote control key from the ignition switch.
2. Move the left-hand stalk switch toward the steering wheel to the end position and release it. The function can be activated in the same way as with main beam flash, see page 92.
3. Get out of the car and lock the door.

When the function is activated, dipped beam, parking lamps, door mirror lamps, number plate lighting, interior roof lamps and courtesy lighting are switched on.

The length of time for which the home safe lighting should be kept on can be set in the menu system MY CAR under Settings ➔ Car settings ➔ Light settings ➔ Home safe light duration. For a description of the menu system, see page 214.

Approach light duration
Approach lighting is switched on with the remote control key, see page 45, and is used to switch on the car’s lighting at a distance.

When the function is activated with the remote control, the parking lamps, door mirror lamps, number plate lighting, interior roof lamps and courtesy lighting are switched on.

The length of time for which the approach lighting should be kept on can be set in the menu system MY CAR under Settings ➔ Car settings ➔ Light settings ➔ Approach light duration. For a description of the menu system, see page 214.

Adjusting headlamp pattern

The headlamp pattern must be adjusted to avoid dazzling oncoming motorists and can be set for right or left-hand traffic. The correct pattern will also better illuminate the verge.
Active Xenon headlamps*

Headlamp control for adjusting headlamp pattern.

A Normal position – the headlamp pattern is correct for the country in which the car was delivered.
B Adapted position – designed for opposite headlamp pattern.

**WARNING**
The headlamps must be handled with extreme caution due to the Xenon lamp being supplied by a high-voltage unit.

The country in which the car is delivered determines whether normal position is designed for right or left-hand traffic.

---

**Example 1**
If a car that is delivered in Sweden shall be driven in the UK then the headlamps must be set to the adjusted position, see preceding illustration.

**Example 2**
A car that is delivered in the UK is designed for left-hand traffic and is driven there with the headlamps in normal position, see preceding illustration.

**Halogen headlamps**
The headlamp pattern for halogen headlamps is readjusted by masking the headlamp lens. The headlamp pattern may not be as good.

**Masking the headlamps**

1. Copy the A and B templates for left-hand drive cars or the C and D templates for right-hand drive cars, see page 101. The templates have a scale of 1:2. Use a photocopier with a zoom function for example, and copy the templates at 200%:
   - A = LHD Right (left-hand drive, right lens)
   - B = LHD Left (left-hand drive, left lens)
   - C = RHD Right (right-hand drive, right lens)
   - D = RHD Left (right-hand drive, left lens)

2. Transfer the template to a self-adhesive waterproof material and cut it out.
3. Start from the design line on the headlamp lenses, see the dotted line on the side 100. Position the self-adhesive templates at the right distance from each design line using the illustration and the dimensions in the following list:
   - A = LHD Right - approx. 86 mm
   - B = LHD Left - approx. 40 mm
   - C = RHD Right - 0 mm
   - D = RHD Left - approx. 96 mm

---

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
Aligning the templates

Upper row: left-hand drive cars, templates A and B. Lower row: right-hand drive cars, templates C and D.
Templates for halogen headlamps
### Wipers and washing

#### Windscreen wipers

1. **Rain sensor, on/off**
2. **Thumbwheel sensitivity/frequency**

**Windscreen wipers off**

Move the stalk switch to position 0 to switch off the windscreen wipers.

**Single sweep**

Raise the stalk switch and release to make one sweep.

**Intermittent wiping**

Set the number of sweeps per time unit with the thumbwheel when intermittent wiping is selected.

---

#### Continuous wiping

- The wipers sweep at normal speed.
- The wipers sweep at high speed.

**IMPORTANT**

- Before activating the wipers during winter, ensure that the wiper blades are not frozen in and that any snow or ice on the windscreen (and rear window) is scraped away.

**IMPORTANT**

- Use plenty of washer fluid when the wipers are cleaning the windscreen. The windscreen must be wet when the windscreen wipers are operating.

#### Service position wiper blade

For cleaning the windscreen/wiper blades and replacement of wiper blades see page 372 and 392.

**Rain sensor**

The rain sensor automatically starts the windscreen wipers based on how much water it detects on the windscreen. The sensitivity of the rain sensor can be adjusted using the thumbwheel.

When the rain sensor is activated a lamp in the button is illuminated and the rain sensor symbol is shown in the combined instrument panel.

- **Activating and setting the sensitivity**
  - When activating the rain sensor, the car must be running or the remote control key in position I or II while the windscreen wiper stalk switch must be in position 0 or in the position for a single sweep.
  - Activate the rain sensor by pressing the button. The windscreen wipers make one sweep.
  - Press the stalk switch up for the wipers to make an extra sweep.
  - Turn the thumbwheel upward for higher sensitivity and downward for lower sensitivity. (An extra sweep is made when the thumbwheel is turned upward.)

**Deactivate**

Deactivate the rain sensor by pressing the button or move the stalk switch down to another wiper program.

---

1 Replacing the wiper blades see page 372, service position, wiper blade see page 372 and filling washer fluid see page 373.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
The rain sensor is automatically deactivated when the remote control key is removed from the ignition switch or five minutes after the engine has been switched off.

**IMPORTANT**
The windshield wipers could start and be damaged in an automatic car wash. Switch off the rain sensor while the car is in motion or when the remote control key is in position I or II. The symbol in the combined instrument panel and the lamp in the button go out.

### Washing the headlamps and windows

**Washing the windshield**
Move the stalk switch toward the steering wheel to start the windshield and headlamp washers.

The windshield wipers will make several more sweeps and the headlamps are washed once the stalk switch has been released.

**Heated washer nozzles**
The washer nozzles are heated automatically in cold weather to prevent the washer fluid freezing solid.

**High-pressure headlamp washing**
High-pressure headlamp washing consumes a large quantity of washer fluid. To save fluid, the headlamps are washed automatically at every fifth windshield wash cycle.

**Reduced washing**
If only approx. 1 litre of washer fluid remains in the reservoir and the message that you should fill the washer fluid is shown in the combined instrument panel, then the supply of washer fluid for the headlamps is switched off. This is in order to prioritise cleaning the windshield and the visibility through it.

**Wiping and washing the rear window**

1. **Rear window wiper – intermittent wiping**
2. **Rear window wiper – continuous speed**

Press the stalk switch forward (see the arrow in the illustration above) to initiate rear window washing and wiping.

**NOTE**
The rear window wiper is equipped with overheating protection which means that the motor is switched off if it overheats. The rear window wiper works again after a cooling period (30 seconds or longer, depending on the heat in the motor and the outside temperature).

---

*Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.*
Wiper – reversing
Engaging reverse gear while the windscreen wipers are on initiates intermittent rear window wiping\(^2\). The function stops when reverse gear is disengaged.

If the rear window wiper is already on at continuous speed, no change is made.

**NOTE**
On cars with rain sensor, the rear window wiper is activated with reversing, if the sensor is activated and it is raining.

---

\(^2\) This function (intermittent wiping when reversing) can be deactivated. Visit a workshop. Volvo recommends that you contact an authorised Volvo workshop.
General

Laminated glass

The glass is reinforced which provides better protection against break-ins and improved sound insulation in the passenger compartment. The windscreen and other windows* have laminated glass.

Water and dirt-repellent coating*

The windows are treated with a surface coating that improves the view in difficult weather conditions. Maintenance, see page 393.

!!! IMPORTANT

Do not use a metal ice scraper to remove ice from the windows. Use the defroster to remove ice from the mirrors, see page 108.

Heat-reflecting windscreen*

Areas where IR film is not applied.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dimensions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The windscreen is equipped with a heat-reflecting film (IR) that reduces the solar heat radiation into the passenger compartment.

The positioning of electronic equipment, such as a transponder, behind a glass surface with heat-reflecting film may affect its function and performance.

For the optimal function of electronic equipment, it should be positioned on the part of the windscreen with no heat-reflecting film (see the highlighted area in the above illustration).

Power windows

Driver’s door control panel.

1 Switch for electric child safety locks* and disengaging rear power window buttons, see page 62.

2 Rear window controls

3 Front window controls

!!! WARNING

Check that none of the rear seat passengers is in danger of becoming trapped in any way when closing the windows from the driver’s door.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
03 Your driving environment

Windows, rearview and door mirrors

**WARNING**

Make sure that children or other passengers are not in danger of becoming trapped in any way when closing the windows, in particular when the remote control key is used.

**WARNING**

If there are children in the car - remember to always switch off the power supply to the power windows by selecting key position 0 and then take the remote control key with you when leaving the car. For information on key positions - see page 82.

Operating

Operating the power windows.

- Operating without auto

  Move one of the controls up/down gently. The power windows move up/down as long as the control is held in position.

- Operating with auto

  All power windows can be operated using the control panel for the driver’s door - the control panels for the other doors can only each operate their respective power window. Only one control panel can be operated at a time.

  In order for the power windows to be used the key position must be at least I - see page 81. The power windows can be operated for a few minutes after the engine has been switched off and after the remote control key has been removed - although not after a door has been opened.

Closing of the windows is stopped and the window is opened if anything prevents its movement. It is possible to force the pinch protection when closing has been interrupted, e.g. with ice, by continuously holding the button up until the window is closed. The pinch protection is reactivated after a brief pause.

**NOTE**

One way to reduce the pulsating wind noise when the rear windows are open is to also open the front windows slightly.

Operating without auto

Move one of the controls up/down gently. The power windows move up/down as long as the control is held in position.

Operating with auto

Move one of the controls up/down to the end position and release it. The window runs automatically to its end position.

Operating with the remote control key and central locking

To remotely operate the power windows from the outside with the remote control key or from inside with central locking, see pages 46 and 57.
Resetting
If the battery is disconnected then the function for automatic opening must be reset so that it can work correctly.
1. Gently raise the front section of the button to raise the window to its end position and hold it there for one second.
2. Release the button briefly.
3. Raise the front section of the button again for one second.

**WARNING**
Resetting must be carried out to ensure that pinch protection works.

**Door mirrors**

**Adjusting**
1. Press the L button for the left-hand door mirror or the R button for the right-hand door mirror. The light in the button illuminates.
2. Adjust the position with the joystick in the centre.
3. Press the L or R button again. The light should no longer be illuminated.

**WARNING**

V70: The mirror on the driver's side is the wide-angle type to provide optimal vision. Objects may appear further away than they actually are.

XC70: Both mirrors are the wide-angle type to provide optimal vision. Objects may appear further away than they actually are.

**Storing the position**

The mirror positions are stored in the key memory when the car has been locked with the remote control key. When the car is unlocked with the same remote control key the mirrors and the driver's seat adopt the stored positions when the driver's door is opened.

The function can be activated/deactivated in the menu system **MY CAR** under **Settings** ➔ **Car settings** ➔ **Car key memory** ➔ **Personal settings in key memory.** For a description of the menu system, see page 214.

---

1 Only in combination with power seat with memory, see page 84.
Angling the door mirror when parking

The door mirror can be angled down for the driver to view the side of the road when parking for example.

- Engage reverse gear and press the L or R button.

When reverse gear is disengaged the mirror automatically returns to its original position after approx. 10 seconds, or sooner by pressing the L and R button.

Automatic angling of the door mirror when parking

When reverse gear is engaged the door mirror is automatically angled down so that the driver can see the side of the road when parking for example. When reverse gear is disengaged the mirror automatically returns to its original position after a short time.

The function can be activated/deactivated in the menu system MY CAR under Settings ➔ Car settings ➔ Side mirror settings ➔ Fold mirrors. For a description of the menu system, see page 214.

Resetting to neutral

Mirrors that have been moved out of position by an external force must be reset electrically to the neutral position for electric retracting/extending to work correctly:

1. Retract the mirrors with the L and R buttons.
2. Fold them out again with the L and R buttons.
3. Repeat the above procedure as necessary.

The mirrors are now reset in neutral position.

Retractable power door mirrors*

The mirrors can be retracted for parking/driving in narrow spaces:

1. Depress the L and R buttons simultaneously (key position must be at least I).
2. Release them after approximately 1 second. The mirrors automatically stop in the fully retracted position.

Fold out the mirrors by pressing down the L and R buttons simultaneously. The mirrors automatically stop in the fully extended position.

Home safe and approach lighting

The light on the door mirrors illuminates when approach lighting or home safe lighting is selected, see page 98.

Heated windscreen*, rear window and door mirrors

Fold out the mirrors by pressing down the L and R buttons simultaneously. The mirrors automatically stop in the fully extended position.

1 Only in combination with power seat with memory, see page 84.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
The function is used to remove ice and misting from the windscreen, rear window and door mirrors.

One press of the respective button starts the heating. The light in the button indicates that the function is active. Switch off the heating as soon as the ice/misting is cleared in order not to load the battery unnecessarily. However, the function is switched off automatically after a certain time.

See also the section "Heated windscreen and max. defroster" on page 229.

The door mirrors and rear window are demisted/defrosted automatically if the car is started in an outside temperature lower than +7 °C. Automatic defrosting can be selected in the menu system MY CAR under Settings ➔ Climate settings ➔ Auto start rear defrost. Select between On or Off. For a description of the menu system, see page 214.

The rearview mirror contains two sensors - one forward facing and one rearward facing - that work together to identify and eliminate dazzling light. The forward facing sensor detects ambient light, while the rearward facing sensor detects the light from vehicle headlights behind.

**NOTE**

If the sensors are obscured by e.g. parking permits, transponders, sun visors or objects in the seats or in the cargo area in such a way that light is prevented from reaching the sensors, then the dimming function of the rearview mirror is reduced.

The compass* can only be specified for interior rearview mirror with automatic dimming, see page 110.

---

### Interior rearview mirror

1. **Control for dimming**

#### Manual dimming

Bright light from behind could be reflected in the rearview mirror and dazzle the driver. Use dimming with the dimming control when lights from behind are distracting:

1. Use dimming by moving the control in towards the passenger compartment.
2. Return to normal position by moving the control towards the windscreen.

#### Automatic dimming*

Bright light from behind is automatically dimmed by the rearview mirror. The control for manual dimming is not available on mirrors with automatic dimming.

---

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
Compass*

Operation

The upper right-hand corner of the rearview mirror has an integrated display that shows the compass direction in which the front of the car is pointing. Eight different directions are shown with English abbreviations: N (north), NE (north east), E (east), SE (south east), S (south), SW (south west), W (west) and NW (north west).

The compass is activated automatically when the car is started or in key position II, see page 81. To deactivate/activate the compass - press in the button on the underside of the mirror using a paper clip for example.

Calibration

The compass may need calibrating to show the correct compass direction.

The earth is divided into 15 magnetic zones. The compass should be calibrated if the car is moved across several magnetic zones.

Proceed as follows to perform calibration:

1. Stop the car in a large open area free from steel structures and high-voltage power lines.
2. Start the car and switch off all electrical equipment (air conditioning, wipers, etc.) and ensure that all doors are closed.
3. Hold the button on the underside of the rearview mirror depressed approx. 3 seconds. The number of the current magnetic zone is shown.
4. Press the button repeatedly until the required magnetic zone (1–15) is shown. See the map of magnetic zones for the compass.
5. Wait until the display returns to showing the character C, or hold the button on the bottom of the rearview mirror depressed for approx. 6 seconds (use e.g. a paper clip) until the character C is shown.
6. Drive slowly in a circle at a speed of no more than 10 km/h until a compass direction is shown in the display, indicating that calibration is complete. Then drive a further 2 circles to fine-tune calibration.
7. Cars with heated windscreen*: If the character C is shown in the display when

Magnetic zones.

NOTE

Calibration may fail or not start at all if electrical equipment is not switched off.
the heated windscreen is activated, perform the calibration in accordance with point 6 above with the heated windscreen activated, see page 229.

8. Repeat the above procedure as necessary.
**Power sunroof***

**General**
The sunroof controls are located in the roof panel. The sunroof can be opened vertically at the rear edge and horizontally. Key position **I** or **II** is required for the sunroof to be opened.

**Horizontal opening**
- Opening, automatic
- Opening, manual
- Closing, manual
- Closing, automatic

**Opening**
For maximum sunroof opening, move the control back to the position for automatic opening and release.
Open manually by pulling the control backwards to the point of resistance for manual opening. The sunroof moves to maximum open position as long as the button is kept depressed.

**Closing**
Close manually by pushing the control forwards to the point of resistance for manual closing. The sunroof moves to closed position as long as the button is kept depressed.

**WARNING**
Risk of crushing when sunroof is closed. The sunroof’s pinch-protection function only operates during automatic closing, not manual.

Close automatically by pressing the control to the position for automatic closing and then release it.

The power supply to the sunroof is switched off by selecting key position **0** and removing the remote control key from the ignition switch.

**WARNING**
If there are children in the car:
Remember to always switch off the power supply to the sunroof by selecting key position **0** and then take the remote control key with you when leaving the car. For information on key positions - see page 82.

**Vertical opening**
- Open by pressing the rear edge of the control upward.
- Close by pulling the rear edge of the control down.
Closing using the remote control key or central locking button

One long press on the lock button closes the sunroof and all the windows, see pages 45 and 57. The doors and the tailgate are locked. To interrupt closing, press the lock button again.

⚠️ WARNING
If the sunroof is closed using the remote control key, check that no one is in danger of becoming trapped in any way.

Sunscreen
The sunroof features a manual, sliding interior sunscreen. The sunscreen slides back automatically when the sunroof is opened. Grip the handle and slide the screen forward to close it.

Pinch protection
The sunroof’s pinch protection function is triggered if it is blocked by an object during automatic closing. If blocked, the sunroof will stop and automatically open to the previous position.

Wind deflector

The sunroof has a wind deflector that is folded up when the sunroof is in the open position.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
**General information on the alcolock**

The alcolock’s\(^1\) function is to prevent the car from being driven by individuals under the influence of alcohol. Before the engine can be started the driver must take a breath test that verifies that he/she is not under the influence of alcohol. Alcolock calibration takes place in accordance with each market’s limit value in force for driving legally.

**WARNING**

The Alcolock is an aid and does not exempt the driver from responsibility. It is always the responsibility of the driver to be sober and to drive the car safely.

---

**Functions**

1. Nozzle for breath test.
2. Switch.
3. Transmission button.
4. Lamp for battery status.
5. Lamp for result of breath test.

---

**Operation**

**Battery**

Alcolock indicator lamp (4) shows battery status:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicator lamp (4)</th>
<th>Battery status</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Green flashing</td>
<td>Charging in progress</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Fully charged</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yellow</td>
<td>Semi-charged</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red</td>
<td>Discharged - fit the charger in the holder or connect the power supply cable from the glovebox.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NOTE**

Store the Alcolock in its holder. This will keep the built-in battery fully charged and the Alcolock is activated automatically when the car is opened.

---

\(^1\) Also called Alcoguard.
Storage

Handheld unit storage and charging station.

- The handheld alcolock unit is released by depressing it slightly in its holder and releasing it - it then springs out and can be removed from the holder.
- Replace the handheld unit in the holder by pushing it in until it engages.
- Store the handheld unit in the holder - this provides it with the best protection and keeps its batteries fully charged.

Before starting the engine

The Alcolock is activated automatically and is then ready for use when the car is opened.

1. When the indicator lamp (6) is green the Alcolock is ready for use.
2. Withdraw the Alcolock from its holder. If the Alcolock is outside the car when it is unlocked then it must first be activated with the switch (2).
3. Fold up the nozzle (1), take a deep breath and blow with an even pressure until a “click” is heard after approx. 5 seconds. The result will be one of the alternatives in the following table Result after breath test.
4. If no message is shown then the transmission to the car may have failed - in which case, press the button (3) to transmit the result to the car manually.
5. Fold down the nozzle and refit the Alcolock in its holder.
6. Start the engine following an approved breath test within 5 minutes - otherwise it must be repeated.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicator lamp (5) + Display text</th>
<th>Specification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Green lamp + Alcoguard Approved test</td>
<td>Start the engine - no alcohol content measured.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yellow lamp + Alcoguard Approved test</td>
<td>Engine starting possible - measured alcohol content is above 0.1 promille but below the limit value in force A.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red lamp + Dis-approved test Wait 1 minute</td>
<td>Engine starting not possible - measured alcohol content is above the limit value in force A.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A Limits vary between countries, so find out what limits apply. See also the section entitled General information on the Alcolock on page 114

NOTE

After a completed period of driving, the engine can be restarted within 30 minutes without a new breath test.
03 Your driving environment

Alcolock*

To bear in mind

Before the breath test
In order to obtain correct function and as accurate a measurement result as possible:

- Avoid eating or drinking approx. 5 minutes before the breath test.
- Avoid excess windscreen washing - the alcohol in the washer fluid may result in an incorrect measurement result.

Change of driver
In order to ensure that a new breath test is carried out in the event of a change of driver - depress the switch (2) and the send button (3) simultaneously for approx. 3 seconds. At which point the car returns to start inhibition mode and a new approved breath test is required before starting the engine.

Calibration and service
The Alcolock must be checked and calibrated at a workshop every 12 months.

30 days before recalibration is necessary the combined instrument panel shows the message Alcoguard Calibr. required. If calibration is not carried out within these 30 days then normal engine starting will be blocked - only starting with the Bypass function will then be possible, see page 116 section Emergency situation.

The message can be cleared by pressing the send button (3) once. Otherwise it goes out on its own after approx. 2 minutes but then reappears each time the engine is started - only recalibration at a workshop can clear the message permanently.

Cold or hot weather
The colder the weather the longer it takes before the Alcolock is ready for use:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Temperature (°C)</th>
<th>Maximum heating time (seconds)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>+10 to +85</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-5 to +10</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-40 to -5</td>
<td>180</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

At temperatures below -20 °C or above +60 °C the Alcolock requires additional power supply. The combined instrument panel shows Alcoguard insert power cable. In which case, connect the power supply cable from the glovebox and wait until indicator lamp (6) is green.

In extremely cold weather the heating time can be reduced by taking the Alcolock indoors.

Emergency situation
In the event of an emergency situation or the Alcolock is out of order, it is possible to bypass the Alcolock in order to drive the car.

**NOTE**

All Bypass activation is logged and saved in memory, see page 8 in the section, Recording data.

After Bypass function activation the combined instrument panel shows Alcoguard Bypass enabled the whole time while driving and can only be reset by a workshop.

The Bypass function can be tested without the error message being logged - in which case, carry out all the steps without starting the car. The error message is cleared when the car is locked.

When the Alcolock is installed, either the Bypass or Emergency function is selected as the bypassing option. This setting can be changed afterwards at a workshop.

2 An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.
Activating the Bypass function

- Depress and hold the left-hand stalk switch OK button and the button for hazard warning flashers simultaneously for approx. 5 seconds - the combined instrument panel first shows Bypass activated Wait 1 minute and then Alcoguard Bypass enabled - after which the engine can be started.

This function can be activated several times. The error message shown during driving can only be cleared at a workshop².

Activating the Emergency function

- Depress and hold the left-hand stalk switch OK button and the button for hazard warning flashers simultaneously for approx. 5 seconds - the combined instrument panel shows Alcoguard Bypass enabled and the engine can be started.

This function can be used once, after which a reset must be made at a workshop².

Symbols and display messages

In addition to the previously described messages, the combined instrument panel’s display can also show the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Display text</th>
<th>Meaning/Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Alcoguard Restart possible</td>
<td>The engine has been switched off for less than 30 minutes - engine starting possible without new test.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alcoguard Service required</td>
<td>Contact a workshop².</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alcoguard No signal</td>
<td>Transmission failed - send manually with button (3) or take a new breath test.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alcoguard Invalid test</td>
<td>Test failed - take a new breath test.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alcoguard Blow longer</td>
<td>Blowing too short - blow for longer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alcoguard Blow softer</td>
<td>Blowing too hard - blow more gently.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

² An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.
### Starting the engine

#### Petrol and diesel engine

1. Insert the remote control key in the ignition switch and press it in to its end position. Note that if the car is equipped with an alcolock then a breath test must first be approved before the engine can be started - see page 114.

2. Hold the clutch pedal fully depressed¹. (For cars with automatic gearbox - Depress the brake pedal.)

3. Press the **START/STOP ENGINE** button and then release it.

**NOTE**

For diesel-engined cars, there may be a slight delay before the engine can be started - Engine Preheating is displayed in the meantime.

When the engine is started the starter motor works until the engine is started or until its overheating protection triggers.

**IMPORTANT**

Do not press in the remote control key incorrectly turned - Hold the end with the detachable key blade, see page 48.

**WARNING**

Never remove the remote control key from the ignition switch after starting the engine or when the car is being towed.

**IMPORTANT**

If the engine fails to start after 3 attempts - wait for 3 minutes before making a further attempt. Starting capacity increases if the battery is allowed to recover.

**WARNING**

Always remove the remote control key from the ignition switch when leaving the car, and make sure that the key position is 0 - in particular if there are children in the car. For information on how this works - see page 82.

**NOTE**

The idling speed can be noticeably higher than normal for certain engine types during cold starting. This is so that the emissions system can reach normal operating temperature as quickly as possible, which minimises exhaust emissions and protects the environment.

**Keyless drive**

- Carry out steps 2-3 for starting the engine.

For more information on Keyless drive - see page 54.

**NOTE**

A prerequisite for the engine to start is that one of the car’s remote control keys with the Keyless drive function is in the passenger compartment or cargo area.

---

¹ If the car is moving then it is enough to press the **START/STOP ENGINE** button to start the engine.
**WARNING**

Never remove the remote control key from the car while driving or during towing.

---

**Stop the engine**

To switch off the engine:

- Press **START/STOP ENGINE** - the engine stops.

If the gear selector is not in **P** position or if the car is moving:

- Press twice on **START/STOP ENGINE** or hold the button depressed until the engine stops.

**Steering lock**

A mechanical noise can be perceived when the steering lock unlocks or locks.

- The steering lock unlocks when the remote control key is in the ignition switch\(^2\) and the **START/STOP ENGINE** button is depressed.
- The steering lock locks when the driver’s door is opened after the engine has been switched off.

**Key positions**

For information on the remote control key’s different key positions - see page 81

---

**Remote start - ERS**

**General information on ERS**

Remote start (ERS – Engine Remote Start) means that the car’s engine can be started remotely using the remote control key or the PCC key. This is so that the passenger compartment can be warmed up/cooled down before departure.

The climate control system and audio system start with the same settings that were in use when the car was parked.

An ERS-started engine is activated for a maximum of 15 minutes, then it is switched off. After two ERS-activations the engine must be started in the normal way before ERS can be re-used.

The ERS function is only available on cars with petrol engine and automatic gearbox.

---

**NOTE**

Follow local/national rules/regulations on idling.

**WARNING**

To remote-start the engine, the following criteria must be met:

- The car must be supervised
- There must be no people or animals inside the car
- The car must not be parked in a closed, unventilated area - the exhaust gases may seriously injure humans and animals.

---

\(^{2}\) Cars with Keyless drive must have a remote control key inside the passenger compartment.
Starting the engine

Operation

1. Briefly press on the key’s button (1).
2. Follow this immediately afterwards with a long press - at least 2 seconds - on button (4).

If the conditions for ERS are fulfilled then the following takes place:
1. The direction indicators flash quickly several times.
2. The engine starts.
3. The direction indicators illuminate with a constant glow for 3 seconds to verify that the engine has started.

NOTE

After remote starting, the car continues to be locked but with deactivated movement detector*.

With PCC key

The light indication for Approach lighting\(^5\) flashes several times when the button is pressed and then goes to constant glow if all criteria for ERS have been fulfilled. However, this does not mean that ERS has started the engine.

To check whether ERS has started the engine, the user can press the button (3) - if the engine has started, there is a light indication on the buttons (1) and (4).

Active functions

The following functions are activated with a remote started engine:
• Ventilation system
• Audio/video system.

Deactivated functions

The following functions are deactivated with a remote started engine:
• Headlamps
• Position lamps
• Number plate lighting
• Windscreen wiper.

ERS is interrupted

The following steps switch off an ERS-started engine:
• The remote control key’s button (1) or (2) is depressed.
• The car is unlocked
• A door is opened

The key’s buttons for remote start.

1. Locking
2. Unlocking
3. Information\(^3\)
4. Approach lighting

Remote starting the engine

To be able to remotely start the engine, the car must be locked.

Then proceed as follows:

\(^3\) Only on PCC key, see page 47.

\(^4\) For more information on the PCC key, see page 47.

\(^5\) For more information on Approach lighting, see pages 46 and 98.
Starting the engine

- Accelerator pedal or brake pedal is depressed
- The gear selector is moved out of P position
- There is approx. 10 litres left in the fuel tank
- Active ERS time exceeds 15 minutes.

When an ERS-started engine is switched off, the direction indicators illuminate with a constant glow for 3 seconds.

**Symbols and messages**
In situations where the ERS function fails or is interrupted, a symbol is shown in the combined instrument panel, supplemented by an explanatory text message.

**ERS function unavailable**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Specification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No remote start gear not in P</td>
<td>ERS unavailable because gear selector was not in P position.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No remote start driver in car</td>
<td>ERS unavailable because someone was in the passenger compartment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No remote start low battery</td>
<td>ERS unavailable due to low battery voltage. Charge the battery by starting the engine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No remote start engine warning</td>
<td>ERS unavailable due to warning message from engine. Contact a workshop^1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No remote start engine coolant</td>
<td>ERS unavailable due to error message from cooling system, see page 363.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No remote start door open</td>
<td>ERS unavailable because a door/tailgate was not closed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No remote start car not locked</td>
<td>ERS unavailable because the car was not locked.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Interrupted ERS function**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Specification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Remote start off low fuel level</td>
<td>ERS interrupted because fuel level too low.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remote start off gear not in P</td>
<td>ERS interrupted because gear selector is not in P position.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remote start off driver in car</td>
<td>ERS interrupted because someone is in the passenger compartment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remote start off engine warning</td>
<td>ERS interrupted due to error message from engine. Contact a workshop^1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remote start off low battery</td>
<td>ERS interrupted because battery voltage too low.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

^1 An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.
Starting the engine – Flexifuel

General information about starting with Flexifuel
The engine is started in the same way as in a petrol-engined car.

In the event of starting difficulties
If the engine does not start at the first start attempt:
• Make further attempts to start with the START/STOP ENGINE button.

If the engine still does not start
The outside temperature is lower than +5 °C:
1. Connect the engine block heater for at least 1 hour.
2. Make further attempts to start with the START/STOP ENGINE button.

IMPORTANT
If the engine does not start despite repeated start attempts, you are recommended to contact an authorised Volvo workshop.

Engine block heater*

Electrical input to the engine block heater.
When the temperature is expected to be lower than –10 °C and the car has been refuelled with bioethanol E85, an engine block heater should be used for about 2 hours to facilitate the quick starting of the engine.

The lower the temperature, the longer the time required with the engine block heater. At -20 °C the heater should be used for approx. 3 hours.

Cars intended for E85 have an electric engine block heater*. Starting and driving with a preheated engine involves significantly lower emissions and reduced fuel consumption. For this reason you should aim to use the engine block heater throughout the winter months.

WARNING
The engine block heater is powered by high voltage. Fault tracing and repair of an electric engine block heater and its electrical connections must only be carried out by a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

NOTE
Points to remember for carrying reserve fuel:
• In the event of stalling due to an empty fuel tank, bioethanol E85 from a reserve fuel can may make the engine difficult to start in extreme cold. This is avoided by filling the reserve fuel can with 95 octane petrol.

For more information on Flexifuel’s bioethanol E 85 fuel, see page 319 and 416.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
Fuel adaptation

Flexifuel engines can be driven on both 95 octane unleaded petrol and bioethanol E85. Both fuels are filled in the common fuel tank so that any variations of mixing ratios between these two fuels is possible.

If the fuel tank is filled with petrol after the car has been driven on bioethanol E85 (or vice versa) then the engine may run slightly unevenly for a time. For this reason it is important to allow the engine to accustom itself (adapt) to the new fuel mixture.

Adaptation takes place automatically when the car is driven for a short period at an even speed.

**IMPORTANT**

After the fuel mixture in the tank has been changed an adaptation should be made by driving at an even speed for about 15 minutes.

If the battery has been discharged or disconnected then a slightly longer period of driving is required for the adaptation as the memory for the electronics has been cleared.
**Starting the engine – external battery**

**Jump starting**

If the battery is flat then the car can be started with current from another battery.

When jump starting the car, the following steps are recommended to avoid short circuits or other damage:

1. Insert the remote control key in key position 0, see page 81.
2. Check that the donor battery has a voltage of 12 V.
3. If the donor battery is installed in another car - switch off the donor car’s engine and make sure that the two cars do not touch each other.

4. Connect one of the red jump lead’s clamps to the donor battery’s positive terminal (1).

**IMPORTANT**

Connect the start cable carefully to avoid short circuits with other components in the engine compartment.

5. Open the clips on the front cover of the battery in your car and remove the cover, see page 376.
6. Connect the red jump lead’s other clamp onto the car’s positive terminal (2).
7. Connect one of the black jump lead’s clamps to the donor battery’s negative terminal (3).
8. Connect the other clamp to a grounding point, e.g. right-hand engine mounting at the top, the outer screw head (4).
9. Check that the jump lead clamps are affixed securely so that there are no sparks during the starting procedure.
10. Start the engine of the “donor car” and allow it to run a few minutes at a speed slightly higher than idle approx. 1500 rpm.

11. Start the engine in the car with the discharged battery.

**IMPORTANT**

Do not touch the crocodile clips during the start procedure. There is a risk of sparks forming.

12. Remove the jump leads in reverse order - first the black and then the red.

> Make sure that none of the black jump lead’s clamps comes into contact with the battery’s positive terminal or the clamp connected to the red jump lead!

**WARNING**

- The battery can generate oxyhydrogen gas, which is highly explosive. A spark can be formed if a jump lead is connected incorrectly, and this can be enough for the battery to explode.
- The battery contains sulphuric acid, which can cause serious burns.
- If sulphuric acid comes into contact with eyes, skin or clothing, flush with large quantities of water. If acid splashes into the eyes - seek medical attention immediately.
For more information on the car’s battery - see page 375.
03 Your driving environment

Gearboxes

General

**IMPORTANT**

To prevent damage to any drive system components, the working temperature of the gearbox is checked. If there is a risk of overheating, a warning symbol in the combined instrument lights up and a text message is shown. Follow the recommendation given in the text message.

Start assistance on a hill - HSA*¹

The foot brake can be released before setting off or reversing uphill - the HSA (Hill Start Assist) function means that the car does not roll backwards.

The function means that the pedal pressure in the brake system remains for several seconds while the driver's foot is moved from brake pedal to accelerator pedal.

The temporary braking effect releases after several seconds or when the driver accelerates.

**Manual gearbox**

Look at the actual gearshift pattern imprinted on the gear lever.

- Depress the clutch pedal fully during each gear change.
- Take your foot off the clutch pedal between gear changes.

**WARNING**

Always apply the parking brake when parking on a slope - leaving the car in gear is not sufficient to hold the car in all situations.

**Reverse gear inhibitor**

The reverse gear inhibitor hinders the possibility of mistakenly attempting to engage reverse gear during normal forward travel.

- Follow the gearing pattern printed on the gear lever and start from neutral position, N before moving it to R position.
- Only engage reverse gear when the car is stationary.

¹ Standard/Option depends on the engine and gearbox combination. HSA not possible with some combinations.

**Gearshift pattern 5-speed gearbox.**

**Gearshift pattern 6-speed gearbox.**

The 6-speed box is available in two versions - reverse gear position differs between them.
NOTE
With the upper variant of the shifting pattern for 6-speed gearbox (see previous illustration) - first press down the gear lever in the N position in order to engage reverse gear.

Gear shift indicator*
An essential detail in connection with environmental driving is to drive in the right gear and to change gear in good time.

An indicator is available as an aid on certain variants - GSI (Gear Shift Indicator) - which notifies the driver when it is appropriate to engage the next higher or lower gear in order to obtain the lowest possible fuel consumption. However, taking into consideration characteristics such as performance and vibration-free running, it may be advantageous to change gear at a higher engine speed. The framed number indicates the current gear.

Manual gearbox
Gear shift indicator for manual gearbox. Only one marker is illuminated at a time - during normal driving it is only illuminated in the centre.

When gearing up/down as recommended, the upper one is illuminated at +" or the lower at ",", marked red in the illustration.

Automatic gearbox
Combined instrument panel "Digital" with gear shift indicator.

With "Analogue" combined instrument panel, the gear positions and indicator arrows are displayed in its centre.

Automatic gearbox Geartronic*


The combined instrument panel shows the position of the gear selector using the following indications: P, R, N, D, S*, 1, 2, 3 etc.

Gear positions
Automatic gear positions are indicated on the right of the combined instrument panel. (Only one marker is illuminated at a time - the one showing the current gear selector position.)

Symbol "S" for Sport mode is ORANGE when the mode is active.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
Gearboxes

Parking position - P
Select P position when starting the engine or when the car is parked.

- In order to be able to move the gear selector from P position, the brake pedal must first be depressed firmly.

The gearbox is mechanically blocked when the P position is engaged. Apply the parking brake as well, as a precaution - see page 145.

NOTE
The gear selector must be in P position to allow the car to be locked and alarmed.

IMPORTANT
The car must be stationary when position P is selected.

WARNING
Always apply the parking brake when parking on a slope - the automatic transmission’s P position is not sufficient to hold the car in all situation.

Neutral position - N
No gear is engaged and the engine can be started. Apply the parking brake if the car is stationary with the gear selector in N position.

Drive position - D
D is the normal driving position. Shifting up and down takes place automatically based on the level of acceleration and speed. The car must be stationary when the gear selector is moved to D position from R position.

Geartronic – Manual gear positions (+S–)
The driver can also change gear manually using the Geartronic automatic gearbox. The car engine-brakes when the accelerator pedal is released.

The manual gear position is reached by moving the lever to the side from position D to the end position at "+S-". The combined instrument panel’s symbol "+S-" changes colour from WHITE to ORANGE and the digits 1, 2, 3 etc. are displayed in a box, corresponding to the gear that has just been selected.

- Move the lever forward towards "+" (plus) to change up a gear and release it - the lever returns to its neutral position between "+" and "-".

or

- Pull the lever back towards "-" (minus) to change down a gear and release it.

The manual gearshift mode "+S-" can be selected at any time while driving.

Geartronic automatically shifts down if the driver allows the speed to decrease lower than a level suitable for the selected gear, in order to avoid jerking and stalling.

To return to automatic driving mode:

- Move the lever to the side to the end position at D.

NOTE
If the gearbox has a Sport programme then the gearbox will only become manual after the gear selector has been moved forwards or backwards in its "+S-" position. The combined instrument panel then changes indication from S to show which of the gears 1, 2, 3 etc. is engaged.

Paddles*
As a supplement to manual gear changing with the gear selector there are also controls located on the steering wheel, so-called "paddles".

To be able to change gear with the steering wheel paddles they must first be activated. This is by means of pulling one of the paddles
to the steering wheel - the combined instrument panel then changes indication from "D" to a figure, which indicates the current gear.

To then change gear one step:

- Pull one of the paddles backwards - towards the steering wheel - and release.

After each gear change the combined instrument panel changes figure to show the current gear.

**NOTE**

**Automatic deactivation**

If the steering wheel paddles are not used then they are deactivated after a short time - this is indicated when the combined instrument panel switches indication, from the figure for the current gear back to "D".

The exception is during engine braking - then the paddles are activated as long as engine braking is in progress.

The paddles can also be used with the gear selector in Sport mode* - then the paddles are constantly activated without being deactivated.

To activate Sport mode:

- Move the gear selector to the side from D position to the end position at "+S-" - the combined instrument panel changes indication from D to S.

Sport mode can be selected at any time while driving.

**Geartronic - Winter mode**

It can be easier to pull away on slippery roads if 3rd gear is engaged manually.

1. Depress the brake pedal and move the gear selector from D position to the end position at "+S-" - the combined instrument panel changes indication from D to the figure 1.
2. Scroll up to gear 3 by pushing the lever forward towards "+" (plus) twice - the combined instrument panel changes indication from 1 to 3.
3. Release the brake and accelerate carefully.

The gearbox "winter mode" means that the car moves off with a lower engine speed and reduced engine power on the drive wheels.

---

2 With some engines only.
3 If the car has Sport mode* then "S" is shown first.
Kick-down
When the accelerator pedal is pressed all the way to the floor (beyond the position normally regarded as full acceleration) a lower gear is immediately engaged. This is known as kick-down.

If the accelerator is released from the kick-down position, the gearbox automatically changes up.

Kick-down is used when maximum acceleration is needed, such as for overtaking.

Safety function
To prevent overrevving the engine, the gearbox control program has a protective downshift inhibitor which prevents the kick-down function.

Geartronic does not permit downshifting/kick-down which would result in an engine speed high enough to damage the engine. Nothing happens if the driver still tries to shift down in this way at high engine speed – the original gear remains engaged.

When kick-down is activated the car can change one or more gears at a time depending on engine speed. The car changes up when the engine reaches its maximum speed in order to prevent damage to the engine.

Mechanical gear selector inhibitor
The gear selector can be moved forward and back freely between N and D. Other positions are locked with a latch that is released with the inhibitor button on the gear selector.

With the inhibitor button depressed the lever can be moved forwards or backwards between P, R, N and D.

Automatic gear selector inhibitor
The automatic gearbox has special safety systems:

Parking position (P)
Stationary car with engine running:
- Keep your foot on the brake pedal when moving the gear selector to another position.

Electric gear inhibitor – Shiftlock
Parking position (P)
To be able to move the gear selector from P to other gear positions, the brake pedal must be depressed and the remote control key must be in position II, see page 81.

Shiftlock – Neutral (N)
If the gear selector is in N position and the car has been stationary for at least 3 seconds (irrespective of whether the engine is running) then the gear selector is locked.

To be able to move the gear selector from N to other gear positions, the brake pedal must be depressed and the remote control key must be in position II, see page 81.

Deactivate automatic gear selector inhibitor
If the car cannot be driven, e.g. due to a flat battery, the gear selector must be moved from the P position so that the car can be moved.

1. Lift the rubber mat in the compartment behind the centre console and locate a hole\(^4\) for the key blade\(^5\) in the bottom of the compartment.

2. Search for a spring-loaded button down in the hole with the key blade; depress the button with the blade and hold.

3. Move the gear selector from the P position and pull up the key blade.

4. Set the rubber mat back in place.

**Automatic gearbox Powershift**

The Powershift automatic gearbox transmits the motive force from the engine to the drive wheels with double mechanical clutch discs, as opposed to Geartronic which instead uses a hydraulic torque converter.

Powershift transmission operates in the same way\(^6\) and has similar controls and functions as the Geartronic automatic gearbox described in the previous section.

**Powershift or Geartronic?**

In the event of uncertainty as to whether or not the car is equipped with Powershift transmission, this can be verified by checking the designation on the gearbox label under the bonnet - see page 400. The designation "MPS6" means that it is Powershift transmission - otherwise it is Geartronic automatic transmission.

**To bear in mind**

The transmission’s double clutch has overload protection that is activated if it becomes too hot, e.g. if the car is held stationary with the accelerator pedal on an uphill gradient for a long time.

Overheated transmission causes the car to shake and vibrate, and the warning symbol illuminates and the combined instrument panel shows a message. The transmission can also overheat during slow driving in queues (10 km/h or slower) on an uphill gradient, or with a trailer hitched. The transmission cools down when the car is stationary, with foot brake depressed and the engine running at idling speed.

Overheating during slow driving in queues can be avoided by driving in stages:

- Stop the car and wait with your foot on the brake pedal until there is a moderate distance to the traffic ahead, drive for-

\(^4\) There may be 2 holes - one for the key blade and one that fixes the rubber mat.

\(^5\) For information on the key blade, see page 48.

\(^6\) One exception is the heading "Geartronic - Winter mode": Powershift enables driving away on a slippery road surface if 2nd gear is engaged manually - not 3rd gear.
ward a short distance, and then wait another moment with your foot on the brake pedal.

**IMPORTANT**

Use the foot brake to hold the car stationary on an uphill gradient - do not hold the car with the accelerator pedal. The gearbox could then overheat.

For important information regarding Powershift transmission and towing - see page 335.

**Text message and action**

In some situations the combined instrument panel may show a message at the same time as a symbol is illuminated.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Driving characteristics</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>🚦</td>
<td>Transm. overheat brake to hold</td>
<td>Difficulty in maintaining even speed at constant engine speed.</td>
<td>Transmission overheated. Keep the car stationary using the foot brake.(^A)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🚦</td>
<td>Transm. overheat park safely</td>
<td>Significant pulling in the car’s traction.</td>
<td>Transmission overheated. Park the car immediately in a safe manner.(^A)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🚦</td>
<td>Transm. cooling let engine run</td>
<td>No drive due to overheated gearbox.</td>
<td>Transmission overheated. For fastest cooling: Run the engine at idling speed with the gear lever in the N or P position until the message clears.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^A\) For fastest cooling: run the engine at idling speed with the gear lever in the N or P position, until the message clears.

The table shows three steps with an increased degree of seriousness should the transmission become too hot. In parallel with the text message, the driver is also advised that the car’s electronics are temporarily changing the driving characteristics. Follow the instructions in the text message where appropriate.

**NOTE**

The table’s examples are no indication that the car is defective but instead show that a safety function has been activated intentionally to prevent damage to one of the car’s components.
WARNING

If a warning symbol combined with the text Transm. overheat park safely is ignored then the heat in the gearbox may become so high that the power transmission between engine and gearbox is temporarily halted in order to prevent the clutch from malfunctioning - the car then loses drive and is stationary until gearbox temperature has cooled to an acceptable level.

For more possible text messages with their respective proposals for solutions concerning automatic transmission, see page 211.

A text message extinguishes automatically after the action has been carried out or after one press on the indicator stalk OK button.
03 Your driving environment

**Start/Stop**

**Quieter and cleaner**
Environmental care is one of Volvo Car Corporation’s core values and it influences all of our operations. This target orientation has resulted in several separate energy-saving functions of which Start/Stop is one, all with the collective task of reducing fuel consumption, which in turn helps to reduce exhaust emissions.

**General information on Start/Stop**

Some engine and gearbox combinations come fitted with a Start and Stop function which engages in the event of e.g. stationary traffic or waiting at traffic lights - the engine is then switched off temporarily and restarts automatically when the journey is due to continue.

The Start/Stop function gives the driver the opportunity for a more active environmentally conscious way of driving the car by means of being able to allow the engine to stop automatically, whenever appropriate.

**Manual or Automatic**
Note that there are differences in the Start/Stop function depending on whether the gearbox is manual or automatic.

**Function and operation**

Start/Stop
The function is activated automatically when the engine is started with the key. The driver is made aware of this by the function’s symbol illuminating in the combined instrument panel and the On/Off button lamp illuminating.

All of the car’s normal systems such as lighting, radio, etc. work as normal even with an engine that has stopped automatically, except that some equipment may have the function temporarily reduced, e.g. the climate control system’s fan speed or extremely high volume on the audio system.

**Auto-stopping the engine**
The following is required for the engine to auto-stop:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conditions</th>
<th>M/A</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Declutch, set the gear lever in neutral position and release the clutch pedal - the engine stops automatically.</td>
<td>M</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stop the car with the foot brake and then keep your foot on the pedal - the engine stops automatically.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\[ M = \text{Manual gearbox, A = Automatic gearbox.}\]

In some cases the engine stops automatically before the car is completely stationary.

As verification and reminder that the engine is auto-stopped the combined instrument panel’s symbols for the Start/Stop function illuminate.

---

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
Auto-starting the engine

**Conditions**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>M/A^</th>
<th>With the gear lever in neutral position:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1. Depress the clutch pedal or press the accelerator pedal - the engine starts.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2. Engage a suitable gear and drive.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following option is also available on a downhill gradient:

Release the foot brake and let the car move off - the engine starts automatically when the speed exceeds normal walking pace.

Release the foot pressure on the foot brake - the engine starts automatically and the journey can continue.


Start assistance HSA

The foot brake can also be released on an uphill gradient to start the engine automatically - the HSA function (Hill Start Assist) means that the car does not roll backwards.

The function means that the pedal pressure in the brake system remains for several seconds while the driver’s foot is moved from brake pedal to accelerator pedal before driving off with the engine having stopped automatically. The temporary braking effect releases after a couple of seconds or when the driver accelerates.

There is more information available on HSA, see page 126.

Deactivating the Start/Stop function

In certain situations, it may advisable to temporarily switch off the automatic Start/Stop function - this is carried out with a push of this button.

Disengaged function is indicated by the combined instrument panel’s Start/Stop symbols and the On/Off button’s lamp extinguishing.

The Start/Stop function is disengaged until it is reactivated with the button or until the next time the engine is started with the key.

Limitations

The engine does not auto-stop

Even if the Start/Stop function is activated, the engine does not auto-stop if:

**Conditions**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>M/A^</th>
<th>the car has not achieved approx. 5 km/h (= fast walking pace) first after a key start or the last auto-stop.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>the driver has opened the seatbelt’s buckle.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>the capacity of the battery is below the minimum permissible level.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>the engine does not have normal operating temperature.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>outside temperature is below freezing point or above approx. 30 °C.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>the windscreen’s electric heating is activated.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
### Start/Stop*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conditions</th>
<th>M/A&lt;sup&gt;A&lt;/sup&gt;</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>the environment in the passenger compartment deviates from the preset values&lt;sup&gt;B&lt;/sup&gt; - indicated by the ventilation fan running at a high speed.</td>
<td>M + A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the car is reversed.</td>
<td>M + A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the starter battery temperature is below the freezing point or is too high.</td>
<td>M + A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the driver makes greater steering wheel movements.</td>
<td>M + A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the exhaust system's particulate filter is full - the temporarily disengaged Start/Stop function is reactivated once an automatic cleaning cycle has been performed (see page 320).</td>
<td>M + A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the road is very steep.</td>
<td>M + A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a trailer is connected electrically to the car's electrical system.</td>
<td>M + A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Conditions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conditions</th>
<th>M/A&lt;sup&gt;A&lt;/sup&gt;</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>the atmospheric air pressure is less than equivalent to 1500-2000 metres above sea level - the current air pressure varies with the prevailing weather conditions.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adaptive cruise control Queue Assist is activated.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the driver's door has been opened with the gear selector in D position.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the gear selector is moved out of the D position to S position&lt;sup&gt;C&lt;/sup&gt; or &quot;+/-&quot;.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>A</sup> M = Manual gearbox, A = Automatic gearbox.  
<sup>B</sup> Cars with ECC.  
<sup>C</sup> Sport mode.

#### The engine auto-starts

An auto-stopped engine may restart in some cases without the driver having decided that the journey should continue. In the following cases the engine also starts automatically if the driver has not depressed the clutch pedal (manual gearbox) or takes his/her foot off the brake pedal (automatic gearbox):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conditions</th>
<th>M/A&lt;sup&gt;A&lt;/sup&gt;</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Misting forms on the windows.</td>
<td>M + A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The environment in the passenger compartment deviates from the preset values&lt;sup&gt;B&lt;/sup&gt;.</td>
<td>M + A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The outside temperature falls below freezing point or exceeds approx. 30 °C.</td>
<td>M + A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There is a temporarily high current take-off or battery capacity drops below the lowest permissible level.</td>
<td>M + A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Repeated pumping of the brake pedal.</td>
<td>M + A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The car starts to roll - faster than the equivalent normal walking pace.</td>
<td>M</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The driver's belt lock is opened with the gear selector in D or N position.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steering wheel movements.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
### Conditions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conditions</th>
<th>M/A A</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The gear selector is moved from the D position to &quot;+/−&quot; or R.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The driver's door is opened with the gear selector in D position - a &quot;ping&quot; sound and text message inform that the Start/Stop function is active.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^{A} M = \text{Manual gearbox, } A = \text{Automatic gearbox.}\)

### WARNING

Do not open the bonnet when the engine has stopped automatically - the engine may suddenly start automatically. First switch off the engine as normal using the **START/STOP ENGINE** button before opening the bonnet.

### The engine does not auto-start

In the following cases the engine does not auto-start after having auto-stopped:

**Involuntary engine stop with manual gearbox**

In the event that a start-up fails and the engine stops, proceed as follows:

1. Depress the clutch pedal again - the engine starts automatically.
2. In certain cases the gear lever must be set in neutral position. The combined instrument panel then shows the text Put gear in neutral.

### More information and settings

The car’s menu system **MY CAR**, under the heading **DRIVe**, contains an introduction of Volvo’s Start-Stop system, as well as recommendations for energy-saving driving techniques - see page 214.
### Start/Stop*

**Symbols and messages**

In combination with this indicator lamp the Start/Stop function may show text messages in the combined instrument panel for certain situations. For some of them there is a recommended action that should be performed. The following table shows some examples.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Info/Action</th>
<th>M/A³</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="M/A" /></td>
<td>Engine in Auto Start</td>
<td>Illuminates for several seconds after Start/Stop has been activated.</td>
<td>M + A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="M/A" /></td>
<td>Eco DRIVe OFF</td>
<td>Illuminates for several seconds after Start/Stop has been switched off.</td>
<td>M + A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="M/A" /></td>
<td>Auto Start-Stop serv. required</td>
<td>Start/Stop is not operational. Contact a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.</td>
<td>M + A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="M/A" /></td>
<td>Engine management system</td>
<td>An automatic function check is carried out.</td>
<td>M + A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="A" /></td>
<td>Autostart Engine running + acoustic signal</td>
<td>Activated if the driver’s door is opened with auto-stopped engine.</td>
<td>M + A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="START/STOP" /></td>
<td>Engine in Auto Start</td>
<td>The engine is ready to start automatically - waiting for the brake or clutch pedal to be depressed.</td>
<td>M</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="START/STOP" /></td>
<td>Press Start button</td>
<td>The engine will not start automatically - start the engine as normal with the <strong>START/STOP ENGINE</strong> button.</td>
<td>M</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Depress clutch pedal to start" /></td>
<td>Depress clutch pedal to start</td>
<td>The engine is ready to auto-start - waiting for the clutch pedal to be depressed.</td>
<td>M</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
## Start/Stop*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Info/Action</th>
<th>M/A^</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Depress brake pedal to start" /></td>
<td>Depress brake pedal to start</td>
<td>The engine is ready to auto-start - waiting for the brake pedal to be depressed.</td>
<td>M</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Press brake and clutch to start" /></td>
<td>Press brake and clutch to start</td>
<td>The engine is ready to auto-start - waiting for the brake or clutch pedal to be depressed.</td>
<td>M</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Put gear in neutral to start" /></td>
<td>Put gear in neutral to start</td>
<td>Gear is engaged without declutching - disengage and set the gear lever in neutral position.</td>
<td>M</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Engine in Auto Start" /></td>
<td>Engine in Auto Start</td>
<td>The engine is ready to start automatically - waiting for the brake pedal to be released.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Select P or N to start" /></td>
<td>Select P or N to start</td>
<td>Start/Stop has been deactivated - move the gear selector to N or P position and start the engine as normal with the START/STOP ENGINE button.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Press Start button" /></td>
<td>Press Start button</td>
<td>The engine will not start automatically - start the engine as normal with the START/STOP ENGINE button and the gear selector in P or N.</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


If a message does not go out following completion of the action then a workshop should be contacted - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended. * Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
All Wheel Drive (All Wheel Drive) means that the car is driving all four wheels at the same time.

The power is automatically distributed between the front and rear wheels. An electronically controlled clutch system distributes the power to the wheels that have the best grip on the current road surface. This provides the best traction and prevents wheel spin. Under normal driving conditions, the majority of power is transmitted to the front wheels.

All Wheel Drive improves driving safety in rain, snow and icy conditions.
03 Your driving environment

Foot brake

General
The car is equipped with two brake circuits. If one brake circuit is damaged then this will mean that the brakes engage at a deeper level and higher pedal pressure is needed to produce the normal braking effect.

The driver's brake pedal pressure is assisted by a brake servo.

**WARNING**
The brake servo only works when the engine is running.

If the brake is used when the engine is switched off then the pedal will feel stiff and a higher pedal pressure must be used to brake the car.

In very hilly terrain or when driving with a heavy load the brakes can be relieved by using engine braking. Engine braking is most efficiently used if the same gear is used downhill as up.

For more general information on heavy loads on the car, see page 410.

Anti-lock braking system
The car is equipped with ABS (Anti-lock Braking System) which prevents the wheels from locking during braking. This means the ability to steer is maintained and it is easier to swerve to avoid a hazard for example. Vibration may be felt in the brake pedal when this is engaged and this is normal.

A short test of the ABS system is made automatically after the engine has been started when the driver releases the brake pedal. A further automatic test of the ABS system may be made when the car reaches 10 km/h. The test may be experienced as pulses in the brake pedal.

**Emergency brake lights and automatic hazard warning flashers**
Emergency brake lights are activated to alert vehicles behind about sudden braking. The function means that the brake light flashes instead of - as in normal braking - shining with a constant glow.

Emergency brake lights are activated at speeds above 50 km/h if the ABS system is working and/or in the event of sudden braking. After the car's speed has been slowed below 10 km/h the brake light returns from flashing to the normal constant glow - while at the same time the hazard warning flashers are activated, and they flash until the driver changes engine speed with the accelerator pedal or they are deactivated with their button, see page 95.

Cleaning the brake discs
Coatings of dirt and water on the brake discs may result in delayed brake function. This delay is minimised by cleaning the brake linings.

Manual cleaning is advisable with wet road surfaces, prior to long-stay parking and after the car has been washed. Carry this out by braking gently during a short period while en route.

**Emergency Brake Assistance**
Emergency Brake Assistance EBA (Emergency Brake Assist) helps to increase brake force and so reduce braking distance. EBA detects the driver's braking style and increases brake force as necessary. The brake force can be reinforced up to the level when the ABS system is engaged. The EBA function is interrupted when the pressure on the brake pedal is reduced.

**NOTE**
When EBA is activated the brake pedal lowers slightly more than usual, depress (hold) the brake pedal as long as necessary. If the brake pedal is released then all braking ceases.
**Foot brake**

**Maintenance**
To keep the car as safe and reliable as possible, follow the Volvo service intervals as specified in the Service and Warranty Booklet, see page 358.

![IMPORTANT]

The wear on the brake system’s components must be checked regularly.

Contact a workshop for information about the procedure or engage a workshop to carry out the inspection - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

![WARNING]

If ![ ⬆️ ] and ![ ⬇️ ] illuminate at the same time, there may be a fault in the brake system.

If the level in the brake fluid reservoir is normal at this stage, drive carefully to the nearest workshop and have the brake system checked - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

If the brake fluid is under the MIN level in the brake fluid reservoir, do not drive further before topping up the brake fluid.

The reason for the loss of brake fluid must be investigated.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Specification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>![ ⬆️ ]</td>
<td>Constant glow – Check the brake fluid level. If the level is low, fill with brake fluid and check for the cause of the brake fluid loss.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![ ⬇️ ]</td>
<td>Constant glow for 2 seconds when the engine is started - automatic function check.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
HDC Hill Descent Control

General
HDC can be compared to an automatic engine brake. When you release the accelerator on downhill gradients the car is normally braked by means of the engine striving for low engine idling speeds, so-called engine braking. But the steeper the road and the more load there is in the car, the faster the car rolls despite engine braking. In order to then reduce speed the driver has to assist using the foot brake.

WARNING
HDC does not work in all situations, but is instead only intended to be supplementary assistance.

The driver always has ultimate responsibility that the car is driven safely.

HDC makes it possible to increase/reduce speed on steep downhill gradients, with a foot only on the accelerator pedal, without using the foot brake. The sensitivity of the accelerator pedal decreases and becomes more precise by means of the full actuation of the pedal being restricted to adjusting engine speed within a limited range. The brake system brakes itself and provides the car with a low and even speed, so allowing the driver to fully focus on steering.

HDC is particularly helpful on steep gradients with an uneven road surface and slippery sections. E.g. when launching a boat on a trailer from a ramp.

Function
HDC is engaged or disengaged using a switch on the centre console. An indicator lamp in the button illuminates when the function is switched on.

HDC is engaged or disengaged using a switch on the centre console. An indicator lamp in the button illuminates when the function is switched on.

When HDC is operating this symbol illuminates and the combined instrument panel shows Hill descent control ON

The function only operates with gear 1 or reverse gear R - with automatic gearbox the combined instrument panel then shows the character 1 or R, see page 128.

NOTE
HDC cannot be activated in an automatic gearbox with the gear selector in position D.

Operation
HDC allows the car to roll at a maximum of 10 km/h forwards with engine braking and 7 km/h backwards. However, any speed within the gear’s speed register can be selected using the accelerator pedal. When the accelerator pedal is released, the car is braked quickly to 10 or 7 km/h respectively, irrespective of the hill’s gradient and without the need for the foot brake.

The brake lights come on automatically when the function is operating. The driver can brake or stop the car at any time by using the foot brake.

HDC is deactivated:

1 HDC is only available on the XC70.
HDC Hill Descent Control

- with the on/off button on the centre console
- if a gear higher than 1 is selected on a manual gearbox
- if a gear higher than 1 is selected on an automatic gearbox, or if the gear selector is moved to position D.

The function can be disengaged at any time. If it takes place on a steep downhill gradient then the braking effect will not release directly, but slowly instead.

**NOTE**
With HDC activated you may experience a delay between acceleration pedal activation and engine response.
General

Function
A faint electric motor noise can be heard when the electrical parking brake is being applied. The noise can also be heard during the automatic function checking of the parking brake.

If the car is stationary when the parking brake is applied then it only acts on the rear wheels. If it is applied when the car is moving then the normal foot brake is used, i.e. the brake acts on all four wheels. Brake function changes over to the rear wheels when the car is almost stationary.

Low battery voltage
If the battery voltage is too low then the parking brake can neither be released nor applied. Connect a donor battery if the battery voltage is too low, see page 124.

Applying the parking brake

1. Press the foot brake pedal down firmly.
2. Press the control PUSH LOCK/PULL RELEASE.
   > The combined instrument panel’s symbol starts flashing - once there is a constant glow the parking brake is applied.
3. Release the foot brake pedal and make sure that the car is at a standstill position.
   • When parking the vehicle, always engage 1st gear (for manual gearbox) or put the gear selector in position P (for automatic gearbox).

Emergency brake
In an emergency the parking brake can be applied when the vehicle is in motion by pressing and holding the control for PUSH LOCK/PULL RELEASE. The braking procedure is stopped when the control is released.

NOTE
In the event of emergency braking at speeds above 10 km/h a signal sounds during the braking procedure.

Parking on a hill
If the car is parked facing uphill:
• Turn the wheels away from the kerb.
If the car is parked facing downhill:
• Turn the wheels towards the kerb.

WARNING
Always apply the parking brake when parking on a slope - leaving the car in gear, or in P if it has automatic transmission, is not sufficient to hold the car in all situation.
Disengaging the parking brake

Parking brake control - release.

Cars with manual gearbox

Releasing manually
1. Insert the remote control key in the ignition switch.\(^1\)
2. Press the foot brake pedal down firmly.
3. Pull the control PUSH LOCK/PULL RELEASE.
   > ▶️ The parking brake releases and the combined instrument panel's symbol extinguishes.

Releasing automatically
1. Start the engine.
2. Engage 1st gear or reverse gear.
3. Ease up the clutch and depress the accelerator.
   > ▶️ The parking brake releases and the combined instrument panel's symbol extinguishes.

Cars with automatic gearbox

Releasing manually
1. Insert the remote control key in the ignition switch.\(^1\)
2. Press the foot brake pedal down firmly.
3. Pull the control PUSH LOCK/PULL RELEASE.
   > ▶️ The parking brake releases and the combined instrument panel's symbol extinguishes.

Releasing automatically
1. Put the seatbelt on.
2. Start the engine.
3. Press the foot brake pedal down firmly.
4. Move the gear selector to position D or R and depress the accelerator.
   > ▶️ The parking brake releases and the combined instrument panel's symbol extinguishes.

\(^1\) For a car with the Keyless system: Press START/STOP ENGINE.

NOTE

The parking brake can also be released manually by depressing the clutch pedal instead of the brake pedal. Volvo recommends the use of the brake pedal.

NOTE

For safety reasons, the parking brake is only released automatically if the engine is running and the driver is wearing a seatbelt. The parking brake is released immediately on cars with automatic gearbox when the accelerator pedal is depressed and the gear selector is in position D or R.

Heavy load uphill

A heavy load, such as a trailer, can cause the car to roll backward when the parking brake is released automatically on a steep incline. Avoid this by depressing the control while driving off. Release the control when the engine achieves traction.
### Replacing the brake linings

The rear brake linings must be replaced at a workshop due to the design of the electric parking brake - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

### Symbols and messages

For information on how the combined instrument panel's text messages can be shown and deleted, see page 211.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Meaning/Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Parking brake" /></td>
<td>Park brake not fully released</td>
<td>A fault is preventing the parking brake from being released:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Try to apply and release the brake.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>If the fault persists after a few attempts:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Visit a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Note: A warning signal sounds if the journey is continued with this error message.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Parking brake" /></td>
<td><em>Message</em></td>
<td>• Read the combined instrument panel's message.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Parking brake" /></td>
<td></td>
<td>A flashing symbol indicates that the parking brake is applied.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>If the symbol flashes in any other situation then this means that a fault has arisen:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Read the combined instrument panel's message.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Parking brake

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Meaning/Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Parking brake not applied | A fault is preventing the parking brake from being applied:  
- Try to release and apply the brake.  
If the fault persists after a few attempts:  
- Visit a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.  
The message is also illuminated on cars with manual gearbox when the car is driven at low speed with the door open in order to alert the driver that the parking brake may have been unintentionally disengaged. |
| Parking brake Service required | A fault has arisen:  
- Try to apply and release the brake.  
If the fault persists after a few attempts:  
- Visit a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended. |

- If the car has to be parked before a possible fault has been rectified, then the wheels must be turned as if parking on a hill and 1st gear engaged (manual gearbox) or the gear selector must be in position P (automatic gearbox).

A text message can be acknowledged by briefly pressing the OK button on the direction indicator stalk.
HomeLink®1 is a programmable remote control which can remotely control up to three different devices (e.g. garage door opener, alarm system, outdoor lighting and indoor lighting etc.) and in doing so replace their remote controls. For more information on HomeLink®, visit: www.homelink.com or ring 00 8000 466 354 65 (or premium rate phone number, +49 6838 907 277).

General

WARNING

- If HomeLink® is used to operate a garage door or gate, make sure that there is no-one in the vicinity of the door or gate while it is moving.
- The car should remain outside the garage while a garage door opener is being programmed.
- Do not use HomeLink® for any garage door that does not have safety stop and safety reverse.

Programming HomeLink®

NOTE

In certain vehicles the ignition must be switched on or in "accessory position" before HomeLink® can be programmed or used. If possible, fit new batteries in the remote control that shall be replaced by HomeLink® for faster programming and improved transmission of the radio signal. The HomeLink® buttons should be reset before programming. When this has been done HomeLink® is set in "learn mode" and ready for programming.

1. Aim the original remote control towards the HomeLink® button to be programmed and hold it 5-14 cm from the button. Do not obstruct the indicator lamp on HomeLink®.

2. Depress the button on the original remote control and the button to be programmed on HomeLink® simultaneously. Do not release the buttons until the indicator lamp has changed over from slow to rapid flashing. Both the buttons must be released when the indicator lamp flashes quickly.

Save the original remote controls for future programming (e.g. when changing to another car or for use in another vehicle). It is also recommended that the programming for the buttons is deleted when the car is sold. See the section "Resetting the HomeLink® buttons" on page 150.

1 HomeLink® and the HomeLink house symbol are registered trademarks of Johnson Controls, Inc.
3. **Depress the HomeLink® button being programmed, hold it depressed for 5 seconds and then release it.** Repeat if necessary until the garage door is activated. If the door is not activated, press the programmed HomeLink® button and hold it depressed and check the indicator lamp.

   - **Constant glow:** The indicator lamp illuminates with a constant glow when the button is kept depressed, this indicates that the programming is complete. The garage door, gate or similar should now be activated when the programmed HomeLink® button is depressed.

   - **Glow not constant:** The indicator lamp flashes quickly for approx. 2 seconds and then changes over to a constant glow. In which case, continue with the programming steps 4-6 in order to complete the programming of a device with rolling code (usually a garage door opener).

4. **Locate the "programming button 2" on the receiver for the garage door for example, normally located close to the antenna's bracket on the receiver.**

5. **Depress and release the receiver's "programming button".** The button flashes for approx. 30 seconds and the next step must be carried out within this period.

6. **While the receiver's "programming button" is still flashing, press the button on HomeLink® being programmed and hold it depressed for approx. 2 seconds and then release it.** Repeat the press/hold/release sequence up to 3 times to conclude the programming.

**Operation**

When HomeLink® is fully programmed it can be used in place of the separate original remote controls.

Press the programmed button and hold it depressed until the garage door, alarm system, etc. is activated (may take several seconds). Naturally the original remote controls can still be used in parallel with HomeLink® if required.

**NOTE**

If the ignition is switched off, HomeLink® will work for 30 minutes after the driver’s door has been opened.

---

2 Button designation and colour vary depending on manufacturer.
**Programming individual buttons**

To reprogram an individual HomeLink® button, proceed as follows:

1. Depress the required button and **do not release**.

2. When the indicator lamp on HomeLink® starts to flash, after approx. 20 seconds, start with step 1 in section "Programming HomeLink®" on page 149.

For more information or to leave comments about HomeLink®, visit: www.homelink.com or ring 00 8000 466 354 65 (or premium rate phone number +49 6838 907 277).
DSTC – Stability and traction control system ........................................... 154
Road sign information - RSI* ................................................................. 156
Cruise control* .................................................................................... 159
Adaptive cruise control* ............................................................... 161
Distance Warning* ........................................................................ 172
City Safety™ ................................................................................. 175
Collision Warning with Auto Brake & Pedestrian Protection* .......... 181
Driver Alert System* ...................................................................... 189
Driver Alert System - DAC* ............................................................. 190
Driver Alert System - LDW* .............................................................. 194
Park assist syst* ............................................................................. 197
Park assist camera* ........................................................................ 200
BLIS* .............................................................................................. 203

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
DRIVER SUPPORT
General information on DSTC

The stability and traction control system, DSTC (Dynamic Stability & Traction Control) helps the driver to avoid skidding and improves the car’s traction.

The activation of the system during braking may be noticed as a throbbing sound. The car may accelerate slower than expected when the accelerator pedal is depressed.

Active Yaw Control

The function limits the driving and brake force of the wheels individually in order to stabilise the car.

Spin Control

The function prevents the driving wheels from spinning against the road surface during acceleration.

Traction control system

The function is active at low speed and transfers power from the driving wheel that is spinning to the one that is not.

Trailer stabiliser - TSA

The function serves to stabilise the car and trailer combination if it begins to snake, see page 334.

Operation

Selection of level - Sport mode

The DSTC system is always activated - it cannot be deactivated.

However, the driver can select the Sport mode, which allows for a more active driving experience. In Sport mode the system detects whether the accelerator pedal, steering movements and cornering are more active than in normal driving and then allows controlled skidding with the rear section up to a certain level before it intervenes and stabilises the car.

If the driver stops a controlled skid by releasing the accelerator pedal then the DSTC system intervenes and stabilises the car.

With Sport mode, maximum traction is obtained if the car has become stuck, or when driving on a loose surface - e.g. sand or deep snow.

Proceed as follows to select Sport mode:

1. Press the centre console button MY CAR and search in the screen’s menu system and locate My V70/XC70 ➔ DSTC. (For information on the menu system, see page 213).
2. Uncheck the box and back out of the menu system with EXIT.

The Sport mode is active until the driver deselected it or until the engine is switched off - after the engine is started the next time the DSTC system is back in its normal mode again.

NOTE

The function is deactivated if the driver selects Sport mode.

1 Included in the installation of Volvo genuine towbar.
## DSTC – Stability and traction control system

### Symbols and text messages

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Specification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image1" alt="" /></td>
<td>DSTC Temporarily OFF</td>
<td>DSTC system temporarily reduced due to excessive brake disc temperature. - The function is reactivated automatically when the brakes have cooled.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| ![](image2) | DSTC Service required | DSTC system disengaged.  
  - Stop the car in a safe place, switch off the engine and start it again.  
  - Visit a workshop if the message remains - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended. |
| ![](image3) | "Message" | There is a text message in the combined instrument panel - Read it! |
| ![](image4) | Constant glow for 2 seconds. | System check when the engine is started. |
| ![](image5) | Flashing light. | DSTC system is being activated. |
| ![](image6) | DSTC SPORT | Sport mode is activated. |
Road sign information - RSI*

General information on RSI

Examples of readable speed-related\(^1\) signs.
The Road sign information function (RSI – Road Sign Information) helps the driver to remember which road signs the car has passed through information on - among other things - the current speed, the start/end of a motorway or road, and when overtaking is prohibited.

If both a sign for motorway/road for motorised traffic and a sign showing the maximum permitted speed are passed, RSI decides to show the sign symbol for maximum permitted speed.

\(^{1}\) Road signs shown in the combined instrument panel are market-dependent - the illustrations in the manual only show a few examples.

WARNING
RSI does not work in all situations but is designed merely as a supplementary aid. The driver always bears ultimate responsibility for ensuring that the vehicle is driven safely and that applicable road traffic rules and regulations are followed.

Together with the symbol for the current speed limit, a sign showing that overtaking is prohibited may also be displayed where appropriate.

End of restriction or motorway
A corresponding road sign is shown in the combined instrument panel for approx. 10 seconds in situations where RSI detects a sign that involves the end of a speed limit - or other speed-related information, e.g. end of a motorway.

Examples of such signs are:

- End of all restrictions.
- End of motorway.

Operation

Recorded speed information\(^1\).
When RSI has recorded a road sign with an imposed speed, the combined instrument panel displays the sign as a symbol.
Following which, the sign information is hidden until the next speed-related sign is detected.

**Additional signs**

![Example of additional signs](image)

**Examples of additional signs**

Sometimes different speed limits are signposted for the same road - an additional sign then indicates the circumstances under which the different speeds apply. The road section may be particularly susceptible to accidents in rain and/or fog, for example.

An additional sign relating to rain is displayed only if the windscreen wipers are in use.

The speed applicable on an exit is indicated in certain markets by means of an additional sign containing an arrow.

Speed signs linked to this type of additional sign are displayed only if the driver is using the direction indicator.

Some speeds are applicable only after e.g. a specific distance or at a certain time of day. The driver’s attention is drawn to the situation by means of a symbol for an additional sign under the symbol showing speed.

**Display of additional information**

A symbol for additional sign in the form of an empty frame under the combined instrument panel’s speed symbol means that the RSI has detected an additional sign with supplementary information for the current speed limit.

**Setting in MY CAR**

There are options for RSI in the **MY CAR** menu system, see page 214.

**Road sign information On/Off**

The combined instrument panel’s speed symbol display can be disabled. To deactivate the RSI function:

- Uncheck the option **Road Sign Information** at **Settings** ➔ **Car settings** ➔ **Road Sign Information** and go back out by pressing **EXIT**.

---

1 Road signs shown in the combined instrument panel are market-dependent - the illustrations in the manual only show a few examples.
04 Driver support

Road sign information - RSI*

Speed warning

The driver can opt to receive a warning when the applicable speed limit is exceeded by 5 km/h or more. This warning is given by the symbol showing the applicable maximum speed temporarily flashing when this speed is exceeded.

To activate speed warning:

- Check Speed alert at Settings ➔ Car settings ➔ Speed alert and go back out by pressing EXIT.

Limitations

The RSI function’s camera sensor is limited - just like the human eye. Find out more about this on page 186.

Signs which indirectly provide information on a prevailing speed limit, e.g. name signs for towns/districts, are not recorded by the RSI function.

Here are several examples of what can disrupt the function:

- Faded signs
- Signs positioned on bends
- Rotated or damaged signs
- Concealed or poorly positioned signs
- Signs completely or partly covered with frost, snow and/or dirt.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
General information on CC
The cruise control (CC – Cruise Control) helps the driver maintain an even speed, resulting in a more relaxed driving on motorways and long, straight roads in regular traffic flows.

**WARNING**
The driver must always be observant with regard to the traffic conditions and intervene when the cruise control is not maintaining a suitable speed and/or suitable distance.

The driver always bears ultimate responsibility for ensuring that the vehicle is driven safely.

**Operation**

Steering wheel keypad and display.

2. Standby mode ceases and the stored speed is resumed.
3. Standby mode
4. Activate and adjust the speed.
5. Selected speed (GREY = Standby mode).
6. Cruise control active - WHITE symbol (GREY = Standby mode).

**Activating and setting the speed**
To enable cruise control:
- Press the steering wheel button ⬆️

> The cruise control symbol (6) in the combined instrument panel changes from GREY to WHITE and shows that the cruise control is in standby mode.

To activate cruise control:
- At the required speed - press the steering wheel button ⬆️ or ⬇️.

> The current speed is stored in the memory and the combined instrument panel’s marking (5) is illuminated at the selected speed.

**NOTE**
Cruise control cannot be engaged at speeds below 30 km/h.

**Changing the speed**
To change the stored speed:
- Adjust with short presses on ⬆️ or ⬇️ - every press gives +/- 5 km/h. The last presses made are stored in the memory.

To adjust +/- 1 km/h:
- Hold the button depressed and release it at the desired speed.

A temporary increase in speed with the accelerator pedal, e.g. during overtaking, does not affect the cruise control setting - the car...
returns to the set speed when the accelerator pedal is released.

**NOTE**
If any of the Cruise Control buttons are held depressed for several minutes then it is blocked and deactivated. To be able to reactivate Cruise Control, the car must be stopped and the engine restarted.

**Temporary deactivation - standby mode**
To temporarily disengage cruise control and set it in standby mode:
- Press the steering wheel button 0.

  > The combined instrument panel’s marking (5) and symbol (6) change colour from WHITE to GREY.

**Automatic standby mode**
Cruise control is temporarily disengaged and set in standby mode if:
- wheels lose traction
- the foot brake is used
- speed falls below approx. 30 km/h
- the clutch pedal is depressed
- the gear selector is moved to neutral position (automatic gearbox)
- the driver maintains a speed higher than the set speed for longer than 1 minute.

The driver must then regulate the speed.

**Resume set speed**
To reactivate the cruise control from standby mode:
- Press the steering wheel button 0.

  > The combined instrument panel’s marking (5) and symbol (6) change colour from GREY to WHITE and the speed is then set to the last speed stored.

**Deactivate**
The cruise control is switched off with the steering wheel button (1) or by switching off the engine - the set speed is deleted from the memory and cannot be resumed with the 0 button.

*Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.*
Adaptive cruise control*

General information on ACC

The adaptive cruise control (ACC – Adaptive Cruise Control) helps the driver maintain a safe distance from the vehicle ahead. Adaptive cruise control provides a more relaxing driving experience on long journeys on motorways and long straight main roads in smooth traffic flows.

The driver sets the desired speed and time interval to the car in front. When the radar detector detects a slower vehicle in front of the car, the speed is automatically adapted to that. When the road is clear again the car returns to the selected speed.

If the adaptive cruise control is switched off or set to the standby mode and the car comes too close to a vehicle in front, then the driver is warned instead by Distance Warning (see page 172) about the short distance.

**WARNING**

The driver must always be observant with regard to the traffic conditions and intervene when the adaptive cruise control is not maintaining a suitable speed or suitable distance.

The adaptive cruise control cannot handle all traffic, weather and road conditions. Read the whole of this section for information on the limitations of the adaptive cruise control. The driver must be familiar with this information before using the adaptive cruise control.

The driver always bears responsibility for maintaining the correct distance and speed, even when the adaptive cruise control is being used.

**IMPORTANT**

Maintenance of adaptive cruise control components must only be performed at a workshop – an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Automatic gearbox

Cars with automatic gearbox have enhanced functionality with the adaptive cruise control's Queue Assistant, see page 166.

**Function**

**Function overview**

1. Warning lamp - braking by driver required
2. Steering wheel keypad
3. Radar sensor

Adaptive cruise control consists of a cruise control system and a coordinated spacing system.

---

1 NOTE: The illustration is schematic - details may differ depending on car model.
Adaptive cruise control*

**WARNING**

Adaptive cruise control is not a collision avoidance system. The driver must intervene if the system does not detect a vehicle in front.

The adaptive cruise control does not brake for humans or animals, and not for small vehicles such as bicycles and motorcycles. Nor for oncoming, slow or stationary vehicles and objects.

Do not use the adaptive cruise control, for example, in city traffic, in dense traffic, at junctions, on slippery surfaces, with a lot of water or slush on the road, in heavy rain/snow, in poor visibility, on winding roads or on slip roads.

The distance to the vehicle ahead is mainly measured by a radar sensor. Cruise control regulates the speed with acceleration and braking. It is normal for the brakes to emit a low sound when they are being used by the adaptive cruise control.

The brake pedal moves when the cruise control brakes. Do not rest your foot under the brake pedal as it could become trapped.

The adaptive cruise control aims to follow the vehicle ahead in the same lane at a time interval set by the driver. If the radar sensor cannot see any vehicle in front then the car will instead maintain the cruise control’s set speed. This also happens if the speed of the vehicle in front exceeds the cruise control’s set speed.

The adaptive cruise control aims to control the speed in a smooth way. In situations that demand sudden braking the driver must brake himself/herself. This applies with large differences in speed, or if the vehicle in front brakes heavily. Due to limitations in the radar sensor, braking may come unexpectedly or not at all, see page 167.

The adaptive cruise control can be activated to follow another vehicle at speeds from 30 km/h² up to 200 km/h. If the speed falls below 30 km/h or if the engine speed becomes too low, the cruise control is set in standby mode at which automatic braking ceases - the driver must then take over himself/herself to maintain a safe distance to the vehicle ahead.

**Warning lamp - braking by driver required**

Adaptive cruise control has a braking capacity that is equivalent to more than 40% of the car’s braking capacity.

If the car needs to be braked more heavily than cruise control capacity and the driver does not brake, then the cruise control uses the collision warning system’s warning lamp and warning sound (see the illustration on page 181) to alert the driver that immediate intervention is required.

**NOTE**

The warning lamp may be difficult to notice in strong sunlight or when sunglasses are being worn.

**WARNING**

Cruise control only warns of vehicles detected by the radar sensor. Consequently there may be no warning or it may be subject to a delay. Do not wait for a warning but brake when it is necessary.

---

² Queue Assistant (in cars with automatic gearbox) can operate in the range of 0-200 km/h, see page 166.
Steep roads and/or heavy load
Bear in mind that the adaptive cruise control is primarily intended for use when driving on level road surfaces. It may have difficulty in keeping the correct distance from the vehicle ahead when driving on steep downhill gradients, with a heavy load or with a trailer - in which case, be extra attentive and ready to slow down.

Operation

1. Standby mode ceases and the stored speed is resumed.
2. Cruise control - On/Off or Standby mode.
3. Time interval - Increase/decrease.
4. Activate and adjust the speed.
5. (Not used)
6. Green marking by the stored speed (WHITE = standby mode).
7. Time interval
8. ACC is active with GREEN symbol (WHITE = standby mode).

Activating and setting the speed
To enable cruise control:
- Press the steering wheel button - a similar WHITE symbol illuminates in the combined instrument panel (8) which shows that cruise control is in standby mode.

To activate cruise control:
- At the required speed - press the steering wheel button or.

> The current speed is stored in memory, the combined instrument panel shows a "magnifying glass" around the selected speed for a few seconds and its marking (6) changes from WHITE to GREEN.

When this symbol changes colour from WHITE to GREEN the cruise control is active and the car maintains the stored speed.

Changing the speed
To change the stored speed:
- Adjust with short presses on or every press gives +/- 5 km/h. The last presses made are stored in the memory.

If speed is increased using the accelerator pedal prior to pressing the or button, then it is the car’s current speed when the button is pressed that is stored in the cruise control.

To adjust +/- 1 km/h:
- Hold the button depressed and release it at the desired speed.

Only when the symbol shows the image of another vehicle is the distance to the vehicle ahead regulated by the cruise control.

At the same time a speed interval is marked:
- the higher speed with the GREEN marking (6) is the pre-programmed speed
- the lower speed is the speed of the car in front.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
Adaptive cruise control*

NOTE
If any of the Cruise Control buttons are held depressed for several minutes then it is blocked and deactivated. To be able to reactivate Cruise Control, the car must be stopped and the engine restarted.

In certain situations, cruise control cannot be activated. In this case, the combined instrument panel shows Cruise control Unavailable, see page 169.

Set time interval
Different time intervals to the vehicle in front can be selected and shown in the combined instrument panel as 1-5 horizontal lines - the more lines the longer the time interval. One line corresponds to approximately 1 second to the vehicle in front, 5 lines approximately 3 seconds.

To set/change the time interval:
- Increase or decrease with the steering wheel buttons ←/→.

At low speed, when the distances are short, the adaptive cruise control increases the time interval slightly.

The adaptive cruise control allows the time interval to vary noticeably in certain situations in order to allow the car to follow the vehicle in front smoothly and comfortably.

Note that a short time interval only allows the driver a short time to react and take action if any unforeseen traffic problem should arise.

The same symbol is also shown when Distance Warning is activated, see page 172.

NOTE
Only use the time intervals permitted by local traffic regulations.

If Cruise Control does not appear to react when activated, this may be because the time distance to the car in front is preventing an increase in speed.

The higher the speed the longer the calculated distance in metres for a given time interval.

Temporary deactivation - standby mode
To temporarily disengage the adaptive cruise control and set it in standby mode:
- Press the steering wheel button 0.

This symbol and the stored speed’s marking then change colour from GREEN to WHITE.

Standby mode due to driver intervention
Cruise control is temporarily disengaged and set in standby mode if:
- the foot brake is used
- the clutch pedal is depressed for longer than 1 minute3
- the gear selector is moved to N position (automatic gearbox)
- the driver maintains a speed higher than the set speed for longer than 1 minute.

The driver must then regulate the speed.

A temporary increase in speed with the accelerator pedal, e.g. during overtaking, does not affect the cruise control setting - the car returns to the last stored speed when the accelerator pedal is released.

Automatic standby mode
The adaptive cruise control is dependent on other systems, such as DSTC (see page 154). If any of these systems stop working then cruise control is automatically deactivated.

In the event of automatic deactivation a signal will sound and the message Cruise control Cancelled is shown in the combined instrument panel. The driver must then intervene and adapt the speed and distance to the vehicle ahead.

3 Disengaging and selecting a higher or lower gear does not involve standby mode.
An automatic deactivation can be due to:
- the driver opens the door
- the driver takes off the seatbelt
- engine speed is too low/high
- speed has fallen below 30 km/h
- wheels lose traction
- brake temperature is high
- the radar sensor is covered e.g. by wet snow or heavy rain (radar waves blocked).

**Resume set speed**
Adaptive cruise control in standby mode is reactivated with one press on the steering wheel button - the speed is then set to the last stored speed.

**NOTE**
A significant increase in speed may arise after the speed has been resumed with .

**Overtaking another vehicle**
When the car is following another vehicle and the driver indicates an impending overtaking manoeuvre with the direction indicator, the adaptive cruise control helps to briefly accelerate the car towards the vehicle in front. This function is active at speeds above 70 km/h.

**WARNING**
Be aware that this function can be activated in more situations other than during overtaking, e.g. when a direction indicator is used to indicate a change of lane or exit to another road - the car will then accelerate briefly.

**Deactivate**
With a short press on the steering wheel button the adaptive cruise control is set in standby mode. With a further short press it is deactivated. The set speed is cleared and cannot be resumed with the button.

**Changing from ACC to CC**
With one press of the button the adaptive part (spacing system) in the cruise control is deactivated, at which point the car just follows the set speed.
- Give a long press on the steering wheel button - the combined instrument panel’s symbol changes from to .
- By these means the standard cruise control CC (Cruise Control) is activated, see page 159.

**WARNING**
The car no longer brakes automatically after switching from ACC to CC - it merely follows the set speed.

**Changing back from CC to ACC**
Deactivate CC with 1-2 presses on in accordance with the previous heading "Deactivate". The next time the system is switched on, it is the ACC that is activated.

---

4 Does not apply to a car with Queue Assistant - it manages right down to stationary.
5 On left flash only in left-hand-drive car, or right flash in right-hand-drive car.
Adaptive cruise control*

Queue Assistant
In cars with automatic gearbox the adaptive cruise control is supplemented with the Queue Assist function (also referred to as "Queue Assist").

Queue Assistant has the following functions:
- Extended speed range - also below 30 km/h and at standstill
- Change of target
- Automatic braking ceases when stationary
- Automatic activation parking brake.

Note that the lowest programmable speed for the adaptive cruise control is 30 km/h - even though it is capable of following another vehicle down to a standstill, a lower speed cannot be selected.

Extended speed range

NOTE
In order to activate the cruise control the driver’s door must be closed and the driver must be wearing the seatbelt.

With an automatic gearbox, the adaptive cruise control can follow another vehicle within the range 0-200 km/h.

NOTE
Activation of the cruise control below 30 km/h requires a vehicle in front within a reasonable distance.

For shorter stops in connection with inching in slow traffic or at traffic lights driving is automatically resumed if the stops do not exceed approx. 3 seconds - if it takes longer before the car in front starts moving again then the cruise control is set in standby mode with automatic braking. The driver must then reactivate it in one of the following ways:
- Press the steering wheel button.
- Depress the accelerator pedal.

> The cruise control will then resume following the vehicle in front.

NOTE
Queue Assist can hold the car stationary for a maximum of 4 minutes - then the parking brake is applied and Cruise Control is disengaged.

- The driver has to release the parking brake before the cruise control can be reactivated.

Change of target

If the target vehicle in front suddenly turns then there may be stationary traffic in front.

When the adaptive cruise control is following another vehicle at speeds below 30 km/h and changes target from a moving to a stationary vehicle, the cruise control will slow down for the stationary vehicle.

WARNING
When the cruise control is following another vehicle at speeds in excess of 30 km/h and the target is changed from a moving vehicle to a stationary vehicle, the cruise control will ignore the stationary vehicle and instead select the stored speed.

- The driver must intervene him/herself and brake.
Automatic standby mode with change of target
The adaptive cruise control is disengaged and set in standby mode:
• when the speed is below 5 km/h and cruise control is not sure whether the target object is a stationary vehicle or some other object, e.g. a speed bump.
• when the speed is below 5 km/h and the vehicle in front turns off so the cruise control no longer has a vehicle to follow.

Termination of automatic braking at a standstill
In certain situations, Queue Assist stops automatic braking at a standstill. This means that the brakes are released and the car may start to roll - the driver must therefore intervene and brake the car himself/herself in order to maintain its position.

Queue Assist releases the foot brake and sets the adaptive cruise control in standby mode in the following situations:
• the driver puts his/her foot on the brake pedal
• the parking brake is applied
• the gear selector is moved to P, N or R position
• the driver sets the cruise control in standby mode.

Automatic activation parking brake
In certain situations Queue Assist applies the parking brake in order to keep the car remaining stationary.

This takes place if:
• the driver opens the door or takes off his/her seatbelt
• DSTC is changed from Normal to Sport mode
• Queue Assist has held the car stationary for more than 4 minutes
• the engine is switched off
• the brakes have overheated.

The radar sensor and its limitations
The radar sensor is used - apart from by Adaptive cruise control - by the following functions as well:
• Collision Warning with Auto Brake, see page 181
• Distance Warning, see page 172.

The function of the radar sensor is to detect cars or larger vehicles in the same direction, in the same lane.

IMPORTANT
In the event of visible damage to the car’s grille, or if you suspect that the radar sensor may be damaged:
• Contact a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

The function may completely or partially disappear - or malfunction - if the grille, the radar sensor or its bracket is damaged or has loosened.

WARNING
The driver must always be observant with regard to the traffic conditions and intervene when the adaptive cruise control is not maintaining a suitable speed or suitable distance.

The adaptive cruise control cannot handle all traffic, weather and road conditions.

Read the whole of this section for information on the limitations of the adaptive cruise control. The driver must be familiar with this information before using the adaptive cruise control.

The driver always bears responsibility for maintaining the correct distance and speed, even when the adaptive cruise control is being used.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
Adaptive cruise control*

**WARNING**
Accessories or other objects such as auxiliary lamps must not be installed in front of the grille.

**WARNING**
Adaptive cruise control is not a collision avoidance system. The driver must intervene if the system does not detect a vehicle in front.

The adaptive cruise control does not brake for humans or animals, and not for small vehicles such as bicycles and motorcycles. Nor for oncoming, slow or stationary vehicles and objects.

Do not use the adaptive cruise control, for example, in city traffic, in dense traffic, at junctions, on slippery surfaces, with a lot of water or slush on the road, in heavy rain/snow, in poor visibility, on winding roads or on slip roads.

The capacity of the radar sensor to detect vehicles in front is reduced significantly:
- if the radar sensor becomes blocked and cannot detect other vehicles e.g. in heavy rain or slush, or if other objects have collected in front of the radar sensor.

**NOTE**
Keep the surface in front of the radar sensor clean - see page 184, "Maintenance".

- if the speed of vehicles in front is significantly different from your own speed.

Examples where the adaptive cruise control does not work optimally
The radar sensor has a limited field of vision. In some situations another vehicle is not detected, or the detection is made later than expected.

ACC field of vision.
1 Sometimes the radar sensor is late at detecting vehicles at close distances, e.g. a vehicle that drives in between the car and vehicles in front.

2 Small vehicles, such as motorcycles, or vehicles not driving in the centre of the lane can remain undetected.

3 In bends the radar sensor may detect the wrong vehicle or lose a detected vehicle from view.

Fault tracing and action
If the combined instrument panel shows the message **Radar blocked See manual** this means that the radar signals from the radar sensor are blocked and that vehicles in front of the car cannot be detected.

In turn this means that - apart from Adaptive Cruise Control - Distance Warning and Collision Warning with Auto Brake functions are not operating either.

The following table presents examples of possible causes for a message being shown along with the appropriate action.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cause</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The radar surface in the grille is dirty or covered with ice or snow.</td>
<td>Clean the radar surface in the grille from dirt, ice and snow.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heavy rain or snow blocking the radar signals.</td>
<td>No action. Sometimes the radar does not work during heavy rain or snowfall.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water or snow from the road surface swirls up and blocks the radar signals.</td>
<td>No action. Sometimes the radar does not work on a very wet or snowy road surface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The radar surface has been cleaned but the message remains.</td>
<td>Wait. It could take several minutes for the radar to sense that it is no longer blocked.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Symbols and messages

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Specification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>![Symbol]</td>
<td>The symbol is GREEN</td>
<td>The car maintains the stored speed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![Symbol]</td>
<td>The symbol is WHITE</td>
<td>The Adaptive cruise control is set in standby mode.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Adaptive cruise control*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Specification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>![Icon]</td>
<td>Standard cruise control is selected manually.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DSTC Normal to enable Cruise</td>
<td>The adaptive cruise control cannot be activated until the Stability and Traction Control system (DSTC) has been set in Normal mode - see page 154.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cruise control Cancelled</td>
<td>The adaptive cruise control has been deactivated - the driver has to regulate the speed himself.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Cruise control Unavailable | The adaptive cruise control cannot be activated. This could be due to:  
  - brake temperature is high  
  - the radar sensor is blocked by e.g. wet snow or rain. | |
| ![Icon] | The adaptive cruise control is temporarily disengaged.  
  - The radar sensor is blocked and cannot detect other vehicles. For example, in the event that heavy rain or if slush has collected in front of the radar sensor.  
  The driver can then choose to change to normal Cruise control (CC), see page 165 - a text message informs about appropriate options.  
  Read about the limitations of the radar sensor, see page 167. | |
| Cruise control Service required | The adaptive cruise control is disengaged.  
  - Contact a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended. | |

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
### Adaptive cruise control*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Specification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
|        | **Press Brake To hold + acoustic alarm**  
(Only with Queue Assistant) | The car is stationary and the cruise control will release the foot brake to allow the parking brake to take over and hold the car, but a fault in the parking brake means the car will shortly begin to roll.  
- The driver must brake himself/herself. The message remains and the alarm sounds until the driver depresses the brake pedal or uses the accelerator pedal. |
|        | **Below 30 km/h Only following**  
(Only with Queue Assistant) | Shown with attempts to activate the cruise control at speeds below 30 km/h without a vehicle in front within the activation distance (approx. 30 metres). |

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
Distance Warning*

General
Distance Warning (Distance Alert) is a function that informs the driver about the time interval to vehicles in front.

Distance Warning is active at speeds above 30 km/h and only reacts to vehicles driving in front of the car, in the same direction. No distance information is provided for oncoming, slow or stationary vehicles.

Orange warning lamp¹.
An orange warning lamp in the windscreen illuminates with a constant glow if the distance to the vehicle in front is shorter than the set time interval.

NOTE
Distance warning is deactivated during the time the adaptive cruise control is active.

WARNING
Distance warning only reacts if the distance to the vehicle ahead is shorter than the preset value - the speed of the driver's vehicle is not affected.

Operation
Press the button in the centre console to switch the function on or off. The function is switched on if one lamp is illuminated in the button.

Some combinations of the selected equipment leave no vacant space for a button in the centre console - in which case the function is handled by the car's menu system MY CAR under Settings ➔ Car settings ➔ Distance Alert. For a description of the menu system - see page 213.

Set time interval

¹ NOTE: The illustration is schematic - details may vary depending on car model.
Different time intervals to the vehicle in front can be selected and shown in the combined instrument panel as 1-5 horizontal lines - the more lines the longer the time interval. One line corresponds to approximately 1 second to the vehicle in front, 5 lines approximately 3 seconds.

The same symbol is also shown when adaptive cruise control is activated.

**Limitations**

The function uses the same radar sensor as adaptive cruise control and the collision warning system with auto brake. For more information on the radar sensor and its limitations, see page 167.

**NOTE**

- The higher the speed the longer the calculated distance in metres for a given time interval.
- The set time interval is also used by the Adaptive Cruise Control function, see page 164.
- Only use the time intervals permitted by local traffic regulations.

**NOTE**

Strong sunlight, reflections or strong variations in light intensity, as well as wearing sunglasses, could mean that the warning light in the windscreen cannot be seen.

Poor weather or winding roads could affect the radar sensor's capacity to detect vehicles in front.

The size of other vehicles could also affect detection capacity, e.g. motorcycles. This could mean that the warning lamp illuminates at a shorter distance than the setting or that the warning is temporarily absent.

Extremely high speeds can also cause the lamp to illuminate at a shorter distance than that set due to limitations in sensor range.
## Distance Warning*

### Symbols and text messages

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Specification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="symbol1.png" alt="Symbol" /></td>
<td>Radar blocked See manual</td>
<td>Distance Warning temporarily disengaged. The radar sensor is blocked and cannot detect other vehicles, e.g. in the event of heavy rain or if slush has collected in front of the radar sensor. Read about the limitations of the radar sensor, see page 167.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="symbol2.png" alt="Symbol" /></td>
<td>Collision warn. Service required</td>
<td>Distance Warning and Collision Warning with Auto Brake fully or partially disengaged. Visit a workshop if the message remains - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*A Symbols are schematic - may vary by market and car model.*
General
City Safety™ is a function for helping the driver to avoid a collision when driving in queues, amongst other things, when changes in the traffic ahead, combined with a lapse in attention, could lead to an incident.

The function is active at speeds under 50 km/h and it helps the driver by automatically braking the car in the event of imminent risk of collision with vehicles in front, should the driver not react in time by braking and/or steering away.

City Safety™ is activated in situations where the driver should have started braking earlier, which is why it cannot help the driver in every situation.

City Safety™ is designed to be activated as late as possible in order to avoid unnecessary intervention.

City Safety™ must not be used as an excuse for the driver to change his/her driving style. If the driver solely relies on City Safety™ to do the braking, there will be a collision sooner or later.

The driver or passengers normally only notice City Safety™ if a situation arises where the car is extremely close to being in a collision.

If the car is also equipped with a Collision Warning function with Auto Brake*, these two systems complement each other. For more information on Collision Warning function with Auto Brake, see page 181.

IMPORTANT
Maintenance and replacement of City Safety™ components must only be performed by a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

WARNING
City Safety™ does not engage in all driving situations or traffic, weather or road conditions.
City Safety™ does not react to vehicles driving in a different direction from the car, to small vehicles and motorcycles or to humans and animals.

City Safety™ can prevent collision at a speed difference of less than 15 km/h - at a higher speed difference, it is only possible to reduce collision speed. In order to obtain full brake function, the driver must depress the brake pedal.

Never wait for City Safety™ to engage. The driver always bears responsibility for maintaining the proper distance and speed.
City Safety™

Function

City Safety™ detects the traffic in front of the car with a laser sensor fitted in the top edge of the windscreen. If there is an imminent risk of collision, City Safety™ will automatically brake the car, which may be experienced as sudden braking.

If the speed difference is 4-15 km/h in relation to the vehicle in front then City Safety™ can completely prevent a collision.

City Safety™ activates a short, sharp braking and stops the car in normal circumstances, just behind the vehicle in front. For most drivers this is well outside normal driving style and may be experienced as being uncomfortable.

If the difference in speed between the vehicles is greater than 15 km/h then City Safety™ may not prevent the collision on its own. To obtain full brake force, the driver must depress the brake pedal. This could then make it possible to prevent a collision, even at speed differences above 15 km/h.

When the function is activated and brakes, the combined instrument panel shows a text message to the effect that the function is/has been active.

NOTE

The brake lights come on when City Safety™ brakes the car.

Operation

NOTE

The City Safety™ function is always enabled after the engine has been started via key position I and II (see page 81 on key positions).

On and Off

In certain situations, it may advisable to disable City Safety™, e.g. where leafy branches could sweep over the bonnet and/or windscreen.

After starting the engine City Safety™ can be deactivated as follows:

- Using MY CAR in the centre console’s screen with its menu system, search and locate Settings ➔ Car settings ➔ Driver support systems ➔ City Safety. Select the Off option. For more information on the menu system MY CAR, see page 213.

However, the function will be enabled the next time the engine is started, regardless of whether the system was enabled or disabled when the engine was switched off.

WARNING

The laser sensor also transmits laser light when City Safety™ is disabled manually.

To enable City Safety™ again:

- Follow the same procedure as for disabling, but select the On option.

1 NOTE: The illustration is schematic - details may vary depending on car model.
Limitations
The sensor in City Safety™ is designed to detect cars and other large vehicles in front of the car irrespective of whether it is day or night.

However, the sensor has limitations and has poorer functionality - or none at all - in e.g. heavy snowfall or rain, dense fog, dust storms or white-out situations. Mist, dirt, ice or snow on the windscreen may disrupt the function.

Low-hanging objects, e.g. a flag/pennant for projecting load, or accessories such as auxiliary lamps and bull bars that are higher than the bonnet limit the function.

The laser light from the sensor in City Safety™ measures how the light is reflected. The sensor cannot detect objects with low reflection capacity. The rear sections of the vehicle generally reflect the light sufficiently thanks to the number plate and rear light reflectors.

On slippery road surfaces the braking distance is extended, which may reduce the capacity of City Safety™ to avoid a collision. In such situations the ABS and DSTC systems will provide best possible braking force with maintained stability.

When your own car is reversing, City Safety™ is temporarily deactivated.

City Safety™ is not activated at low speeds - under 4 km/h, which is why the system does not intervene in situations where a vehicle in front is being approached very slowly, e.g. when parking.

Driver commands are always prioritised, which is why City Safety™ does not intervene in situations where the driver is steering or accelerating in a clear manner, even if a collision is unavoidable.

When City Safety™ has prevented a collision with a stationary object the car remains stationary for a maximum of 1.5 seconds. If the car is braked for a vehicle in front that is moving, then speed is reduced to the same speed as that maintained by the vehicle in front.

On a car with manual gearbox the engine stops when City Safety™ has stopped the car, unless the driver manages to depress the clutch pedal beforehand.

NOTE
- Keep the windscreen surface in front of the laser sensor free from ice, snow and dirt (see the illustration for sensor location on page 176).
- Do not affix or mount anything on the windscreen in front of the laser sensor.
- Remove ice and snow from the bonnet - snow and ice must not exceed a height of 5 cm.

Fault tracing and action
If the message Windscreen Sensors blocked is shown in the combined instrument panel it indicates that the laser sensor is blocked and cannot detect vehicles in front of the car. This means that City Safety™ is not operational.

The Windscreen Sensors blocked message is not shown for all situations in which the laser sensor is blocked. The driver must therefore be diligent about keeping the windscreen and area in front of the laser sensor clean.

The following table presents possible causes for the message being shown, along with suggestions for appropriate action.
### City Safety™

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cause</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The windshield surface in front of the laser sensor is dirty or covered with ice or snow.</td>
<td>Clean the windshield surface in front of the sensor from dirt, ice and snow.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The laser sensor field of vision is blocked.</td>
<td>Remove the blocking object.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**IMPORTANT**

If there are cracks, scratches or stone chips in the windshield in front of either of the laser sensor’s "windows" and they cover a surface of approx. 0.5 x 3.0 mm (or larger), then a workshop must be contacted for replacement of the windshield (see the illustration for sensor location, page 176) - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Failure to take action may result in reduced performance for City Safety™.

To avoid the risk of failed, deficient or reduced operation for City Safety™, the following also applies:

- Volvo recommends that you do **not** repair cracks, scratches or stone chips in the area in front of the laser sensor - instead, the whole windshield should be replaced.
- Before replacing a windshield, contact an authorised Volvo workshop to verify that the correct windshield is ordered and fitted.
- The same type or Volvo-approved windshield wipers must be fitted during replacement.

### Laser sensor

The City Safety™ function includes a sensor which transmits laser light. The illustration on page 176 shows sensor location.

Contact a qualified workshop in the event of a fault or if the laser sensor needs servicing - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended. It is absolutely essential to follow the prescribed instructions when handling the laser sensor.

The following two labels with English text are fitted directly on the laser sensor unit:

The upper label in the illustration describes the classification of the laser light:

- Laser radiation - Do not look into the laser beam with optical instruments - Class 1M laser product.
The lower label in the illustration describes the physical data for the laser light:

**Radiation data for the laser sensor**
The following table specifies the laser sensor's physical data.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Maximum pulse energy</td>
<td>2.64 µJ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum average output</td>
<td>45 mW</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pulse duration</td>
<td>33 ns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Divergence (horizontal x vertical)</td>
<td>28° × 12°</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**WARNING**
If any of these instructions are not followed then there is a risk of eye injury!
- Never look into the laser sensor (which emits spreading invisible laser radiation) at a distance of 100 mm or closer with magnifying optics such as a magnifying glass, microscope, lens or similar optical instruments.
- Testing, repair, removal, adjustment and/or replacement of the laser sensor’s spare parts must only be carried out by a qualified workshop - we recommend an authorised Volvo workshop.
- To avoid exposure to harmful radiation, do not carry out any readjustments or maintenance other than those specified here.
- The repairer must follow specially drawn up workshop information for the laser sensor.
- Do not remove the laser sensor (this includes removing the lenses). A removed laser sensor does not fulfill laser class 3B as per standard IEC 60825-1. Laser class 3B is not eye-safe and therefore entails a risk of injury.
- The laser sensor's connector must be unplugged before removal from the windscreen.
- The laser sensor must be fitted onto the windscreen before the sensor's connector is plugged in.
- The laser sensor transmits laser light when the remote control key is in position II and also with the engine switched off (see page 81 on key positions).

**Symbols and text messages**
In conjunction with automatic braking by the City Safety™ system, one or more symbols may illuminate in the combined instrument panel and a text message may be shown.

A text message can be acknowledged by briefly pressing the **OK** button on the direction indicator stalk.
## City Safety™

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Meaning/Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Symbol" /></td>
<td>Auto braking by City Safety</td>
<td>City Safety™ is braking or has automatically braked.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Symbol" /></td>
<td>Windscreen Sensors blocked</td>
<td>The laser sensor is temporarily non-operational because something is blocking it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Remove the object blocking the sensor and/or clean the windscreen in front of the sensor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Read about the limitations of the laser sensor, see page 177.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Symbol" /></td>
<td>City Safety Service required</td>
<td>City Safety™ is not operational.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Visit a workshop if the message remains - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Collision Warning with Auto Brake & Pedestrian Protection*

General¹

"Collision Warning with Auto Brake & Pedestrian Detection" is an aid to assist the driver when there is a risk of colliding with a pedestrian or vehicle in front that is stationary or moving in the same direction.

Collision Warning with Auto Brake & Pedestrian Detection is activated in situations where the driver should have started braking earlier, which is why it cannot help the driver in every situation.

Collision Warning with Auto Brake & Pedestrian Detection is designed to be activated as late as possible in order to avoid unnecessary intervention.

Collision Warning with Auto Brake & Pedestrian Detection may prevent a collision or reduce the collision speed.

Collision Warning with Auto Brake & Pedestrian Detection must not be used as an excuse for the driver to change his/her driving style. If the driver solely relies on Collision Warning with Auto Brake to do the braking, there will be a collision sooner or later.

Two system levels

Depending on how the car equipped, the Collision Warning with Auto Brake & Pedestrian Detection function may appear in two variants: Level 1 and Level 2.

Level 1
The driver is merely warned of occurring obstacles by means of visual and acoustic signals - no automatic braking intervenes, the driver must himself brake.

Level 2
The driver is warned of occurring obstacles by means of visual and acoustic signals - the car is braked automatically if the driver himself does not act within a reasonable time.

IMPORTANT
Maintenance of components included in Collision Warning with Auto Brake & Pedestrian Detection must only be carried out in a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Function

Function overview².

1. Audio-visual warning signal in the event of a collision risk.
2. Radar sensor³
3. Camera sensor

Collision Warning with Auto Brake executes three steps in the following order:
1. Collision warning
2. Brake support³
3. Auto Brake³

¹ Not available as an option for certain engines.
² NOTE: The illustration is schematic - details may vary depending on car model.
³ With system Level 2 only.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
The collision warning system and City Safety™ complement each other. For more information on City Safety™, see page 175.

1 - Collision warning
The driver is first warned of a potentially imminent collision.

The collision warning system detects pedestrians, stationary vehicles as well as vehicles driving in the same direction in front of the car.

If there is a risk of collision with a pedestrian or a vehicle, the driver’s attention is attracted with a flashing red warning signal (no. [1] in the illustration on page 181) and an acoustic signal.

2 - Brake support
If the risk of collision has increased further after the collision warning then the brake support is activated.

This means that the brake system is prepared for rapid braking by applying the brakes lightly, which may feel like a slight jolt.

If the brake pedal is depressed sufficiently quickly then full brake function is implemented.

Brake support also reinforces the driver’s braking if the system considers that the braking is not sufficient to avoid a collision.

3 - Auto Brake
The automatic brake function is activated last.

If in this situation the driver has not yet started to take evasive action and the risk of collision is imminent then the automatic braking function is deployed - this takes place irrespective of whether or not the driver brakes. Braking then takes place with full brake force in order to reduce collision speed, or with limited brake force if it is sufficient to avoid a collision.

**WARNING**
The collision warning system does not engage in all driving situations or traffic, weather or road conditions. The collision warning system does not react to vehicles driving in another direction to the car or to animals.

Warning only activated in the event of a high risk for collision. This section "Function" and the section "Limitations" inform about limitations that the driver must be aware of before using the Collision Warning system with Auto Brake.

Warnings and brake interventions for pedestrians are switched off at vehicle speeds exceeding 80 km/h.

Warnings and brake interventions for pedestrians do not work in darkness and tunnels - not even when streetlights are lit.

The auto-brake function can prevent a collision or reduce collision speed. To ensure full brake performance, the driver should always depress the brake pedal - even when the car auto-brakes.

Never wait for a collision warning. The driver is always responsible that the correct distance and speed are maintained - even when the collision warning system with auto-brake is used.

---

3 With system Level 2 only.
Detection of pedestrians

- In order for a pedestrian to be detected he/she must appear full-length and have a height of at least 80 cm.
- The system cannot detect a pedestrian carrying larger items.
- The camera sensor’s ability to see pedestrians at dusk and dawn is limited - just like the human eye.
- The camera sensor’s capacity to detect pedestrians is deactivated when driving in darkness and tunnels - even when street-lights are lit.

WARNING

Collision Warning with Auto Brake & Pedestrian Detection is an assistance tool.

This function cannot detect all pedestrians in all situations and it cannot see e.g. partially obscured pedestrians, people in clothing that hides the contours of the body or pedestrians shorter than 80 cm.

- The driver is always responsible that the vehicle is driven properly and with a safety distance adapted to the speed.

Operation

Settings are made from MY CAR via the centre console’s screen and menu system. For information on how the menu system is used, see page 213.

Warning signals On and Off

It is possible to choose whether the acoustic and visual warning signals of the collision warning system should be on or off.

When starting the engine, the setting that was selected when the engine was switched off is obtained automatically.

NOTE

The Brake Support and Auto Brake functions are always enabled - they cannot be deactivated.

Light and acoustic signals

To deactivate the light and acoustic signals:

- Locate Settings ➔ Car settings ➔ Driver support systems ➔ Collision Warning - untick the box there.

The warning lamp (no. [1] in the image on page 181) is tested each time the engine is started by briefly lighting the separate light points of the warning lamp if the visual and acoustic warning of the collision warning system is activated.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
Collision Warning with Auto Brake & Pedestrian Protection*

Acoustic signal
The warning sound can be activated/deactivated separately:

- Select On or Off in the menu system under Settings ➔ Car settings ➔ Driver support systems ➔ Collision Warning ➔ Warning sound.

Set warning distance
The warning distance regulates the distance at which the visual and acoustic warnings are deployed.

- Select Long, Normal or Short in the MY CAR menu system under Settings ➔ Car settings ➔ Driver support systems ➔ Collision Warning ➔ Warning distance.

The warning distance determines the system's sensitivity. Warning distance Long provides an earlier warning. First test with Long and if this setting produces too many warnings, which could be perceived as irritating in certain situations, then change to warning distance Normal.

Only use warning distance Short in exceptional cases, e.g. for dynamic driving.

NOTE
When the adaptive cruise control is in use the warning lamp and warning sound will be used by the cruise control even if the collision warning system is switched off.

The collision warning system warns the driver in the event of a risk of a collision, but the function cannot shorten driver reaction time.

In order for the collision warning system to be effective, always drive with Distance Warning set at time interval 4–5, see page 172.

NOTE
Even if the warning distance has been set to Long warnings could be perceived as being late in certain situations, e.g. when there are large differences in speed or if vehicles in front brake heavily.

WARNING
No automatic system can guarantee 100% correct function in all situations. Therefore, never test Collision Warning with Auto Brake by driving at people or vehicles - this may cause severe damage and injury and risk lives.

Checking settings
The settings required can be controlled in the centre console's screen. Search with the menu system MY CAR under Settings ➔ Car settings ➔ Driver support systems ➔ Collision Warning, see page 213.

Maintenance
Camera and radar sensor4.
For the sensors to work correctly, they must be kept clear of dirt, ice and snow, and be cleaned regularly with water and car shampoo.

4 NOTE: The illustration is schematic - details may vary depending on car model.
Collision Warning with Auto Brake & Pedestrian Protection*

**NOTE**

Dirt, ice and snow covering the sensors will reduce their function and may prevent measurement.

**Limitations**

Collision Warning with Auto Brake and Pedestrian Detection is active from approx. 4 km/h.

The visual warning signal (no. [1] in the illustration on page 181) may be difficult to notice in the event of strong sunlight, reflections, when sunglasses are being worn or if the driver is not looking straight ahead. The warning sound should therefore always be activated.

On slippery road surfaces the braking distance is extended, which may reduce the capacity to avoid a collision. In such situations the ABS and DSTC systems will provide best possible braking force with maintained stability.

**NOTE**

The visual warning signal can be temporarily disengaged in the event of high passenger compartment temperature caused by strong sunlight for example. If this occurs then the warning sound is activated even if it is deactivated in the menu system.

- Warnings may not appear if the distance to the vehicle in front is small or if steering wheel and pedal movements are large, e.g. a very active driving style.

**WARNING**

Warnings and brake interventions could be implemented late or not at all if the traffic situation or external influences mean that the radar or camera sensor cannot detect a pedestrian or a vehicle in front correctly.

The sensor system has a limited range for pedestrians and the system therefore provides effective warnings and brake interventions at vehicle speeds up to 50 km/h. For stationary or slow-moving vehicles, warnings and brake interventions are effective at vehicle speeds up to 70 km/h.

Warnings for stationary or slow-moving vehicles could be disengaged due to darkness or poor visibility.

Warnings and brake interventions for pedestrians are switched off at vehicle speeds exceeding 80 km/h.

The collision warning system uses the same radar sensors as adaptive cruise control. For more information on the radar sensor and its limitations, see page 167.

If warnings are perceived as being too frequent or disturbing then the warning distance can be reduced. This then leads to the system providing a warning at a later stage, which reduces the total number of warnings; see the section "Set warning distance" on page 184.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
Collision Warning with Auto Brake & Pedestrian Protection*

Collision Warning with Auto Brake is temporarily deactivated with reverse gear engaged.

Collision Warning with Auto Brake is not activated at low speeds - under 4 km/h, which is why the system does not intervene in situations where the car is approaching a vehicle in front very slowly, e.g. when parking.

In situations where the driver demonstrates active, aware driving behaviour, a collision warning may be postponed slightly in order to keep unnecessary warnings to a minimum.

When Auto Brake has prevented a collision with a stationary object the car remains stationary for a maximum of 1.5 seconds. If the car is braked for a vehicle in front that is moving, then speed is reduced to the same speed as that maintained by the vehicle in front.

On a car with manual gearbox the engine stops when Auto Brake has stopped the car, unless the driver manages to depress the clutch pedal beforehand.

Camera sensor limitations

The car’s camera sensor is also used - as well as by Collision Warning with Auto Brake - by the functions:

- Automatic main/dipped beam dimming - see page 93
- Road sign information - see page 156
- Driver Alert Control – see page 190
- Lane Departure Warning – see page 194.

NOTE

Keep the windscreen surface in front of the camera sensor clean from ice, snow, mist and dirt.

Do not attach or fit anything to the windscreen in front of the camera sensor, as this could reduce or prevent the function of one or more camera-dependent systems.

The camera sensors have limitations similar to the human eye, i.e. they "see" worse in darkness, heavy snowfall or rain and in thick fog for example. Under such conditions the functions of camera-dependent systems could be significantly reduced or temporarily disengaged.

Strong oncoming light, reflections in the carriageway, snow or ice on the road surface, dirty road surfaces or unclear lane markings could also significantly reduce camera sensor function when it is used to scan the carriageway and detect pedestrians and other vehicles.

The field of vision of the camera sensor is limited, which is why pedestrians and vehicles cannot be detected in some situations, or they are detected later than anticipated.

During very high temperatures the camera is temporarily switched off for about 15 minutes after the engine is started in order to protect camera functionality.

Fault tracing and action

If the display shows the message Windscreen Sensors blocked then this means that the camera sensor is blocked and cannot detect pedestrians, vehicles or road markings in front of the car.

At the same time, this means that - besides Collision Warning with Auto Brake - the Automatic main/dipped beam dimming, Road sign information, Driver Alert Control and Lane Departure Warning functions will not have full functionality either.

The following table presents possible causes for a message being shown along with the appropriate action.
Collision Warning with Auto Brake & Pedestrian Protection*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cause</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The windscreen surface in front of the camera is dirty or covered</td>
<td>Clean the windscreen surface in front of the camera from dirt, ice and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>with ice or snow.</td>
<td>snow.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thicker fog, heavy rain or snow means that the camera does not work</td>
<td>No action. At times the camera does not work during heavy rain or snow-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sufficiently well.</td>
<td>fall.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cause</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The windscreen surface in front of the camera has been cleaned but</td>
<td>Wait. It may take several minutes for the camera to measure the visibility.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the message remains.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cause</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dirt has appeared between the inside of the windscreen and the</td>
<td>Visit a workshop to have the windscreen inside the camera cover</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>camera.</td>
<td>cleaned - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Symbols and messages in the display

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Specification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>![Symbol]</td>
<td>Collis’n warning OFF</td>
<td>Collision warning system switched off. SHOWN when the engine is started.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>The message clears after about 5 seconds or after one press of the OK button.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![Symbol]</td>
<td>Collision warn. Unavailable</td>
<td>The collision warning system cannot be activated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>SHOWN when the driver attempts to activate the function.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>The message clears after about 5 seconds or after one press of the OK button.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![Symbol]</td>
<td>Auto braking was activated</td>
<td>Auto Brake has been active.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>The message clears after one press of the OK button.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Collision Warning with Auto Brake & Pedestrian Protection*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Specification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| ![Car icon] | Windscreen Sensors blocked      | The camera sensor is temporarily disengaged.  
Shown in the event of snow, ice or dirt on the windscreen for example.  
• Clean the windscreen surface in front of the camera sensor.  
Read about the limitations of the camera sensor, see page 186. |
| ![Radar icon] | Radar blocked See manual | Collision Warning with Auto Brake is temporarily disengaged.  
The radar sensor is blocked and cannot detect other vehicles. For example, in the event that heavy rain or if slush has collected in front of the radar sensor.  
Read about the limitations of the radar sensor, see page 167. |
| ![Triangle icon] | Collision warn. Service required | Collision Warning with Auto Brake is fully or partially disengaged.  
• Visit a workshop if the message remains - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended. |

* Symbols are schematic - may vary by market and car model.

---

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
General information on Driver Alert System

The Driver Alert System is intended to assist drivers whose driving ability is deteriorating or who are inadvertently leaving the lane they are driving on.

The Driver Alert System consists of different functions which can either be switched on at the same time or individually:

- Driver Alert Control – DAC, see page 190.
- Lane Departure Warning – LDW, see page 194.

A switched-on function is set in standby mode and is not activated automatically until speed exceeds 65 km/h.

The function is deactivated again when speed decreases to below 60 km/h.

Both functions use a camera which is dependent on the lane having side markings painted on each side.

⚠️ WARNING

The Driver Alert System does not work in all situations but is instead only intended to be of supplementary assistance.

The driver always has ultimate responsibility that the car is driven safely.

1 Not available as an option for certain engines.
Driver Alert System - DAC*

General information on DAC

The DAC (Driver Alert Control) function is intended to attract the driver’s attention when he/she starts to drive less consistently, e.g. if he/she becomes distracted or starts to fall asleep.

A camera detects the side markings painted on the carriageway and compares the section of the road with the driver’s steering wheel movements. The driver is alerted if the vehicle does not follow the carriageway evenly.

NOTE

The camera sensor has certain limitations, see page 186.

The objective for DAC is to detect slowly deteriorating driving ability and it is primarily intended for major roads. The function is not intended for city traffic.

In some cases driving ability is not affected despite driver fatigue. In which case there may not be any warning issued for the driver. For this reason it is always important to stop and take a break in the event of any signs of driver fatigue, irrespective of whether or not DAC issues a warning.

NOTE

The function must not be used to extend a driving stint. Always plan breaks at regular intervals and ensure that you are fully rested.

Limitation

In some cases the system may issue a warning despite driving ability not deteriorating, for example:

- in strong side winds.
- on rutted road surfaces.

Operation

Settings are made from the centre console’s screen and its menu system. For information on how the menu system is used, see page 213.

On/Off

To set Driver Alert in standby mode:

- In MY CAR, search for Car settings ➔ Driver support systems ➔ Driver Alert and check the box - No check in the box: Function disengaged.

Function

Driver Alert is activated when speed exceeds 65 km/h and remains active as long as the speed is over 60 km/h.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
If the vehicle is being driven erratically, the driver is notified by an acoustic signal plus the text message \textit{Driver Alert Time for a break} - the linked symbol is illuminated in the combined instrument panel at the same time. The warning is repeated after a time if driving ability does not improve.

The warning symbol can be switched off:
- Press the left-hand stalk switch’s \textit{OK} button.

\begin{itemize}
  \item \textbf{WARNING}
\end{itemize}

\begin{quote}
An alarm should be taken very seriously, as a sleepy driver is often not aware of his/her own condition.

In the event of an alarm or a feeling of tiredness; stop the car in a safe manner as soon as possible and rest.

Studies have shown that it is equally as dangerous to drive while tired as it is under the influence of alcohol.
\end{quote}
## Symbols and messages

### Combined instrument panel

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Specification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>![Coffee cup]</td>
<td>Driver Alert Time for a break</td>
<td>The vehicle has been driven inconsistently - the driver is alerted by an acoustic warning signal + text.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| ![Windscreen] | Windscreen Sensors blocked | The camera sensor is temporarily disengaged. Shown in the event of snow, ice or dirt on the windscreen for example.  
• Clean the windscreen surface in front of the camera sensor.  
Read about the limitations of the camera sensor, see page 186. |
| ![Car symbol] | Driver Alert Sys Service required | The system is disengaged.  
• Visit a workshop if the message remains - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended. |

A Symbols are schematic - may vary by market and car model.

### Screen

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Specification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>![Driver alert off]</td>
<td>Driver Alert OFF</td>
<td>The function is disengaged.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![Driver alert available]</td>
<td>Driver Alert Available</td>
<td>The function is activated.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Driver Alert System - DAC*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Specification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>![A]</td>
<td>Driver Alert Standby &lt;65 km/h</td>
<td>The function is set in standby mode due to speed being lower than 65 km/h.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![A]</td>
<td>Driver Alert Unavailable</td>
<td>The carriageway does not have clear side markings or the camera sensor is temporarily disengaged. Read about the limitations of the camera sensor, see page 186.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*A Symbols are schematic - may vary by market and car model.*
General information on - LDW

The LDW (Lane Departure Warning) function is intended to reduce the risk of so-called single-vehicle accidents – accidents where, in certain situations, the vehicle leaves the carriageway and is in danger of driving either into a ditch or into oncoming traffic.

LDW consists of a camera that detects the side lines painted on the carriageway. If the vehicle crosses the left or right-hand side line of the carriageway without due cause then the driver is alerted by an acoustic signal.

NOTE

The driver is only warned once each time the wheels cross a line. So there is no acoustic alarm when there is a line between the car’s wheels.

Operation and function

The function is switched on or off by means of a button on the centre console. An indicator lamp in the button illuminates when the function is switched on.

This function is complemented in the combined instrument panel with intuitive graphics in different situations. Here are several examples:

- The LDW symbol has WHITE side lines - the function is active and detects/"sees" one side line, or both.
- The LDW symbol has GREY side lines - the function is active but detects neither left nor right-hand side line.
- The LDW symbol has GREY side lines - the function is in standby mode because the speed is below 65 km/h.
- The LDW symbol has no side lines - the function is deactivated.

1 Not available as an option for the 2.5T.
Limitations
The LDW function’s camera sensor has limitations similar to the human eye. For more information, see page 186.

NOTE
There are several situations when LDW does not give any warning, for example:
- A direction indicator is switched on
- The driver’s foot is on the brake pedal
- In the event of rapid accelerator pedal depression
- In the event of rapid steering wheel movements
- In the event of turning so suddenly that the car rolls.

Personal preferences
Settings are made from the centre console’s screen via the menu system in MY CAR.
From there, search and locate Settings ➔ Car settings ➔ Driver support systems ➔ Lane Departure Warning. For information on how the menu system is used - see page 213.
Select from the options:
- On at start-up - The function enters standby mode every time the engine is started. Otherwise the same value as when the engine was switched off is obtained.
- Increased sensitivity - The sensitivity increases, an alarm is triggered earlier and fewer limitations apply.

Symbols and messages in the display
In situations where there is no LDW function a symbol may be shown in the combined instrument panel in combination with an explanatory message - follow the recommendation given if appropriate.
Examples of messages:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Specification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="symbol" alt="SymbolA" /></td>
<td>Lane departure warning ON/ Lane departure warning OFF</td>
<td>The function is switched on/off. Shown at switch-on/off. The text disappears after 5 seconds.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="symbol" alt="SymbolA" /></td>
<td>Lane Depart. Warning Unavailable at this speed</td>
<td>The function is set in standby mode due to speed being lower than 65 km/h.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 When "Increased sensitivity" is selected a warning is still given, see page 195.
## Driver Alert System - LDW*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Specification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Lane Depart. Warning Unavailable</td>
<td>The carriageway does not have clear side markings or the camera sensor is temporarily disengaged. Read about the limitations of the camera sensor, see page 186.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Lane Depart. Warning Available</td>
<td>The function scans the carriageway's side markings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![Car]</td>
<td>Windscreen Sensors blocked</td>
<td>The camera sensor is temporarily disengaged.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Shown in the event of snow, ice or dirt on the windscreen for example.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Clean the windscreen surface in front of the camera sensor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Read about the limitations of the camera sensor, see page 186.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![Car]</td>
<td>Driver Alert Sys Service required</td>
<td>The system is disengaged.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Visit a workshop if the message remains - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Symbols are schematic - may vary by market and car model.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
General
Parking assistance is used as an aid to parking. An acoustic signal as well as symbols in the centre console’s screen indicate the distance to the detected obstacle.

Parking assistance sound level can be adjusted during the ongoing acoustic signal using the centre console’s VOL knob or in the car’s menu system MY CAR - see page 213.

Parking assistance is available in two variants:
• Rear only
• Both front and rear.

NOTE
When a towbar is configured with the car’s electrical system, the protrusion of the towbar is included when the function measures the parking space.

WARNING
• Parking assistance does not relinquish the driver’s own responsibility during parking.
• The sensors have blind spots where obstacles cannot be detected.
• Be aware of e.g. people or animals near the car.

Function
The system is automatically activated when the engine is started - the switch’s On/Off lamp is illuminated. If parking assistance is switched off with the button, the lamp goes out.

Screen view - showing an obstacle left front and right rear.

The centre console’s screen shows an overview of the relationship between the car and detected obstacle.

Marked sectors show which of the four sensor(s) detected an obstacle. The closer to the car symbol a selected sector box is, the shorter the distance between the car and a detected obstacle.

The frequency of the signal increases the shorter the distance to an obstacle, in front of or behind the car. Other sound from the audio system is muted automatically.

When the distance is within 30 cm the tone is constant and the active sensor’s field nearest the car is filled in. If the detected obstacle is within the distance for the constant tone both
behind and in front of the car, then the tone sounds alternately from the loudspeakers.

**IMPORTANT**

Objects e.g. chains, thin glossy poles or low barriers may be in the "signal shadow" and are then temporarily not detected by the sensors - the pulsating tone may then unexpectedly stop instead of changing over to the expected constant tone.

The sensors cannot detect high objects, such as projecting loading docks.

- In such situations, pay extra attention and manoeuvre/reposition the car particularly slowly or stop the current parking manoeuvre - there may be a high risk of damage to vehicles or other objects since the sensors are temporarily unable to function optimally.

### Rear parking assistance

The distance covered to the rear of the car is about 1.5 metres. The acoustic signal for obstacles behind comes from one of the rear loudspeakers.

Rear parking assistance is activated when reverse gear is engaged.

When reversing with e.g. a trailer on the towbar, rear parking assistance is switched off automatically - otherwise the sensors would react to the trailer.

### Front parking assistance

The distance covered in front of the car is about 0.8 metres. The acoustic signal for obstacles in front comes from one of the front loudspeakers.

Front park assist is active up to approx. 10 km/h. The lamp in the button is illuminated in order to indicate that the system is activated. When the speed is below 10 km/h the system is reactivated.

**NOTE**

When reversing with e.g. a trailer or bike carrier on the towbar - without Volvo genuine trailer wiring - parking assistance may need to be switched off manually in order that the sensors do not react to them.

**NOTE**

Front parking assistance is deactivated when the parking brake is applied or P mode is selected in a car with an automatic gearbox.
04 Driver support

Park assist syst*

**IMPORTANT**
When fitting auxiliary lamps: Remember that they must not obscure the sensors – the auxiliary lamps could then be detected as obstacles.

**Fault indicator**
If the combined instrument panel’s information symbol illuminates with constant glow and the text message Park assist syst Service required is shown then parking assistance is disengaged.

**IMPORTANT**
In certain conditions the parking assistance system may produce incorrect warning signals that are caused by external audio sources that emit the same ultrasonic frequencies that the system works with.
Examples of such sources include horns, wet tyres on asphalt, pneumatic brakes and exhaust noises from motorcycles etc.

**Cleaning the sensors**

**Sensor location, front.**

**Sensor location, rear.**

The sensors must be cleaned regularly to ensure that they work properly. Clean them with water and car shampoo.

**NOTE**
Dirt, ice and snow covering the sensors may cause incorrect warning signals.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
04 Driver support

Park assist camera*

General
The parking camera is an assist system and is activated when reverse gear is engaged (can be changed in the settings menu, see page 213).

The camera image is shown in the centre console’s screen.

NOTE
When a towbar is configured with the car’s electrical system, the protrusion of the towbar is included when the function measures the parking space.

WARNING
• The parking camera serves as an aid. It does not relieve the driver of responsibility when reversing.
• The camera has blind spots, where obstacles cannot be detected.
• Be aware of people and animals in the vicinity of the car.

Function and operation

CAM button location.

The camera shows what is behind the car and if something appears from the sides.

The camera shows a wide area behind the car and part of the bumper and any towbar.

Objects in the screen may appear to tilt slightly - this is normal.

NOTE

Objects on the display screen may be closer to the car than they appear to be on the screen.

If another view is active the parking camera system takes over automatically and the camera image is displayed in the screen.

When reverse gear is engaged two unbroken lines are shown graphically which illustrate where the car’s rear wheels will roll with the current steering wheel angle, this facilitates tight parking, reversing into tight spaces and for hitching a trailer. The car’s approximate external dimensions are illustrated by means of two dashed lines. These help lines can be switched off in the settings menu.

If the car is also equipped with parking assistance sensors* then their information is displayed graphically as coloured fields in order to illustrate the distance to detected obstacles, see page 197.

The camera is active approx. 5 seconds after reverse gear has been disengaged or until the car’s speed exceeds 10 km/h.

Camera location next to the opening handle.
Light conditions
The camera image is adjusted automatically according to prevailing light conditions. Because of this, the image may vary slightly in brightness and quality. Poor light conditions can result in a slightly reduced image quality.

NOTE
Keep the camera lens clear of dirt, snow and ice to ensure optimum function. This is particularly important in poor light.

Park assist lines
Examples of how the park assist lines can be displayed for the driver.

The lines in the screen are projected as if they were at ground level behind the car and are directly related to steering wheel movement, which shows the driver the path the car will take, even when turning.

NOTE
- When reversing with a trailer which is not connected electrically to the car, the lines on the display show the route the car will take - not the trailer.
- The screen shows no lines when a trailer is connected electrically to the car’s electrical system.
- The parking camera is deactivated automatically when towing a trailer if a Volvo genuine trailer cable is used.

IMPORTANT
Bear in mind that the screen only shows the area behind the car - pay attention to the sides and front of the car when manoeuvring during reversing.

Boundary lines
The system's lines.
1 Boundary line, 30 cm zone backwards from the car
2 Boundary line, free reversing zone
3 "Wheel tracks"

The unbroken line (1) frames in a zone that is within about 30 cm from the bumper.
The dashed line (2) frames in a zone up to about 1.5 m back from the bumper. It is also the limit of the car's most protruding parts, such as door mirrors and corners - also during turning.
The wide "wheel tracks" (3) between the side lines indicate where the wheels will roll and can extend about 3.2 m back from the bumper if no obstacle is in the way.
Cars with reversing sensors*

Coloured areas (x 4, one per sensor) show distance.

If the car is also equipped with parking assistance sensors (see page 197) the distance indication will be more precise and the coloured areas show which of the 4 sensors is/are registering an obstacle.

The colour of the areas changes with decreasing distance to the obstacle - from yellow to orange to red.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Colour / paint</th>
<th>Distance (metres)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Yellow</td>
<td>1,5–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orange</td>
<td>0,3–1,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red</td>
<td>0–0,3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Settings**
Press OK/MENU when a camera view is shown. Make the settings as desired.

**Miscellaneous**
- The default setting is that the camera is activated when reverse gear is engaged.
- One press on CAM activates the camera even if reverse gear is not engaged.
- If the car has several cameras* installed then cameras are alternated between by pressing CAM or turning TUNE.

**Limitations**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NOTE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A bike carrier or other accessory mounted on the rear of the car could obscure the camera’s view.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Pay attention to the possibility that, even if it only looks like a relatively small part of the image is obscured, it could be a relatively large sector that is hidden from view. Obstacles could thereby go undetected until they are very close to the car.

**To bear in mind**
- Keep the camera lens free from dirt, ice and snow.
- Clean the camera lens regularly with luke-warm water and car shampoo - take care not to scratch the lens.
**General information on BLIS**

The BLIS function (Blind Spot Information System) is a camera-based information system that under certain conditions can help the driver to notice vehicles moving in the same direction as the host vehicle in the so-called "blind spot".

The system is designed to work most effectively when driving in dense traffic on multi-lane highways.

---

**WARNING**

The system is a supplement to, not a replacement for, a safe driving style and use of the rearview mirrors. It can never replace the driver’s attention and responsibility. The responsibility for changing lanes safely always rests with the driver.

---

**Operation**

1. **BLIS camera**
2. **Indicator lamp**
3. **BLIS symbol**

> **NOTE**
>
> The lamp illuminates on the side of the car where the system has detected the vehicle. If the car is overtaken on both sides at the same time then both lamps illuminate.

---

**Function**

**Activate/deactivate BLIS**

*Button for activating/deactivating.*

BLIS is activated when the engine is started. The indicator lamps in the door panels flash three times when BLIS is activated.

The system can be deactivated/activated after starting the engine with one press on the **BLIS** button.

Some combinations of the selected equipment leave no vacant space for a button in the centre console - in which case the function is handled by the car’s menu system **MY CAR** under **Settings ➔ Car settings ➔ BLIS**.

---

1 NOTE: The illustration is schematic - details may vary depending on car model.
(For a description of the menu system - see page 213).

When BLIS is deactivated, the lamp in the button extinguishes and a message is shown in the combined instrument panel.

When BLIS is activated the lamp in the button illuminates, the combined instrument panel shows a new text message and the indicator lamps in the door panels flash 3 times. Press the OK button to extinguish the text message. (For a description of messages - see page 211).

**When BLIS operates**

When a camera (1) has detected a vehicle inside the blind spot zone the indicator lamp (2) illuminates with a constant glow, see figure page 203.

BLIS advises the driver with a message if a fault arises in the system. If, for example, the system's cameras are obscured then the BLIS indicator lamp flashes and a message is shown in the combined instrument panel. In such cases, check and clean the lenses.

If necessary, the system can be switched off temporarily, see the section "Activate/deactivate" page 203.

**Overtaking**

The system is designed to react if:

- you overtake another vehicle at a speed of up to 10 km/h faster than the other vehicle
- you are overtaken by a vehicle travelling up to 70 km/h faster than you are travelling.

**WARNING**

BLIS does not work in sharp bends.

BLIS does not work when the car is reversing.

A wide trailer coupled to the car can conceal other vehicles in adjacent lanes. It can prevent the vehicle in the screened area from being detected by BLIS.

**Daylight and darkness**

In daylight the system reacts to the shape of the surrounding vehicles. The system is designed to detect motor vehicles such as cars, trucks, buses and motorcycles.

In darkness the system reacts to the headlamps of surrounding vehicles. If the headlamps of surrounding vehicles are not switched on then the system does not detect the vehicles. This means for example that the system does not react to a trailer without headlamps which is towed behind a car or truck.
**WARNING**

The system does not react to cyclists or moped riders.

The BLIS cameras have limitations similar to those of the human eye, i.e. they do not "see" as well e.g. in heavy snowfall, against strong light or in thick fog.

**Limitations**

In some situations the BLIS indicator lamp may illuminate despite there being no other vehicle within the blind spot.

**NOTE**

If the BLIS indicator lamp illuminates on isolated occasions despite there being no other vehicle within the blind spot then this does not mean that a fault has arisen in the system.

In the event of a fault in the BLIS system the combined instrument panel shows the text **Blind spot syst. Service required**.

The following illustrations show examples of situations where the BLIS indicator lamp may illuminate even if there is no other vehicle within the blind spot.

**Maintenance**

In order to work most effectively the BLIS camera lenses\(^2\) must be clean. The lenses can be cleaned with a soft cloth or damp sponge. Clean the lenses carefully so that they are not scratched.

**IMPORTANT**

The lenses are electrically heated to melt ice or snow. If necessary, brush snow away from the lenses.

**IMPORTANT**

Repair of the BLIS system components must only be performed by a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

---

\(^2\) See (1) in the figure on page 203.
Messages
In situations where the BLIS function fails or is interrupted, the combined instrument panel may show a symbol, supplemented by an explanatory message. Follow any recommendation given.

Examples of messages:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Specification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Blind-spot info system ON</td>
<td>The BLIS system is activated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BLIS Service required</td>
<td>Blind spot syst. disengaged - contact a workshop.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BLIS Camera blocked</td>
<td>The BLIS camera is blocked by dirt, snow or ice - clean the lenses.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BLIS Reduced function</td>
<td>Reduced function in the data transmission between the BLIS system's camera and the car's electrical system. The camera resets itself when the data transmission returns to normal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blind-spot info system OFF</td>
<td>The BLIS system is deactivated.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A text message can be acknowledged by briefly pressing the OK button on the direction indicator stalk.
Menus and messages.................................................................................. 210
Menu source MY CAR.............................................................................. 213
Climate control......................................................................................... 221
Engine and passenger compartment heater*........................................... 233
Additional heater*.................................................................................. 237
Trip computer.......................................................................................... 239
Adapting driving characteristics............................................................... 247
Comfort inside the passenger compartment.......................................... 248

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
COMFORT AND DRIVING PLEASURE
Menus and messages

Combined instrument panel

Information display (analogue combined instrument panel) and controls for menu navigation.

1 OK – access to message list and message confirmation.
2 Thumbwheel – browse between menu options.
3 RESET – reset the active function. Used in certain cases to select/activate a function, see the explanation under each respective function.

The menus shown in the display in the combined instrument panel are controlled with the left-hand stalk switch. The menus shown depend on key position, see page 81. If a message appears then this must be acknowledged with OK for the menus to be shown.

Menu overview
Some of the following menu options require the function and hardware to be installed in the car.

Analogue combined instrument panel
- Digital speed
- Parking heater*
- Additional heater*
- TC options
- Service status
- Oil level¹
- Messages (##)²

Digital combined instrument panel
- Settings*
- Themes
- Contrast mode/Colour mode
- Service status
- Messages²
- Oil level
- Parking heater*
- Trip computer reset

¹ Certain engines.
² The number of messages is indicated in brackets.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
Message
When a warning, information or indicator symbol illuminates, a corresponding message appears in the display at the same time. An error message is stored in a memory list until the fault has been rectified.

Press **OK** (see figure in the section "Combined instrument panel" on page 210) to acknowledge and browse through messages.

### NOTE
If a warning message appears while you are using the trip computer, the message must be read (press **OK**) before the previous activity can be resumed.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Specification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stop safely(^A)</td>
<td>Stop and switch off the engine. Serious risk of damage - consult a workshop(^B).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stop engine(^A)</td>
<td>Stop and switch off the engine. Serious risk of damage - consult a workshop(^B).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Service urgent(^A)</td>
<td>Contact a workshop(^B) to check the car immediately.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Service required(^A)</td>
<td>Contact a workshop(^B) to check the car as soon as possible.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>See manual(^A)</td>
<td>Read the owner's manual.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Book time for mainte-</td>
<td>Time to book regular service - contact a workshop(^B).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nance</td>
<td>Time for regular maintenance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time for regular maint-</td>
<td>Time for regular service - contact a workshop(^B). The timing is determined by the number of kilometres driven, number of months since the last service, engine running time and oil grade.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maintenance overdue</td>
<td>If the service intervals are not followed then the warranty does not cover any damaged parts - contact a workshop(^B).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Specification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Transmission Oil change needed</td>
<td>Contact a workshop(^B) to check the car as soon as possible.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transmission Reduced performance</td>
<td>The gearbox cannot handle full capacity. Drive carefully until the message clears(^C).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transmission hot Reduce speed</td>
<td>Drive more smoothly or stop the car in a safe manner. Disengage the gear and run the engine at idling speed until the message clears.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transmission hot Stop safely Wait for cooling</td>
<td>Critical fault. Stop the car immediately in a safe manner and contact a workshop(^B).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Menus and messages

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Specification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Temporarily off&lt;sup&gt;A&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>A function has been temporarily switched off and is reset automatically while driving or after starting again.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low battery charge</td>
<td>The audio system is switched off to save energy. Charge the battery.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Power save mode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>A</sup> Part of message, shown together with information on where the problem has arisen.

<sup>B</sup> An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

<sup>C</sup> For more information regarding the automatic gearbox, see page 126.
General information about MY CAR

Many of the car’s features are handled in this menu source, e.g. setting the clock, door mirrors and locks.

Navigation in the menus is carried out using buttons in the centre console or with the steering wheel’s right-hand keypad.

Certain functions are standard, others are optional - the range also varies depending on the market.

Operation

Centre console controls

1. Press MY CAR to open the menus under MY CAR.
2. Press OK MENU to select/tick in the highlighted menu option or to store the selected function in the memory.
3. Turn the TUNE knob to scroll up/down among the menu options.
4. EXIT

EXIT functions

Depending on the function the cursor is on when EXIT is pressed, and on the menu level, one of the following may occur:

- phone call is rejected
- current function is interrupted
- input characters are deleted
- most recent selections are undone
- leads up in the menu system

Short and long presses may also produce varying results.

A long press leads to the highest menu level (Main source view), from where all of the car’s functions/menu sources can be accessed - see also page 257.
05 Comfort and driving pleasure

Menu source MY CAR

Steering wheel keypad*

The keypad may vary depending on market.

1 Turn the thumbwheel to scroll up/down among the menu options.
2 Press the thumbwheel to select/tick in the highlighted menu option or to store the selected function in the memory.
2 EXIT (see heading "EXIT functions" page 213).

Search paths
Current menu level is shown at the top right of the centre console's screen. Search paths to the menu system functions are described in this manual in the following form:

Settings ➔ Car settings ➔ Lock settings ➔ Doors unlock ➔ Driver door, then all.

The following is an example of how a function can be accessed and adjusted using the steering wheel keypad:

1. Press the centre console button MY CAR.
2. Scroll to the desired menu, e.g. Settings, with the thumbwheel (1) and then press the thumbwheel - a submenu opens.
3. Scroll to the desired menu, e.g. Car settings and press the thumbwheel - a submenu opens.
4. Scroll to Lock settings and press the thumbwheel - a new submenu opens.
5. Scroll to Doors unlock and press the thumbwheel - a submenu of selectable functions opens.
6. Choose between the options All doors and Driver door, then all and press the thumbwheel - a cross is marked in the option's empty box.
7. Exit the programming by backing out of the menus incrementally with short presses on EXIT (2) or with one long press.

The procedure is the same as with the centre console's buttons - see page 213: OK MENU (2), EXIT (4) and the TUNE knob (3).

MY CAR
The following options are available in menu source MY CAR:

- My V70/XC70
- DRiVe
- Support systems
- Settings

Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
My V70/XC70

The screen shows a grouping of all of the car’s driver support systems - these can be activated or deactivated here.

DRIVe
Parts of the Volvo DRIVe concept are described here, among other things.

- Start/Stop
- Eco driving guide

For more information - see page 134.

Trip statistics
MY CAR ➔ Trip statistics

The screen shows history with a bar chart of average fuel consumption, see page 246.

Driver support system

The screen shows a summary of the current status of the car’s driver support systems.

Setup - menus

The menus are structured as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Menu level 1</th>
<th>Menu level 2</th>
<th>Menu level 3</th>
<th>Menu level 4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Menu level 3</td>
<td></td>
<td>p. x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Menu level 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Shown here are the 4 first menu levels under MY CAR ➔ Settings. Some menus have further submenus - these are then described in detail in their respective sections.

When selecting whether a function should be activated/On or deactivated/Off a square is displayed:

- On: Selected square.
- Off: Empty square.

- Select On/Off with OK - then back out of the menu with EXIT.

Functions in MY CAR

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Car settings</th>
<th>Car key memory</th>
<th>p. 84 and 107</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>On</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Off</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## 05 Comfort and driving pleasure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Menu source MY CAR</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Lock settings</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatic door locking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>On</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Doors unlock</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All doors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Driver door, then all</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Keyless entry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All doors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Any door</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Doors on same side</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Both front doors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p. 46, 56 and 58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Light settings</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Door lock confirmation light</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>On</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unlock confirmation light</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>On</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Approach light duration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30 sec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60 sec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90 sec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p. 46 and 98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Home safe light duration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30 sec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60 sec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90 sec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p. 98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Triple indicator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>On</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p. 96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Reduced Guard</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Activate once</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ask when exiting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p. 60 and 64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Side mirror settings</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fold mirrors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tilt left mirror</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tilt right mirror</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p. 108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Light settings</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temporary LH traffic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>On</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temporary RH traffic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>On</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Active bending lights</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>On</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p. 94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auxiliary lights</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>On</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p. 95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Steering wheel force</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p. 247</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Reset car settings

All menus in Car settings are given original factory settings.

### Driver support systems

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Settings</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Collision Warning</td>
<td>On, Off</td>
<td>p. 181</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warning distance</td>
<td>Long, Normal, Short</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warning sound</td>
<td>On, Off</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lane Departure Warning</td>
<td>On, Off</td>
<td>p. 194</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>On at start-up</td>
<td>On, Off</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Increased sensitivity</td>
<td>On, Off</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Road Sign Information</td>
<td>On, Off</td>
<td>p. 156</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Speed alert</td>
<td>On, Off</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DSTC</td>
<td>On, Off</td>
<td>p. 154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>City Safety</td>
<td>On, Off</td>
<td>p. 175</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BLIS</td>
<td>On, Off</td>
<td>p. 203</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Distance Alert</td>
<td>On, Off</td>
<td>p. 172</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Driver Alert</td>
<td>On, Off</td>
<td>p. 190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System options</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time</td>
<td></td>
<td>p. 79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time format</td>
<td>12 h, 24 h</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The combined instrument panel’s clock is adjusted here.

---

**Menu source MY CAR**
## Menu source MY CAR

### Screen saver
- **On**
- **Off**

The screen's current content fades out after a period of inactivity and is replaced by a blank screen if this option is selected.

The current screen content returns if any of the screen's buttons or controls are actuated.

### Language
Selects language for menu texts.

### Show help text
- **On**
- **Off**

Explanatory text for the screen's current content is shown with this option selected.

### Distance and fuel units
- **MPG (UK)**
- **MPG (US)**
- **km/l**
- **l/100km**

### Temperature unit
- **Celsius**
- **Fahrenheit**

Selects the unit for the display of outside temperature and setting of the climate control system.

### Volume levels
- **Voice output volume**
- **Front park assist volume**
- **Rear park assist volume**
- **Phone ringing volume**

*(Voice output volume: Only with Volvo’s GPS navigator RTI installed – see RTI manual.)*

### Reset system options
All menus in System options are given original factory settings.

### Voice command list
- **Phone commands**
  - Phone
  - Phone call contact
  - Phone dial number

- **Navigation commands**
  - Navigation
  - Navigation repeat instruction
  - Navigation go to address

- **General commands**
  - Help
  - Cancel
  - Voice tutorial

The menu options under Phone commands show several examples of available voice commands - only with a Bluetooth®-enabled mobile phone installed. For more and detailed information - see page 283.

The menu options under Navigation commands show several examples of available voice commands - only with Volvo's navigation system RTI* installed.

---

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
### Voice user setting

- Default setting
- User 1
- User 2

Here there is the option to create a second user profile - an advantage if more than one person shall use the car/system regularly. **Default setting** gives factory settings.

### Voice training

- User 1
- User 2

With **Voice training** the voice recognition system is taught to recognise the driver's voice and pronunciation. A number of phrases are presented in the screen for the driver to read aloud. When the system has learnt how the driver talks, the presentation of the phrases stops. Following which e.g. **User 1** can be selected in **Voice user setting** in order that the system shall listen to the right user.

### Voice output volume

A volume control appears in the screen - at which point, proceed as follows:
1. Adjust the volume with the thumbwheel.
2. Test-listen using **OK**.
3. Use **EXIT** to store the setting and the menu is switched off.

### Voice POI list

- **Edit list**

The number of facilities is extensive and varies depending on market. Maximum 30 favourite facilities can be stored in this list.

Menu option **Voice POI list** is only shown if Volvo’s navigation system RTI* is installed. For more information on Facilities and Voice recognition - see the Navigation system's owner's manual.

### Audio settings

- *p. 255*

### Climate settings

- *p. 221*

#### Automatic blower adjustment

- Normal
- High
- Low

#### Recirculation timer

- On
- Off

#### Automatic rear defroster

- On
- Off

#### Auto start steering wheel heater

- On
- Off

#### Auto start driver seat heater

- On
- Off

#### Interior air quality system

- On
- Off

#### Reset climate settings

All menus in **Climate settings** are given original factory settings.

---

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
# 05 Comfort and driving pleasure

## Menu source MY CAR

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Favourites (FAV)</td>
<td>p. 259</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Volvo On Call</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Described in a separate manual.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Information</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of keys</td>
<td>p.44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VIN number</td>
<td>p. 400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DivX® VOD code</td>
<td>p. 276</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bluetooth software version in car</td>
<td>p. 282</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Map and software version*</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Only in cars with Volvo GPS navigator - see separate manual.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**General**

**Climate control**
The car is equipped with electronic climate control. The climate control system cools or heats as well as dehumidifies the air in the passenger compartment.

**NOTE**
The air conditioning system (AC) can be switched off, see page 229, but to ensure the best possible climate comfort in the passenger compartment and to prevent the windows from misting, it should always be on.

**Actual temperature**
The temperature you select corresponds to the physical experience with reference to factors such as air speed, humidity and solar radiation etc. in and around the car.

The system includes a sun sensor which detects on which side the sun is shining into the passenger compartment. This means that the temperature can differ between the right and left-hand air vents despite the controls being set for the same temperature on both sides.

**Sensor location**
- The sun sensor is located on the top side of the dashboard.
- The temperature sensor for the passenger compartment is located below the climate control panel.
- The outside temperature sensor is located on the door mirror.
- The humidity sensor* is located by the interior rearview mirror.

**NOTE**
Do not cover or block the sensors with clothing or other objects.

**Side windows and sunroof**
To ensure that the air conditioning works optimally, the side windows, and sunroof* if specified, should be closed.

**Misting windows**
Remove misting on the insides of the windows by primarily using the defroster function.

To reduce the risk of misting, keep the windows clean and use window cleaner.

**Temporary shut-off of the air conditioning**
When the engine requires full power, e.g. for full acceleration or driving uphill with a trailer, the air conditioning can be temporarily switched off. There may then be a temporary increase in temperature in the passenger compartment.

**Condensation**
In warm weather, condensation from the air conditioning may drip under the car. This is normal.

**Ice and snow**
Remove ice and snow from the climate control system air intake (the grille between the bonnet and the windscreen).

**Total airing function**
The function opens/closes all side windows simultaneously and can be used for example to quickly air the car during hot weather, see page 58.

**Passenger compartment filter**
All air entering the car’s passenger compartment is cleaned with a filter. This must be replaced at regular intervals. Follow the Volvo Service Programme for the recommended

---

1 Only applies to ECC.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
05 Comfort and driving pleasure

Climate control

replacement intervals. If the car is used in a severely contaminated environment, it may be necessary to replace the filter more often.

NOTE
There are different types of passenger compartment filter. Make sure that the correct filter is fitted.

Clean Zone Interior Package (CZIP)*
This option keeps the passenger compartment clear of allergy and asthma inducing substances. For more information on CZIP, see the brochure included with the purchase of the car.

The following is included:
• An enhanced fan function that means that the fan starts when the car is opened with the remote control key. The fan fills the passenger compartment with fresh air. The function starts when required and is disengaged automatically after a time or when one of the passenger compartment doors is opened.
• The air quality system IAQS is a fully automatic system that cleans the air in the passenger compartment from contaminants such as particles, hydrocarbons, nitrous oxides and ground-level ozone.

NOTE
To keep the CZIP standard in cars with CZIP the IAQS filter must be changed after 15 000 km or once per year depending on whichever occurs first. However, up to 75 000 km over 5 years. In cars without CZIP and where the customer does not want to keep the CZIP standard the IAQS filter must be changed at a regular service.

Clean Zone Interior Package (CZIP)*
This option keeps the passenger compartment clear of allergy and asthma inducing substances. For more information on CZIP, see the brochure included with the purchase of the car.

The following is included:
• An enhanced fan function that means that the fan starts when the car is opened with the remote control key. The fan fills the passenger compartment with fresh air. The function starts when required and is disengaged automatically after a time or when one of the passenger compartment doors is opened.
• The air quality system IAQS is a fully automatic system that cleans the air in the passenger compartment from contaminants such as particles, hydrocarbons, nitrous oxides and ground-level ozone.

Use of tested materials in the interior equipment.
The materials have been developed in order to minimise the quantity of dust in the passenger compartment and they contribute to making the passenger compartment easier to keep clean. The carpets in both the passenger compartment and the cargo area are removable and easy to remove and clean. Use cleaning agents and car care products recommended by Volvo, see page 394.

Menu settings
It is possible to activate/deactivate or change the default settings for six of the climate control system’s functions via the centre console. For general information about menu navigation, see page 214:
• Fan level for automatic climate control*, see page 228.
• Recirculation timer, see page 230.

• Automatic start of rear window defroster, see page 108.
• Air quality system*, see page 230.
• Automatic start of seat heating driver, see page 226.
• Automatic start of steering wheel heating, see page 89.

The climate control system’s functions can be reset to the default settings via the menu system in MY CAR and this is carried out under: Settings ➔ Climate settings ➔ Reset climate settings.

Air distribution

The incoming air is divided between a number of different vents in the passenger compartment.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
Air distribution is fully automatic in **AUTO** mode*. 

If necessary it can be controlled manually, see page 231.

**Air vents in the dashboard**

- **Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.**

Air vents in the door pillars

- **Closed**
- **Open**
- **Lateral airflow**
- **Vertical airflow**

Aim the outer vents at the side windows to remove misting.

**NOTE**

Remember that small children may be sensitive to air flows and draughts.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
**Climate control**

**Electronic climate control, ECC***

1. Temperature control, left-hand side
2. Electrically heated front seat, left-hand side
3. Max. defroster
4. Fan
5. Air distribution - ventilation floor
6. Air distribution - air vent instrument panel
7. Air distribution - defroster windscreen
8. Rear window and door mirror defrosters, see page 108
9. Electrically heated front seat, right-hand side
10. Temperature control, right-hand side
11. Recirculation
12. AUTO - Automatic climate control
13. AC – Air conditioning on/off
14. Ventilated front seat*, left-hand side
15. Ventilated front seat*, right-hand side

---

2 The button has a different location depending on whether or not the car is equipped with ventilated front seat*.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
Electronic Temperature Control, ETC

1. Fan
2. Electrically heated front seat, left-hand side
3. AC – Air conditioning on/off
4. Max. defroster
5. Air distribution - ventilation floor
6. Air distribution - air vent instrument panel
7. Air distribution - defroster windscreen
8. Rear window and door mirror defrosters, see page 108
9. Recirculation
10. Electrically heated front seat, right-hand side
11. Temperature control

Operating the controls

Heated seats*

**WARNING**
The heated seat should not be used by people who find it difficult to perceive temperature increase because of sensory loss or for any reason have difficulty in managing to use the control of the heated seat. Otherwise, burn injuries may arise.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
Climate control

Front seats

Current heat level is shown in the centre console’s screen.

The button has a different location depending on whether or not the car is equipped with ventilated front seat*, see the illustration on page 224.

Press the button repeatedly in order to activate the function:
- Highest heat level - three orange fields illuminate in the centre console’s screen (see figure above).
- Lower heat level - two orange fields illuminate in the screen.
- Lowest heat level - one orange field illuminates in the screen.
- Switch off the heat - no field illuminates.

Automatic start of driver’s seat heating

With the automatic start of the driver’s seat heating activated, the driver’s seat will have the highest heat level when the engine is started.

Automatic start takes place when the car is cold and the ambient temperature is lower than approx. +7 °C. Activate/deactivate the function via the menu system in MY CAR under Settings ➔ Climate settings ➔ Auto start driver seat heater. For a description of the menu system, see page 213.

Rear seat*

Current heat level is shown in the pushbutton’s lamps.

Press the button repeatedly in order to activate the function:
- Highest heat level - three lamps illuminate.
- Lower heat level - two lamps illuminate.
- Lowest heat level - one lamp illuminates.
- Switch off the heat - no lamp illuminates.

Ventilated front seats*

Ventilated front seats can only be specified when ECC is installed in the car. The ventilation system consists of fans in the seats and backrests that draw air through the seat

3 Not included if two-stage booster seat is selected.
upholstery. The cooling effect increases the cooler the passenger compartment air becomes. The system can be activated when the engine is running.

The ventilation can be used at the same time as seat heating. For example, the function can be used to dry damp from clothing.

The ventilation is regulated from the climate control and takes seat temperature, solar radiation and outside temperature into consideration.

For button location, see the illustration on page 224. Press the button repeatedly in order to activate the function.

There are three comfort levels that produce different cooling and dehumidification outputs:

- Comfort level III: Highest output - three blue fields illuminate in the centre console’s screen (see figure above).
- Comfort level II: Lower output - two blue fields illuminate in the screen.
- Comfort level I: Lowest output - one blue field illuminates in the screen.
- Switch off the function - no field illuminates.

NOTE
The seat ventilation should be used carefully by people sensitive to draughts. Comfort level I is recommended for long-term use.

IMPORTANT
The seat ventilation cannot be started when passenger compartment temperature is below 5 °C. This is to avoid chilling anyone sitting in the seat.

NOTE
If the fan is fully switched off then the air conditioning is not engaged - which can cause a risk of misting on the windows.

Fan knob for ECC*
Turn the knob to increase or decrease fan speed. If AUTO is selected then fan speed is regulated automatically. The previously set fan speed is disengaged.

Fan knob for ETC
Turn the knob to increase or decrease fan speed.
**Climate control**

### Air distribution

1. Air distribution - defroster windscreen
2. Air distribution - air vent instrument panel
3. Air distribution - ventilation floor

The figure consists of three buttons. When pressing the buttons the corresponding figure is illuminated in the screen (see following figure) and an arrow in front of each part of the figure shows the air distribution that is selected. For more information on air distribution, see page 231.

### AUTO - Automatic climate control

The Auto function automatically regulates temperature, air conditioning, fan speed, recirculation, and air distribution.

If you select one or more manual functions, the other functions continue to be controlled automatically. All manual settings are disengaged when AUTO is pressed. The screen shows AUTO CLIMATE.

Fan speed in automatic mode can be set in the menu system MY CAR under: Settings

### Temperature control

Current temperature for each side is shown in the centre console's screen.

1  Only applies to ECC.
The temperature can be adjusted with the knob. For ECC* the temperature for the driver's side and the passenger side can be set separately.

When the car is started, the most recent setting is resumed.

**NOTE**
Heating or cooling cannot be hastened by selecting a higher/lower temperature than the actual temperature required.

**AC – Air conditioning on/off**
When the lamp in the AC button illuminates, the air conditioning is controlled by the system's automatic function. This way, incoming air is cooled and dehumidified.

When the lamp in the AC button is switched off the air conditioning is disconnected. Other functions are still controlled automatically. When the max. defroster function is activated the air conditioning is switched on automatically, so that the air is dehumidified at the maximum setting.

*Heated windscreen* and max. defroster

The selected setting is shown in the centre console’s screen.

1. Electric heating*
2. Max. defroster

Used to quickly remove misting and ice from the windscreen and side windows. The light in the defroster button illuminates when the function is active.

Press the button repeatedly in order to activate the function.

For cars without heated windscreen:
- Air flows to the windows - symbol (2) illuminates in the screen.
- Switch off the function - no symbol illuminates.

For cars with heated windscreen:
- Start the heating for the windscreen - symbol (1) illuminates in the screen.
- Start the heating for the windscreen and air flow to the windows - symbols (1) and (2) illuminate in the screen.
- Switch off the function - no symbol illuminates.

**NOTE**
Heated windscreen and IR window, see page 105, may have an impact on the performance of transponders and other communication equipment.

**NOTE**
A triangular area at the end of each side of the windscreen is not electrically heated, where de-icing may take longer.

---

4 If the character C is shown in the rearview mirror when the heated windscreen is activated then the compass* must be recalibrated. See section Calibration on page 110.
**Climate control**

**NOTE**
Electrically heated windscreen is not available when the engine is auto-stopped, see page 134.

The following also takes place in order to provide maximum dehumidification in the passenger compartment:
- the air conditioning is automatically engaged
- recirculation and the air quality system are automatically disengaged.

**NOTE**
The noise level increases as the fan is operating at max.

When the defroster is switched off the climate control returns to the previous settings.

**Heated steering wheel***
The heating of the steering wheel is activated/deactivated via a button in the centre console. For more information, see page 89.

**Recirculation**
When recirculation is engaged the orange lamp in the button illuminates. The function is selected to shut out bad air, exhaust gases etc. from the passenger compartment. The air in the passenger compartment is recirculated, i.e. no outside air is taken into the car when this function is activated.

**IMPORTANT**
If the air in the car recirculates for too long, there is a risk of misting on the insides of the windows.

**Timer**
With the timer function activated the system will exit manually activated recirculation mode according to a time that depends on the outside temperature. This reduces the risk of ice, misting and bad air. Activate/deactivate the function in the menu system **MY CAR** under **Settings** ➔ **Climate settings** ➔ **Recirculation timer**. For a description of the menu system, see page 214.

**NOTE**
When max. defroster is selected, recirculation is always deactivated.

**Air quality system***
The air quality system (IAQS) separates gases and particles to reduce the levels of odours and contaminants in the passenger compartment. If the outside air is contaminated then the air intake is closed and the air is recirculated.

Activate/deactivate the function in the menu system **MY CAR** under **Settings** ➔ **Climate settings** ➔ **Interior air quality system**. For a description of the menu system, see page 214.

**NOTE**
The air quality sensor must always be enabled to ensure the best air in the passenger compartment.

In a cold climate recirculation is limited so as to prevent misting.

In the event of misting, the air quality sensor should be disengaged, and the defroster functions for the windscreen and side windows, as well as the rear window, should be used.
Cars with DRIVe Start/Stop *
With an auto-stopped engine certain equipment has its function temporarily reduced, e.g. climate control fan speed. For more information, see page 134.

Air distribution table

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Air distribution</th>
<th>Use</th>
<th>Use</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Air to windows. Some air flows from the air vents. The air is not recirculated. Air conditioning is always engaged.</td>
<td>to remove ice and misting quickly.</td>
<td>Air to the floor and windows. Some air flows from the dashboard air vents.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Air to windscreen, via defroster vent, and side windows. Some air flows from the air vents.</td>
<td>to prevent misting and icing in a cold and humid climate, (not at too low fan speed to enable this).</td>
<td>Air to floor and from dashboard air vents.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Climate control

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Air distribution</th>
<th>Use</th>
<th>Air distribution</th>
<th>Use</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Airflow to windows and from dashboard air vents.</td>
<td>to ensure good comfort in warm, dry weather.</td>
<td>Air to floor. Some air flows to the dashboard air vents and windows.</td>
<td>to direct heat or cold to the floor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Airflow to the head and chest from the dashboard air vents.</td>
<td>to ensure efficient cooling in warm weather.</td>
<td>Airflow to windows, from dashboard air vents and to the floor.</td>
<td>to provide cooler air along the floor or warmer air higher up in cold weather or hot, dry weather.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**General**
Preconditioning prepares the parking heater for the engine and passenger compartment before departure so that both wear and energy needs during the journey are reduced.

The heater can be started directly or with timer.

Two different times can be selected using the timer. Here, time refers to the time when the car is heated and ready. The car's electronic system calculates when heating should be started based on the outside temperature.

**Fuel-driven heater**
The fuel-driven heater cannot start if the outside temperature exceeds 15 °C. At –5 °C or lower the maximum running time of the heater is 50 minutes.

⚠️ **WARNING**
Do not use the fuel-driven heater indoors. Exhaust gases are secreted.

️ **NOTE**
When the fuel-driven auxiliary heater is active there may be smoke from the right-hand wheel housing, which is perfectly normal.

**Refuelling**

![Warning label on fuel filler flap.]

**WARNING**
Fuel which spills out could be ignited. Switch off the fuel-driven auxiliary heater before starting to refuel.

Check in the combined instrument panel that the heater is switched off. The heat symbol is shown when it is operating.

**Parking on a hill**
If the car is parked on a steep hill, the front of the car should point downhill to ensure that there is a supply of fuel to the fuel-driven heater.

**Battery and fuel**
If the battery has insufficient charge or if the fuel level is too low, the heater will be switched off automatically and a message is shown in the display. Acknowledge the message by pressing the indicator stalk OK button once, see page 234.

⚠️ **IMPORTANT**
Repeated use of the heater combined with short journeys leads to the battery discharging and consequential starting problems.

The car should be driven for the same time as the heater is used to ensure that the car’s battery is recharged adequately to replace the energy consumed by the heater when it is used on a regular basis. The heater is used for a maximum of 50 minutes each time.
05 Comfort and driving pleasure

Engine and passenger compartment heater*

Operation

Information display (analogue combined instrument panel) and controls for menu navigation.

Symbols and messages

When the heater has been activated the heat symbol illuminates in the display.

When one of the timers has been activated, the symbol for activated timer illuminates in the display at the same time as the set time is shown next to the symbol.

The table shows symbols and display texts that appear.

Operation

Information display (digital combined instrument panel) and controls for menu navigation.

1 OK button
2 Thumbwheel
3 RESET button

For more information on the display and OK, see page 210.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
## Engine and passenger compartment heater*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Display</th>
<th>Specification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Symbol" /></td>
<td>The heater is switched on and running.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Symbol" /></td>
<td>The heater has been stopped by the car’s electronics in order to facilitate starting the engine.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Symbol" /></td>
<td>Starting the heater is not possible due to fuel level being too low - this is in order to facilitate starting the engine as well as approx. 50 km driving.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Symbol" /></td>
<td>Heater not working. Contact a workshop for repair. Volvo recommends that you contact an authorised Volvo workshop.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A display text clears automatically after a time or after one press on the indicator stalk OK button.

### Direct start and immediate stop

Following the direct start of the heater it will be activated for 50 minutes.

Heating of the passenger compartment will begin as soon as the engine coolant has reached the correct temperature.

### NOTE

The car can be started and driven while the fuel-driven auxiliary heater is running.

1. Press OK to access the menu.
2. Scroll with the thumbwheel to Parking heater and select with OK.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
3. Scroll forward in the next menu to Direct start/Stop in order to activate/deactivate the heater and select with OK.

4. Exit the menu with RESET.

**Timer**
The time when the car shall be used and heated is specified with the timer.

**Setting the timer**

1. Press OK to access the menu.
2. Use the thumbwheel to scroll to one of the timers Parking heater and select with OK.
3. Select one of the two timers using the thumbwheel and confirm with OK.
4. Briefly press OK to move to the illuminated hours setting.
5. Select the required hour using the thumbwheel.
6. Briefly press OK to move to the flashing minutes setting.
7. Select the required minute using the thumbwheel.
8. Press OK² to confirm the setting.

9. Go back in the menu structure with RESET.
10. Select the second timer (continued from point 2) or exit the menu with RESET.

**Starting the timer**

1. Press OK to access the menu.
2. Scroll with the thumbwheel to Parking heater and select with OK.
3. Select one of the two timers using the thumbwheel and activate with OK.
4. Exit the menu with RESET.

**Switching off the timer**

A timer-started heater can be switched off manually before the set time has elapsed. Proceed as follows:

1. Press OK to access the menu.
2. Scroll with the thumbwheel to Parking heater and select with OK.
   > If a timer is set but not activated then a clock icon is shown beside the set time.
3. Select one of the two timers using the thumbwheel and confirm with OK.

4. Switch off the timer by pressing:
   - long on OK or
   - short on OK to go forward in the menu. Then select to stop the timer and confirm with OK.

5. Exit the menu with RESET.

A timer-started heater can be switched off in accordance with the instructions in the section "Direct start and immediate stop" see page 235.

**Clock/timer**
The heater’s time is connected to the car’s clock.

**NOTE**
All timer programming will be cleared if the car’s clock is reset.

---

1 Setting the timer is only possible with the engine switched off.
2 An further press of OK activates the timer.
General information about the additional heater
In cold climate zones\(^1\) an additional heater may be required to obtain the correct operating temperature in the engine and to obtain sufficient heating in the passenger compartment.

Fuel-driven additional heater
A fuel-driven additional heater is fitted in cars with diesel engines.

The heater starts automatically when extra heat is required when the engine is running.

The heater is switched off automatically when the correct temperature is reached or when the engine is switched off.

**NOTE**
When the additional heater is active there may be smoke from the right-hand wheel housing which is perfectly normal.

Auto mode or shutdown
The additional heater’s automatic start sequence can be switched off if required.

---

\(^1\) An authorised Volvo dealer has information regarding the geographical areas concerned.

\(^2\) Analogue combined instrument panel.

\(^3\) Digital combined instrument panel.
Additional heater*

4. Select one of the alternatives ON or OFF using the thumbwheel and confirm with OK.

5. Exit the menu with RESET.

NOTE
The menu options are only visible in key position I - any adjustments must therefore be made before starting the engine.

Passenger compartment heater*
If the additional heater is supplemented with a timer function then it can be used as a fuel-driven passenger compartment heater, see page 233.

Electric additional heater
Cars with certain petrol engines have an electric additional heater integrated into the car’s climate control system.

In a semi-cold climate zone diesel-driven cars have an electric additional heater instead of a fuel-driven version.

The heater cannot be controlled manually but is instead activated automatically after the engine has been started in outside temperatures below 14 °C and is switched off after

---

4 An authorised Volvo dealer has information regarding the engines concerned.
1 An authorised Volvo dealer has information regarding the geographical areas concerned.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
General
Trip computer content and appearance varies depending on whether the combined instrument panel is the "Analog" or "Digital" type.

Checking and settings can be made immediately after the combined instrument panel is automatically illuminated in connection with unlocking. If none of the trip computer's controls are actuated within approx. 30 seconds after the driver's door has been opened then the instrument extinguishes, after which either key position II\(^1\) or engine starting is required in order to operate the trip computer.

**NOTE**
If a warning message appears when the trip computer is used then the message must first be acknowledged before the trip computer can be reactivated.

- Acknowledge the message by briefly pressing the indicator stalk OK button.

Group menus
The trip computer has two different group menus:
- Functions
- Heading in combined instrument panel

The trip computer’s **functions** or **headings** are each listed in an infinite loop.

Combined instrument panel "Analog"

Information display and controls.

1. **OK** - Opens the loop with the trip computer’s functions + Activates the selected option.
2. **Thumbwheel** - Opens the loop with the trip computer’s headings + Scrolls through the options.
3. **RESET** - Undoes, zeroes or backs out of a function after making a selection.

Functions
Proceed as follows to open and check/adjust functions:

\(^{1}\) For information on key positions - see page 82.
## Trip computer

1. To ensure that no control is in the middle of a sequence - "Reset" them first with 2 presses on **RESET**.
2. Press **OK** - the loop with all functions opens.
3. Browse through the functions with the **thumbwheel** and select/confirm with **OK**.
4. Finish by pressing **RESET** twice after completed checking/adjustment.

The different functions of the trip computer are listed in the following table:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Functions</th>
<th>Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Digital speed</strong></td>
<td>Shows the car's speed digitally in the centre of the combined instrument panel:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- km/h</td>
<td>• Open with <strong>OK</strong>, select with the <strong>thumbwheel</strong>, confirm with <strong>OK</strong> and back out with <strong>ENTER</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- mph</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- No display</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Parking heater</strong>*</td>
<td>For a description of programming the timer, see page 236.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Direct start</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Timer 1 - leads to the menu for selecting time.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Timer 2 - leads to the menu for selecting time.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Additional heater</strong>*</td>
<td>For more information, see page 237.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Auto On</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Off</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.*
### Functions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TC options</th>
<th>Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>- Distance to empty tank</td>
<td>Here you can select/activate the options that you want to be available as selectable headings in the trip computer. The symbols for the items already selected are WHITE with a &quot;tick&quot; - others are GREY and have no &quot;tick&quot;:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Fuel consumption</td>
<td>1. Open the function with OK, scroll through the symbols for the options with the thumbwheel and select/stop on the desired symbol.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Average speed</td>
<td>2. Confirm with OK - the symbol changes colour from GREY to WHITE and is marked with a &quot;tick&quot;.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trip meter T1 and total dist.</td>
<td>3. Continue to select the function symbols with the thumbwheel or finish with RESET.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trip meter T2 and total dist.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Service status

Shows the number of months and mileage to next service.

### Oil level

For more information, see page 360.

### Messages (##)

For more information, see page 210.

---

**A** Certain engines.

### Headings

One of the headings in the following table can be selected for constant display in the combined instrument panel. Proceed as follows to determine which:

1. To ensure that no control is in the middle of a sequence - "Reset" them first with 2 presses on RESET.
2. Turn the thumbwheel - selectable headings for the trip computer are shown in a loop.
3. Stop on desired heading.
### Trip computer

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Trip computer heading in combined instrument panel</th>
<th>Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Trip meter T1 and total dist.</td>
<td>• Long press on <strong>RESET</strong> resets trip meter T1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trip meter T2 and total dist.</td>
<td>• Long press on <strong>RESET</strong> resets trip meter T2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Distance to empty</td>
<td>For more information - see page 245, &quot;Distance to empty tank&quot;.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuel consumption</td>
<td>Current consumption.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Average speed</td>
<td>• Long press on <strong>RESET</strong> resets Average speed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No trip computer information.</td>
<td>This option shows a blank display - it also marks the beginning/end of the loop.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The combined instrument panel’s trip computer can be changed to another option at any time during the journey. Proceed as follows:

- Turn the **thumbwheel** - stop on the desired heading.

**Combined instrument panel "Digital"**

1. **OK** - Opens the loop with the trip computer’s functions + Activates the selected option.
2. **Thumbwheel** - Opens the loop with the trip computer’s headings + Scrolls through the options.
3. **RESET** - Undoes, zeroes or backs out of a function after making a selection.

**Functions**

Proceed as follows to open and check/adjust functions:

1. To ensure that no control is in the middle of a sequence - "Reset" them first with 2 presses on **RESET**.
2. Press **OK** - loop with all functions opens.
3. Browse through the functions with the **thumbwheel** and select/confirm with **OK**.
4. Finish by pressing **RESET** twice after completed checking/adjustment.
The different functions of the trip computer are listed in the following table:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Functions</th>
<th>Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Trip computer reset</strong></td>
<td>Note that this function does not reset both trip meters T1 and T2 - see the table in the section &quot;Headings&quot; page 244 or the heading &quot;Resetting with Digital&quot; page 245 for information on the process.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Average</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Average speed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Messages</strong></td>
<td>For more information, see page 211.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Themes</strong></td>
<td>Combined instrument panel appearance is selected here, see page 71.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Settings</strong>*</td>
<td>Select Auto On or Off.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>For more information, see page 237.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Contrast mode/Colour mode</strong></td>
<td>Adjusting the combined instrument panel's brightness and colour intensity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Parking heater</strong>*</td>
<td>For a description of programming the timer, see page 236.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Direct start</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Symbol Timer 1 - leads to the menu for selecting time.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Symbol Timer 2 - leads to the menu for selecting time.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Trip computer

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Functions</th>
<th>Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Service status</strong></td>
<td>Shows the number of months and mileage to next service.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Oil level</strong>&lt;sup&gt;A&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>For more information, see page 360.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>A</sup> Certain engines.

### Headings

Three trip computer headings can be displayed simultaneously - one in each "window" (see previous figure).

One of the heading combinations in the following table can be selected for constant display in the combined instrument panel. Proceed as follows to determine which:

1. To ensure that no control is in the middle of a sequence - "Reset" them first with 2 presses on **RESET**.
2. Turn the **thumbwheel** - selectable heading combinations are shown in a loop.
3. Stop on desired heading combination.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Heading combinations</th>
<th>Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Average</td>
<td>Trip meter T1 + Meter reading</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Instantaneous</td>
<td>Trip meter T2 + Meter reading</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Instantaneous</td>
<td>Meter reading</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No trip computer information.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The combined instrument panel's heading combination for the trip computer can be changed to another option at any time during the journey. Proceed as follows:

- Turn the **thumbwheel** - stop on the desired heading.
Supplementary information

Average fuel consumption is calculated from the last resetting.

Average
Average fuel consumption is calculated from the last resetting.

NOTE
There may be a slight error in the reading if a fuel-driven heater* has been used.

Average speed
The average speed is calculated for the driving distance driven since the last reset to zero.

Instantaneous
The information for current fuel consumption is updated continuously - approximately once per second. When the car is driven at low speed the consumption is shown per time unit - at a higher speed it is shown related to mileage.

Different units (km/miles) can be selected for the display - see the heading "Change unit" page 246.

Range - distance to empty tank
The trip computer shows the approximate distance that can be driven with the fuel quantity remaining in the tank.

No guaranteed range remains when the heading Distance to empty shows "---".

• In which case, refuel as soon as possible.

The calculation is based on the average fuel consumption over the last 30 km and the remaining driveable fuel quantity.

NOTE
There may be a slight error in the reading if the driving style has been changed.

An economic driving style generally results in a longer driving distance. For more information on how fuel consumption can be influenced, see page 10.

Digital speed display2
The speed is shown in the opposite unit (km/h/mph) in relation to the main instrument. If it is calibrated in mph then the trip computer shows the corresponding speed in km/h and vice versa.

Resetting with "Analog"

Trip meter and Average speed
With current trip computer heading - Trip meter T1, Trip meter T2 or Average speed - shown in the combined instrument panel:

• Give a long press on RESET - selected heading is zeroed.

Each heading must be zeroed individually.

Resetting with "Digital"

Trip meter
Turn with the thumbwheel to the heading combination containing the trip meter to be reset:

• Give a long press on RESET - selected trip meter is zeroed.

Average speed & Average consumption
1. Select function Trip computer reset and activate with OK.
2. Select one of the following options with the thumbwheel and activate with OK:
   - l/100 km
   - km/h
   - Reset both
3. Finish with RESET.

2 Only for combined instrument panel "Digital".

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
Trip computer

Change unit
To change unit (km/miles) for distance and speed - go to MY CAR ➔ Settings ➔ System options ➔ Distance and fuel units, see page 213.

NOTE
In addition to the trip computer, these units are also changed at the same time in Volvo’s GPS navigator RTI.

Trip statistics*
Information is stored about completed trips containing average fuel consumption and average speed, which can be viewed in the centre console’s screen as a bar chart.

Function
Trip statistics
Each bar symbolises 1 km or 10 km driven distance, depending on the scale selected - the bar at the far right shows the value for the current kilometre or 10 km.

Using the TUNE control, the scale for the bars can be changed between 1 km and 10 km - the cursor on the far right changes position between up and down in relation to the scale selected.

Operation
A setting can be made in the MY CAR menu system:

MY CAR ➔ My V70/XC70 ➔ Trip statistics:

- Start new trip - ENTER deletes all previous statistics, go back out from the menu with EXIT.
- Reset for every driving cycle - tick in the box with ENTER and go back out from the menu with EXIT.

With the "Reset for every driving cycle" option ticked all statistics are deleted automatically after driving is finished and the car has been stationary for 4 hours. Trip statistics start from zero the next time the engine is started.

If a new driving cycle is started before 4 hours have elapsed then the current period must first be deleted manually using the "Start new trip" option.

See also information on Eco guide on page 73.

NOTE
The figure is schematic - layout may vary depending on updated software and market.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
Active chassis - Four-C*
Active chassis, Four-C (Continuously Controlled Chassis Concept), regulates the characteristics of the shock absorbers so that the car’s driving characteristics can be adjusted. There are three settings: Comfort, Sport and Advanced.

Comfort
This setting means that the car is perceived as being more comfortable on rough and uneven road surfaces. Shock absorption is soft and the movement of the body is smooth and gentle.

Sport
This setting means that the car is perceived as being more sporty and is recommended for more active driving. Steering response is faster than in the Comfort mode. Shock absorption is harder and the body follows the road in order to reduce rolling during cornering.

Advanced
This setting is only recommended on very even and smooth road surfaces.

The shock absorbers are optimised for maximum roadholding and rolling in bends is further minimised.

Operation
Chassis settings.
Use the buttons in the centre console to change setting. The setting in use when the engine is switched off is activated next time the engine is started.

Speed related power steering*
Steering force increases with the speed of the car to give the driver enhanced sensitivity. The steering is firmer and more immediate on motorways. Steering is light and requires no extra effort when parking and at low speed.

The driver can choose between three different levels of steering force for road responsiveness or steering sensitivity. Go to the menu system MY CAR and locate Settings

Car settings ➔ Steering wheel force and select Low, Medium or High.
For a description of the menu system, see page 213. This menu cannot be accessed while the car is in motion.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
Comfort inside the passenger compartment

Storage spaces

1.  
2.  
3.  
4.  
5.  
6.  
7.  
8.  
9.
1 Storage compartment in door panel
2 Storage pocket* on front edge of front seat cushions
3 Ticket clip
4 Glovebox
5 Storage compartment
6 Jacket holder
7 Storage compartment, cup holder
8 Cup holder* in armrest, rear seat
9 Storage pocket

**WARNING**
Keep loose objects such as mobile phones, cameras, remote controls for accessories, etc. in the glove compartment or other compartments. Otherwise they may injure people in the car in the event of sudden braking or a collision.

**Jacket holder**
The jacket holder is only designed for light clothing.

---

**Tunnel console**

1 Storage compartment (e.g. for CDs) and USB*/AUX input under the armrest.
2 Includes cup holder for driver and passenger. (If ashtray and cigarette lighter are specified then there is a cigarette lighter in the 12 V socket for the front seat, see page 250, and a detachable ashtray in the cup holder.)

**Cigarette lighter and ashtray***
The ashtray in the tunnel console is detached by lifting the tray straight up.

Activate the lighter by pushing in the button. The button pops out when the lighter is hot. Pull out the lighter and light a cigarette on the heated coils.

---

**Glovebox**
The owner’s manual and maps can be kept here for example. There are also holders for pens on the inside of the lid. The glovebox can be locked using the key blade, see pages 48 and 58.

**Inlaid mats***
Volvo supplies specially manufactured inlay mats.

**WARNING**
Before setting off check that the inlaid mat in the driver area is firmly affixed and secured in the pins in order to avoid getting caught adjacent to and under the pedals.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
Comfort inside the passenger compartment

Vanity mirror

Vanity mirror with lighting.

The lamp for the vanity mirror, on the driver’s side* and passenger side respectively, is switched on automatically when the cover is raised.

12 V socket

For the socket to supply current, the remote control key must be in at least key position I, see page 81.

**WARNING**

Always leave the plug in the socket when the socket is not in use.

**NOTE**

Optional equipment and accessories - e.g. display screens, music players and mobile phones - which are connected to one of the passenger compartment’s 12V electrical sockets, could be activated by the climate control system, even when the remote control key has been removed or when the car is locked, for example, when the parking heater is activated at a preset time.

For this reason remove the plugs from the electrical sockets for optional equipment or accessories when not in use because the battery could be drained in the event of such an occurrence!

12 V socket in tunnel console, front seat.

The electrical socket can be used for various accessories designed for 12 V, e.g. TV screens, music players and mobile phones.
IMPORTANT
Max. socket is 10 A (120 W) if one socket is used at a time. If both sockets in the tunnel console are used simultaneously, 7.5 A (90 W) per socket is applicable. If the compressor for emergency puncture repair is connected to one of the two sockets, no other current consumer must be connected to the other one.

NOTE
The compressor for temporary emergency puncture repair has been tested and approved by Volvo. For information on the use of Volvo’s recommended temporary emergency puncture repair (TMK), see page 350.

Electrical socket in cargo area*
For more information, see page 325.
General information on infotainment ................................................................. 254
Radio .................................................................................................................. 266
Media player ...................................................................................................... 273
External audio source via AUX/USB* input ....................................................... 277
Media Bluetooth®* ........................................................................................... 280
Bluetooth® handsfree* .................................................................................... 283
Voice recognition* mobile phone ...................................................................... 292
TV* .................................................................................................................... 296
Remote control* ................................................................................................ 300
RSE - Rear Seat Entertainment system* ............................................................. 302

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
INFOTAINMENT SYSTEM
General information on infotainment

General

The infotainment system consists of radio, media player, TV* and the facility to communicate with mobile phone*. Information is presented on a 5 or 7-inch* screen in the upper section of the centre console. Functions can be controlled via buttons in the steering wheel, in the centre console under the screen or via a remote control*. A mobile phone can also be controlled with voice recognition in certain cases.

If the Infotainment System is active when the engine is switched off then it is automatically activated the next time the key is inserted into key position I or higher, and it continues with the same source (e.g. radio) as before the engine was switched off (the driver’s door must be closed on cars with Keyless systems*).

The infotainment system can be used for 15 minutes at a time without the remote control key being in the ignition switch by pressing the On/Off button.

When the car is being started the infotainment system is switched off temporarily and continues when the engine has started.

NOTE

Remove the remote control key from the ignition switch if the infotainment system is used when the engine is switched off. This is to avoid discharging the battery unnecessarily.

Dolby, Pro Logic

Made under license from Dolby Laboratories. Dolby, Pro Logic and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.

Audyssey MultEQ

Only applies to Premium Sound Multimedia.

The Audyssey MultEQ system has been used in the development and tuning of the sound to ensure a world-class sound experience.

Overview

1 AUX (only applies to Performance) - and USB (does not apply to Performance) -
06 Infotainment system

General information on infotainment

inputs for external audio sources (e.g. iPod®).

2 Steering wheel keypad (with* / without thumbwheel).

3 Centre console control panel.

4 Screen. The screen is available in two sizes: 5 and 7-inch. The manual shows a 7-inch screen.

5 Rear control panel with headphones socket*

6 A/V-AUX input*

Operating the system

1 Scroll/fast wind/search - short press scrolls between disc tracks, preset radio stations (does not apply to DAB) or chapter (only applies to DVD discs). A long press fast-winds disc tracks or searches for the next available radio station.

2 SOUND - press for access to audio settings (bass, treble, etc.). For more information, see page 259.

3 VOL - raise or lower the volume.

4 ON/OFF/MUTE - short press starts the system and long press (until the screen is off) switches off. Note that the whole of the Sensus system (including navigation * and phone functions*) starts/switches off at the same time. Briefly press to mute the sound (MUTE) or restore the sound if it had been switched off.

5 Disc insert and eject slot.

6 Main sources - press to select the main source (e.g. RADIO, MEDIA). Last active source is shown (e.g. FM1). If you are in RADIO or MEDIA and press the main source button, a source view is shown. If you are in TEL* or NAV* and press the main source button then a shortcut menu is shown with commonly used menu options.

7 Disc eject.

8 OK/MENU - press the thumbwheel in the steering wheel or the button in the centre

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
General information on infotainment

console to accept selections in menus. If you are in the normal view and press **OK/MENU** a menu is shown for the selected source (e.g. **RADIO** or **MEDIA**). Arrow to the right of the screen is shown when there are underlying menus.

9 **TUNE** - turn the thumbwheel in the steering wheel or the knob in the centre console to scroll between disc tracks/folders, radio and TV* stations, phone contacts* or navigate between the options in the screen.

10 **EXIT** - short press leads upwards in the menu system, interrupts current function, interrupts/rejects phone calls or erases entered characters. **Long press** leads to normal view, or if you are in normal view to the highest menu level (main source view), from where you can reach the same main source buttons located in the centre console (7).

11 **INFO** - If more information than can be shown in the screen is available, press the **INFO** button to see the remaining information.

12 Preset buttons, input of numbers and letters.

13 **FAV** – shortcut to a favourite setting. The button can be programmed for a commonly used function in FM etc. For more information, see page 259.

14 **MUTE** (cars without navigation) - press to deactivate the radio/media audio or restore the audio if it has been switched off.

15 **Voice recognition** (cars with navigation) - press to activate voice recognition (for Bluetooth®-connected mobile phone and navigation system*).
Menus

The example shows navigation to different functions when a disc is played back. (1) Main source button, (2) Normal view, (3) Shortcut/Source menu, (4) Quick menu, (5) Source menu.
General information on infotainment

Select main source by pressing a main source button (1) (RADIO, MEDIA, TEL). To navigate in the source’s menus, use the controls for TUNE, OK/MENU, EXIT or the main source button (1).

For Menu overview, see page 261.

**NOTE**
If the car is equipped with a steering wheel keypad with a thumbwheel*, these can be used instead of the controls in the centre console (TUNE, OK/MENU, EXIT).

Menus and views in the screen
Appearance depends on source, equipment in the car, settings, etc.

1. **Main source button** - press to change the main source or show the Shortcut/Source menu in the active source.

2. **Normal view** - normal mode for the source.

3. **Shortcut/Source menu** - shows commonly used menu options in the main sources e.g. TEL and MEDIA (accessed by pressing the active source’s main source button (1)).

4. **Quick menu** - fast mode when TUNE is turned, e.g. for changing disc tracks, radio station, etc.

5. **Source view** - for menu navigation (accessed by pressing OK/MENU).

**Rear control panel with headphones socket***
Headphones with an impedance of 16-32 ohm and sensitivity of 102 dB or higher are recommended for best sound reproduction.

**LIMITATIONS**

- The audio source (e.g. FM1, AM, Disc etc.) being played back through the speakers cannot be controlled from the rear control panel.

Activate/deactivate
The control panel is activated with MODE. Deactivation is possible via a long press on MODE or when the engine is switched off.

Scroll/search forward and backward
Pressing (2) scrolls between disc tracks/audio files or seeks the next available radio station.

**LIMITATIONS**

- In order that an audio source can be selected with MODE and listened to it is required that the audio source is available and connected in the car.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
**FAV - store a preset**

The **FAV** button can be used to store functions that are used frequently so that the function can be started simply by pressing **FAV**. You can select a favourite (e.g. Equalizer) for each function as follows:

In **RADIO** mode:
- AM
- FM1/FM2
- DAB1*/DAB2*

In **MEDIA** mode:
- DISC
- USB*
- iPod*

To store a function in the **FAV** button:

1. Select a main source (e.g. **RADIO**, **MEDIA**).
2. Select a wavelength or source (FM1, Disc, etc.).
3. Press and hold the **FAV** button until the "favourites menu" is shown.
4. Turn **TUNE** to select an option from the list and press **OK/MENU** to save.

> When the main source (e.g. **RADIO**, **MEDIA**) is active the stored function is available via a short press on **FAV**.

It is also possible to select and store a favourite for **MY CAR**, **CAM*** and **NAV***. Favourites can also be selected and stored under **MY CAR**. For more information on the menu system **MY CAR**, see page 213.

---

**General audio settings**

Press **SOUND** to access the audio settings menu (Bass, Treble, etc.). Scroll forward with **SOUND** or **OK/MENU** to your selection (e.g. Treble).

Adjust the setting by turning **TUNE** and save the setting with **OK/MENU**.

Continue pressing **SOUND** or **OK/MENU** to access other options:

- **Surround**¹ - Can be set to the On/Off position. When On is selected, the system selects the setting for optimal sound reproduction. Normally DPLII and **[X]*PL** then appear in the screen. If the recording is made with Dolby Digital technology then playback will take place with this setting, **[X] DIGITAL** then appears in the screen. When Off is selected, 3-channel stereo is available.
- **Bass** - Bass level.
- **Treble** - Treble level.
- **Fader** – Balance between the front and rear speakers.
- **Balance** – Balance between the left and right-hand speakers.
- **Subwoofer**¹ - Bass speaker level.

---

¹ Only Premium Sound Multimedia.
General information on infotainment

- DPL II centre level/3 channel centre level\(^1\) - Volume for centre speaker.
- DPL II surround level\(^{1,2}\) – Level for surround.

Advanced audio settings

Equalizer\(^3\)
The volume level can be adjusted separately for different wavelengths.

1. Press **OK/MENU** to access Audio settings and select Equalizer.
2. Select wavelength by turning **TUNE** and confirm with **OK/MENU**.
3. Adjust the audio settings by turning **TUNE** and confirm with **OK/MENU**. Continue in the same way with other wavelengths you want to change.
4. When you have finished with audio settings, press **EXIT** to confirm and return to normal view.

For general information on menu navigation, see page 257 and menu overview, see page 261.

Sound stage\(^1\)
The sound experience can be optimised for the driver’s seat, both front seats or the rear seat. If there are passengers in both the front and rear seats then the option recommended is; both front seats. The options can be selected under Audio settings ➤ Sound stage.

For general information on menu navigation, see page 257 and menu overview, see page 261.

Audio volume and automatic volume control
The audio system compensates for disrupting noises in the passenger compartment by increasing the volume in relation to the speed of the car. The compensation level can be set to low, medium, high or off. Select the level under Audio settings ➤ Volume compensation.

For general information on menu navigation, see page 257 and menu overview, see page 261.

External audio source audio volume
If an external audio source (e.g. an MP3 player or iPod\(^{®}\)) is connected to the AUX input then the audio source that is connected can have a different volume than the audio system's internal volume (e.g. radio). Correct this by adjusting the volume of the input:

1. Press the **MEDIA** button and turn **TUNE** to AUX and wait a few seconds or press **OK/MENU**.
2. Press **OK/MENU** and then turn **TUNE** to AUX input volume. Confirm with **OK/MENU**.
3. Turn **TUNE** to adjust the volume for the AUX input.

**NOTE**
If the external audio source's volume is too high or too low, the quality of the sound may deteriorate. The audio quality may also be impaired if the player is charged while the infotainment system is in AUX mode. In which case, avoid charging the player via the 12 V socket.

\(^1\) Only Premium Sound Multimedia.
\(^2\) Only when Surround is activated.
\(^3\) Not Performance.
**Optimum sound reproduction**
The audio system is pre-calibrated for optimum sound reproduction by means of digital signal processing.

This calibration takes into account loudspeakers, amplifiers, passenger compartment acoustics, listener position etc. for each combination of car model and audio system.

There is also a dynamic calibration that takes into account the position of the volume control, radio reception and vehicle speed.

The controls explained in these operating instructions, e.g. Bass, Treble and Equalizer, are only intended for the user to be able to adapt the sound reproduction according to personal taste.

**Menu overview**
The main sources RADIO, MEDIA and TEL contain the following menus. For information about menu navigation, see page 257.

### Menus RADIO

#### Main menu AM

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Show presets</th>
<th>p. 267</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>See footnote A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Scan | p.270 |

#### Main menu FM1/FM2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TP</th>
<th>p.268</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Show radio text</th>
<th>p.269</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Show presets</th>
<th>p.267</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>See footnote A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Audio settings</th>
<th>p.259</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>See footnote B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sound stage</th>
<th>p.260</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>See footnote C</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Equalizer</th>
<th>p.260</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>See footnote D</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Volume compensation</th>
<th>p.260</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

| Reset all audio settings | p.259 |

**Scan**

| p.270 |

**News settings**

| p.269 |

**Advanced settings**

| p.270 |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>REG</th>
<th>p.270</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Alternative frequency</th>
<th>p.269</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>EON</th>
<th>p.268</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Set TP favourite</th>
<th>p.268</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PTY settings</th>
<th>p.269</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reset all FM settings</th>
<th>p.270</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Audio settings</th>
<th>p.259</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>See footnote B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

A Only applies to High Performance Multimedia and Premium Sound Multimedia.

B The menu options for audio settings are the same for all audio sources.

C Only applies to Premium Sound Multimedia.

D Does not apply to Performance.
## General information on infotainment

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Main menu DAB1*/DAB2*</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ensemble learn</td>
<td>p.270</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PTY filtering</td>
<td>p.271</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turn off PTY filtering</td>
<td>p.271</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Show radio text</td>
<td>p.271</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Show presets</td>
<td>p.271</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scan</td>
<td>p.270</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Advanced settings</td>
<td>p.272</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAB linking</td>
<td>p.272</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAB band</td>
<td>p.272</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sub channels</td>
<td>p.272</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Show PTY text</td>
<td>p.272</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reset all DAB settings</td>
<td>p.272</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audio settings</td>
<td>p.272</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PTY filtering</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Advanced settings</td>
<td>p.272</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAB linking</td>
<td>p.272</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAB band</td>
<td>p.272</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sub channels</td>
<td>p.272</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Show PTY text</td>
<td>p.272</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reset all DAB settings</td>
<td>p.272</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audio settings</td>
<td>p.272</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PTY filtering</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Advanced settings</td>
<td>p.272</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAB linking</td>
<td>p.272</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAB band</td>
<td>p.272</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sub channels</td>
<td>p.272</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Show PTY text</td>
<td>p.272</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

### Menus MEDIA

#### Main menu CD Audio (Disc menu)

- **Random**
- **Scan**
- **Audio settings**
  - See footnote A

#### Main menu DVD Video (Disc menu)

- **DVD disc menu**
- **Play/Pause/Continue**
- **Stop**
- **Subtitles**
- **Audio tracks**
- **Advanced settings**

### Notes

- **A** Only applies to High Performance Multimedia and Premium Sound Multimedia.
- **B** For submenus, see "Main menu AM".

---

* Footnote A

**Only applies to High Performance Multimedia and Premium Sound Multimedia.**

**For submenus, see "Main menu AM".**
### General information on infotainment

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option/accessory</th>
<th>p.</th>
<th>Page Content</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Angle</td>
<td>263</td>
<td><em>Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DivX® VOD code</td>
<td>263</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Audio settings</strong></td>
<td>259</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>See footnote B</td>
<td>259</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Main menu iPod</strong></td>
<td>275</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Random</td>
<td>275</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scan</td>
<td>275</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audio settings</td>
<td>259</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>See footnote B</td>
<td>259</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Main menu USB</strong></td>
<td>278</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Play</td>
<td>278</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pause</td>
<td>278</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stop</td>
<td>278</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Main menu Media Bluetooth</strong></td>
<td>282</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Random</td>
<td>282</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Change device</td>
<td>281</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remove Bluetooth device</td>
<td>281</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scan</td>
<td>282</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bluetooth software version in car</strong></td>
<td>282</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audio settings</td>
<td>259</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>See footnote B</td>
<td>259</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Main menu AUX</strong></td>
<td>259</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AUX input volume</td>
<td>259</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audio settings</td>
<td>259</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>See footnote A</td>
<td>259</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Main menu TV</strong></td>
<td>297</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Select country</td>
<td>297</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reorganise presets</td>
<td>297</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Autostore</td>
<td>298</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**A** Does not apply to Performance.
**B** For submenus, see "Main menu AM".
## General information on infotainment

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Scan</th>
<th>p.298</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Audio settings</td>
<td>p.259</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>See footnote A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pop-up menu</strong> A video and TV*</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Press OK/MENU when a video file is being played back or TV* is being shown in order to access the pop-up menu.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Image settings</strong></td>
<td>p.276</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Source menu</strong></td>
<td>p.257</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>See footnote B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>DVD disc menu</strong></td>
<td>p.275</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>See footnote C</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>DVD disc TOP menu</strong> C</td>
<td>p.275</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A For submenus, see &quot;Main menu AM&quot;.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Menus TEL

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Main menu Bluetooth® handsfree</strong> A (Phone menu)</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>All calls</strong></td>
<td>p.286</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Missed calls</strong></td>
<td>p.286</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Answered calls</strong></td>
<td>p.286</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dialed calls</strong></td>
<td>p.286</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Call duration</strong></td>
<td>p.286</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Phone book</strong></td>
<td>p.287</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Search</strong></td>
<td>p.288</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>New contact</strong></td>
<td>p.289</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Speed dials</strong></td>
<td>p.290</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Receive vCard</strong></td>
<td>p.290</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Additional features

| **Memory status** | p.290 |
| **Clear phone book** | p.291 |
| **Change phone** | p.285 |
| **Remove Bluetooth device** | p.286 |
| **Phone settings** | | |
| **Discoverable** | p.284 |
| **Sounds and volume** | p.286 |
| **Download phone book** | p.287 |
| **Bluetooth software version in car** | p.291 |
| **Call options** | | |
| **Auto answer** | p.286 |
## General information on infotainment

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Voicemail number</th>
<th>p.286</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Disconnect phone</strong></td>
<td>p.285</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*A Does not apply to Performance.*
06 Infotainment system

Radio

General

Centre console, controls for radio functions.

1 RADIO button for selecting the wavelength (FM1, FM2, DAB1*, DAB2*).

2 Station presets (0-9)

3 Select the desired frequency/station or navigate in the radio menu by turning TUNE.

4 Confirm your selection or go to the radio menu by pressing OK/MENU.

5 Hold in the button for next/previous available station. Short press for preset.

NOTE

If the car is equipped with a steering wheel keypad* and/or remote control* then in many cases these can be used instead of the buttons in the centre console. For a description of the buttons in the centre console, see page 255. For a description of the remote control, see page 300.

Menus

The menus in RADIO are controlled from the centre console and the steering wheel keypad*. For general information on menu navigation, see page 257 and menu overview, see page 261.

Radio AM/FM

Tuning

NOTE

The reception is dependent both on how good the signal strength and signal quality are. The transmission may be disturbed by various factors such as tall buildings or the transmitter being far away. Coverage level can also vary depending on where in the country you are located.

Automatic tuning

1. Press RADIO, turn TUNE until the desired wavelength (e.g. FM1) is shown, press OK/MENU.

2. Hold in \( \leftarrow / \rightarrow \) in the centre console (or in the steering wheel keypad*). The radio searches for the next/previous available station.

Station list1

The radio automatically compiles a list of the strongest FM stations whose signals it is currently receiving. This enables you to find a station when you drive into an area where you do not know the radio stations and their frequencies.

To go to the list and select a station:

1. Select the desired wavelength (FM1 or FM2).

2. Turn TUNE one step in either direction. This displays the list of all stations in the area. The currently tuned station is indicated with enlarged text in the list.

3. Turn TUNE again in either direction to select a station from the list.

4. Confirm your selection with OK/MENU.

1 Does not apply to Performance.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
NOTE

• The list only shows the frequencies of stations that are currently being received, not a complete list of all radio frequencies on the selected wavelength.

• If the signal from the currently received station is weak, this may prevent the radio from updating the station list. If this occurs, press the #INFO button (while the station list is shown in the display screen) in order to change to manual tuning and set a frequency. If the station list is no longer shown, turn TUNE one step in either direction to show the list again, and press #INFO to switch.

The list disappears from the screen after a few seconds.

If the station list is no longer shown, turn TUNE one step in either direction and press the #INFO button in the centre console to change to manual tuning (or to return from manual tuning to the function for "Station list").

Manual tuning

The preset from the factory is that the radio shows the station list of the strongest stations in the area when you turn TUNE (see the section "Station list", page 266). When the station list is shown, press the #INFO button in the centre console to change to manual tuning. This allows you to select a frequency from the list of all available radio frequencies in the selected wavelength. In other words, if turn TUNE one step in a manual search the frequency is changed from e.g. 93.3 to 93.4 MHz, etc.

To manually select a station:

1. Press the RADIO button, turn TUNE until the desired wavelength (e.g. FM1) is shown, press OK/MENU.

2. Turn TUNE to select a frequency.

NOTE

The preset from the factory is that the radio automatically searches for the stations in the area where you are driving (see previous section "Station list" above).

But if you have changed over to manual tuning (by pressing the #INFO button in the centre console when the station list was shown), then the radio remains set in the function for manual tuning the next time you switch on the radio. To change back to the function for "Station list", turn TUNE one step (to show the complete list of stations) and press the button #INFO.

Note that if you press #INFO when the station list is not shown then INFO is activated. For more information on this function, see page 255.

Preset

10 presets can be stored per wavelength (e.g. FM1).

The stored presets are selected using the preset buttons.

1. Tune into a station (see "Tuning", page 266).

2. Hold in one of the preset buttons for a few seconds, the sound disappears dur-
Radio

In this time and returns when the station is stored. The preset button can now be used.

A list of pre-selected channels can be shown in the screen. The function is activated/deactivated in FM/AM mode under FM menu ➔ Show presets or AM menu ➔ Show presets.

RDS functions

RDS (Radio Data System) links FM transmitters into a network. An FM transmitter in such a network sends information that gives an RDS radio the following functions:

- Automatically switches to a stronger transmitter if reception in the area is poor.
- Searches for programme type, such as traffic information or news.
- Receives text information on current radio programme.

NOTE
Some radio stations do not use RDS or only some if its functionality.

If a required programme type is located the radio can switch stations interrupting the audio source currently in use. For example, if the CD player is in use, it is paused. The interrupting transmission is played at a preset volume, see page 270. The radio returns to the previous audio source and volume when the set programme type is no longer broadcast.

The programme functions alarm (ALARM!), traffic information (TP), news (NEWS), and programme types (PTY) interrupt one another in order of priority, where alarm has the highest priority and programme types has the lowest. For additional settings of programming interruptions (EON Distant and EON Local), see the section "Enhanced Other Networks – EON" below. Press EXIT to return to the interrupted audio source, press the OK/MENU to clear the message.

Alarm
This function is used to warn of serious accidents and catastrophes. The alarm cannot be temporarily interrupted or deactivated. The message ALARM! appears in the screen when an alarm message is transmitted.

Traffic information – TP
This function allows traffic information sent within a set station’s RDS network to break through. The TP symbol indicates that the function is activated. If the preset station can send traffic information then this is shown by TP glowing brightly in the screen, otherwise TP will be grey.

- Activate/deactivate in FM mode under FM menu ➔ TP.

Enhanced Other Networks – EON

This function is useful in urban areas with many regional radio stations. It allows the distance between the car and the radio station transmitter to determine when programme functions should interrupt the current audio source.

- Activate/deactivate in FM mode by selecting one of the options under FM menu ➔ Advanced settings ➔ EON:
  - Local – interrupts only if the radio station transmitter is close.
  - Distant – interrupts if the station transmitter is far away, even if there is a lot of static.

TP from selected station/all stations

The radio can only interrupt for traffic information from the selected station or all stations within the RDS network.

2 Only applies to High Performance Multimedia and Premium Sound Multimedia.
3 Factory settings.
Go in FM mode to FM menu ➔ Advanced settings ➔ Set TP favourite to change.

**News**
This function allows news broadcasts sent within a set station's RDS network to break through. The NEWS symbol indicates that the function is active.


**News from selected station/all stations**
The radio can only interrupt for news from the selected station or all stations in the RDS network.

- Go in FM mode to FM menu ➔ News settings ➔ Set news favourite to change.

**Programme types – PTY**
The PTY function can be used to select one or more programme types, such as pop music and serious classic. The PTY symbol indicates that the function is active. This function allows programme types broadcast within a set station's RDS network to break through.

1. Activate in FM mode by first selecting the programme types under FM menu ➔ Advanced settings ➔ PTY settings ➔ Select PTY.
2. Then the PTY function must be activated under FM menu ➔ Advanced settings ➔ PTY settings ➔ Receive traffic bulletins from other networks.

An indicator is shown in the screen when PTY is activated.

Deactivation of the PTY function is performed in FM mode under FM menu ➔ Advanced settings ➔ PTY settings ➔ Receive traffic bulletins from other networks. Selected programme types (PTY) are not reset.

Resetting and removing PTY are performed under FM menu ➔ Advanced settings ➔ PTY settings ➔ Select PTY ➔ Clear all.

**PTY search**
This function searches the entire wavelength for the selected programme type.

1. In FM mode select one or more PTY under FM menu ➔ Advanced settings ➔ PTY settings ➔ Select PTY.
2. Go to FM menu ➔ Advanced settings ➔ PTY settings ➔ Seek PTY.

To finish searching, press EXIT.

- To continue searching for another broadcast of the selected programme types, press on ◄ or ►.

**Display of programme type**
The programme type of the current station can be shown in the screen.

- Activate/deactivate in FM mode under FM menu ➔ Advanced settings ➔ PTY settings ➔ Show PTY text.

**Radio text**
Some RDS stations transmit information on programme content, artists, etc. This information can be shown in the screen.

- Activate/deactivate in FM mode under FM menu ➔ Advanced settings ➔ Show radio text.

**Automatic frequency update – AF**
The function selects the strongest transmitter for the set station. In order to find a strong transmitter the function may, in exceptional cases, need to search the entire FM wavelength.
Infotainment system

Radio

- Activate/deactivate in FM mode under FM menu ➔ Advanced settings ➔ Advanced settings ➔ Alternative frequency.

Regional radio programmes – REG
This function causes the radio to continue with a regional transmitter even if its signal strength is low. The symbol REG shows that the function is active.
- Activate/deactivate in FM mode under FM menu ➔ Advanced settings ➔ REG.

Resetting RDS functions
All radio settings can be reset to the original factory settings.
- The reset is carried out in FM mode under FM menu ➔ Advanced settings ➔ Reset all FM settings.

Volume control, programme types
The interrupting programme types, e.g. NEWS or TP, are heard at the volume selected for each respective programme type. If the volume level is adjusted during the programme interruption, the new level is saved until the next programme interruption.

Scan wavelength
The function automatically searches for available channels and takes into account any programme type filtering. When a station is found, it is played for approx. 10 seconds before scanning is resumed. When a station is playing back it can be saved as a preset in the usual way, see the section Preset, page 267.
- To start scanning go in FM/AM mode to FM menu ➔ Scan or AM menu ➔ Scan.

NOTE
Scanning stops if a station is saved.

Radio system - DAB*

General
DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) is a digital broadcasting system for radio. This system supports DAB, DAB+ and DMB.

NOTE
Coverage for DAB is not available in all locations. If there is no coverage then the message No reception is shown in the display screen.

Service and Ensemble
- Service - Channel, radio channel (only audio services are supported by the system).
- Ensemble - A collection of radio channels on the same frequency.

Storing channel groups (Ensemble learn)
When the vehicle is moved to a new broadcasting area, programming of existing channel groups in the area may be necessary.

Programming of channel groups creates an updated list of all available channel groups. The list is not updated automatically.

Programming is carried out in the menu system in DAB mode under DAB menu ➔ Ensemble learn. Programming can also take place as follows:

1. Turn TUNE one step in either direction.
   > Ensemble learn is shown in the list of available channel groups.

2. Press OK/MENU.
   > New programming is started.

Programming can be cancelled with EXIT.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
Navigation in channel group list
(Ensemble)
To navigate in and access the channel group list turn TUNE. The name of the Ensemble is shown in the upper part of the screen. When switching to the new Ensemble the name changes to the new one.

- **Service** - Shows channels irrespective of the channel group to which they are allocated. The list can also be filtered using the selection of programme type (PTY filtering), see below.

**Scanning**
The function automatically searches the current wavelength for strong stations. When a station is found, it is played for approx. 10 seconds before scanning is resumed. When a station is playing back it is saved as a preset in the usual way. For more information on presets, see "Preset" below.

- Go in DAB mode to DAB menu ➔ Scan to start scanning.

**NOTE**
Scanning stops if a station is saved.

Scanning can also be selected in DAB-PTY mode. In which case only channels of the pre-selected programme type are played.

**Programme type (PTY)**
Various types of radio programmes can be selected using the programme type function. There are a number of different programme types which also include different programme categories. After selecting a programme type, navigation only takes place within the channels that are broadcasting that type.

Programme type is selected in DAB mode under DAB menu ➔ PTY filtering. Exit this mode as follows:

- Press EXIT.
  > An indicator is shown in the screen when PTY is activated.

In certain cases DAB radio will exit PTY mode when DAB to DAB linking (see below) is implemented.

**Preset**
10 station presets can be stored per wavelength. DAB has 2 memories for presets: DAB1 and DAB2. Storage of presets is made by means of a long press on the desired preset button, for more information see page 267. The stored presets are selected using the preset buttons.

A preset contains one channel but no sub-channels. If a subchannel is being played and a preset is saved then only the main channel is registered. This is because subchannels are temporary. At the next attempt to retrieve the preset, the channel which contained the subchannel will be played. The preset is not dependent on the channel list.

A list of pre-selected channels can be shown in the screen. The function is activated/deactivated in DAB mode under DAB menu ➔ Show presets.

**NOTE**
The audio system’s DAB system does not support all functions available in the DAB standard.

**Radio text**
Some radio stations transmit information on programme content, artists, etc. This information is shown in the screen.

The function is deactivated/activated in DAB mode under DAB menu ➔ Show radio text.

---

5 Only applies to High Performance Multimedia and Premium Sound Multimedia.
Radio

**NOTE**

Only one of the functions "Show radio text" and "Show presets" can be activated at a time. If one of them is activated when the other is already activated, then the previously activated function is deactivated automatically. Both functions can be deactivated.

**Advanced settings**

**DAB to DAB link**

DAB to DAB linking means that the DAB radio can go from one channel with poor or no reception to the same channel in another channel group with better reception. There may be a certain delay when changing channel group. There may be a period of silence between the current channel no longer being available to the new channel becoming available.

The function can be activated/deactivated in DAB mode under DAB menu ➔ Advanced settings ➔ DAB linking.

**Wavelength**

DAB can be transmitted on two wavelengths:

- Band III - covers most areas.
- LBand - available only in a few areas.

By selecting for example Band III on its own, channel programming takes place more quickly than if both Band III and LBand have been selected. It is not certain that all channel groups will be found. Wavelength selection does not affect the stored memories.

Wavelengths can be deactivated/activated in DAB mode under DAB menu ➔ Advanced settings ➔ DAB band.

**Subchannel**

Secondary components are usually named subchannels. These are temporary and can contain e.g. translations of the main programme into other languages.

If one or more subchannels are broadcast then the symbol is shown to the left of the channel name in the screen. A subchannel is indicated by the - symbol appearing to the left of the channel name in the screen.

Press ➔ to access the subchannels.

Subchannels can only be accessed on the selected main channel and not on any other channel without selecting it.

Display of subchannels can be deactivated/activated in DAB mode under DAB menu ➔ Advanced settings ➔ Sub channels.

**Programme type text**

Some radio stations broadcast information about programme type and programme category, for information on Programme type (PTY), see page 271. This information is shown in the screen.

The function is activated/deactivated in DAB mode under DAB menu ➔ Advanced settings ➔ Show PTY text.

**Resetting the DAB settings**

All DAB settings can be reset to the original factory settings.

- The reset is carried out in DAB mode under DAB menu ➔ Advanced settings ➔ Reset all DAB settings.

---

6 Not all areas/countries use both wavelengths.
General
The media player can playback audio and video from CD/DVD\(^*\) discs and externally connected audio sources via the AUX/USB\(^*\) input or wirelessly stream audio files from external devices using Bluetooth\(^\circledR\). Certain media players can show TV\(^*\) and have the option to communicate with a mobile phone (see page 283)\(^*\) via Bluetooth\(^\circledR\).

CD/DVD\(^1\) functions

![Centre console control panel]

1. Disc insert and eject slot
2. MEDIA button, activates last active media source. If you are already in a media source and press the MEDIA button then a shortcut menu is shown for commonly used menu options.
3. Disc eject
4. Input of numbers and letters.
5. Select the disc tracks/folders, or navigate through menu options by turning TUNE.
6. Confirm your selection or go to the menu for the selected media source by pressing OK/MENU.
7. Fast forward/reverse and change disc track or chapter\(^2\).

The media player supports and can play the following main types of discs and files:
- Pre-recorded CD discs (CD Audio).
- Burned CD discs with audio and/or video files\(^1\).
- Pre-recorded DVD video discs\(^1\).
- Burned DVD discs\(^1\) with audio and/or video files.

For more information about the supported formats, see page 276.

NOTE
If the car is equipped with a steering wheel keypad\(^*\) and/or remote control\(^*\) then in many cases these can be used instead of the buttons in the centre console. For a description of the buttons in the steering wheel, see page 255. For a description of the remote control, see page 300.

Menus
The menus in MEDIA are controlled from the centre console and the steering wheel keypad\(^*\). For general information on menu navigation, see page 257 and menu overview, see page 261.

Starting playback of a disc
Press the MEDIA button, turn TUNE until Disc is shown, press OK/MENU. If there is a disc in the media player then the disc starts playing back automatically, otherwise Insert disc is shown in the TV screen. Then insert a disc, with text side up. The disc starts to play back automatically.

If a disc with audio/video files is inserted into the player then the disc’s folder structure needs to be loaded. Depending on the quality of the disc and the quantity of information.

---
\(^1\) Only applies to High Performance Multimedia and Premium Sound Multimedia.
\(^2\) Only applies to DVD discs.
there may be a certain delay before playback starts.

**Disc eject**
A disc remains in the ejected position for about 12 seconds, after which it is inserted back into the player for safety reasons.

**Pause**
When the volume is reduced entirely or MUTE is pressed, the media player is paused. When the volume is increased or MUTE is pressed again, the media player starts. It is also possible to pause via the menu system, press OK/MENU, select Play/Pause.

**Playback and navigation**

**CD audio discs**
Turn TUNE to access the disc’s playlist and navigate in the list. Use OK/MENU to confirm the selection of the disc track and start playback. Press EXIT to cancel and exit the playlist. A long press on EXIT leads to the playlist’s root level.

Disc tracks can also be changed by pressing on / on the centre console or the steering wheel keypad*.

**Burned discs audio/video files**

Turn TUNE to access the disc’s playlist/folder structure and navigate in the list/structure. Use OK/MENU to confirm either selection of subfolder or start of playback of the selected audio/video file. Press EXIT to either stop and exit the playlist or go up (back) in the folder structure. A long press on EXIT leads to the playlist’s root level.

Audio/video files can also be changed by pressing / on the centre console or the steering wheel keypad*.

Audio files have the symbol , video files have the symbol and folders have the symbol .

When playback of a file is complete the playback of the other files (of the same type) in that particular folder continues. Change of folder takes place automatically when all the files in the current folder have been played back. The system automatically detects and changes setting when a disc containing only audio files or only video files is loaded into the media player and then plays back these files. However, the system does not change setting if a disc containing a mixture of audio and video files is loaded into the media player, but instead the player continues to play back the previous file type.

**NOTE**
A video film is only shown when the car is stationary. When the car is moving at a speed of over about 8 km/h no picture is shown and No visual media available while driving appears on the display screen, although the audio is heard during this time. The picture is shown again as soon as the car’s speed falls below about 6 km/h.

**NOTE**
Some audio files that are copy-protected by record companies or privately copied audio files cannot be loaded by the player.

**DVD video discs**

For playback of DVD video discs, see page 275.

**Fast forward/reverse**

Hold in the buttons / to fast forward/rewind. Audio files are fast forwarded/rewound at one speed, while video files are

---

3 Does not apply to CD Audio

1 Only applies to High Performance Multimedia and Premium Sound Multimedia.

4 If Repeat folder is activated then this does not take place.
fast forwarded/rewound at several speeds. Repeatedly press the buttons 🔄 / 🔄 to increase the fast forward/rewind speed for video files. Release the button to return to viewing at normal speed.

**Scan**
This function plays the first ten seconds of each disc track/audio file. To scan:
1. Press **OK/MENU**
2. Turn **TUNE** to **Scan**
   - The first 10 seconds of each disc track or audio file are played.
3. Cancel the scan with **EXIT**, the disc track or audio file being played back will continue playing.

**Random**
This function plays the tracks in random order. To listen to the tracks in random order:
1. Press **OK/MENU**
2. Turn **TUNE** to **Random**
3. Press **OK/MENU** to activate/deactivate the function.

Disc tracks/audio files can be changed by pressing 🔄 / 🔄 on the centre console or the steering wheel keypad*. 

**Repeat folder**
This function makes it possible to play files in a folder over and over again. When the last file has been played out, playback of the first file starts again.
1. Press **OK/MENU**
2. Turn **TUNE** to **Repeat folder**
3. Press **OK/MENU** to activate/deactivate the function.

**Playback of DVD video discs**

**Playback**
When playing back a DVD video disc a disc menu may appear on the display screen. The disc menu gives access to additional functions and settings, such as selecting subtitles, language and scene selection.

**NOTE**
A video film is only shown when the car is stationary. When the car is moving at a speed of over about 8 km/h no picture is shown and **No visual media available while driving** appears on the display screen, although the audio is heard during this time. The picture is shown again as soon as the car’s speed falls below about 6 km/h.

Navigation in the DVD video disc’s menu

Navigation in the DVD video disc’s menu is performed using the number keys in the centre console as illustrated above.

---

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

---

5 Does not apply to DVD video discs.

6 Only applies to audio/video files on burned discs or USB.

1 Only applies to High Performance Multimedia and Premium Sound Multimedia.
06 Infotainment system

Media player

Changing chapter or title
Turn TUNE to access the list of chapters and navigate through them (if the film is being played back then it is paused). Press OK/MENU to select the chapter, this also leads back to the original position (if the film was being played back then it is restarted). Press EXIT to access the title list.

Titles are selected in the title list by turning TUNE and the selection is confirmed with OK/MENU, this also leads back to the chapter list. Press OK/MENU to activate the selection and return to the start position. Use EXIT to cancel the selection and this leads back to the original position (without any selection being made).

The chapter can also be changed by pressing on ◀️ / ▶️ on the centre console or the steering wheel keypad*.

Advanced settings

Angle
If the DVD video disc supports it, the function can be used to choose from which camera position a particular scene should be shown. Go in disc mode to Disc menu ➔ Advanced settings ➔ Angle.

DivX® Video On Demand
The media player can be registered in order to play DivX VOD type files from burned discs or USB. The code for registration can be found in the menu system MY CAR Settings ➔ Information ➔ DivX® VOD code. For general information on menus, see under MY CAR, see page 213.

For more information visit www.divx.com/vod.

Picture settings
You can adjust the settings (when the car is stationary) for brightness and contrast.

1. Press OK/MENU and select Image settings, confirm with OK/MENU.
2. Turn TUNE to the adjustment option and confirm with OK/MENU.
3. Adjust the setting by turning TUNE and confirm with OK/MENU.

To return to the settings list, press the OK/MENU or EXIT.

The picture settings can be reset to factory settings with the Reset option.

Compatible file formats
The media player can play back a variety of file types and is compatible with the formats in the following table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Audio format</th>
<th>CD audio, mp3, wma</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Audio format</td>
<td>CD audio, mp3, wma, aac, m4a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Video format</td>
<td>CD video, DVD video, divx, avi, asf</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NOTE
Dual format, double-sided discs (DVD Plus, CD-DVD format) are thicker than regular CD discs and therefore playback cannot be guaranteed and malfunction may arise.

If a CD contains a mixture of MP3 and CDDA tracks, all MP3s will be ignored.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Audio format</th>
<th>CD audio, mp3, wma</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Audio format</td>
<td>CD audio, mp3, wma, aac, m4a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Video format</td>
<td>CD video, DVD video, divx, avi, asf</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A Applies to Performance.
B Does not apply to Performance.
C Only applies to High Performance Multimedia and Premium Sound Multimedia.

7 Applies to High Performance Multimedia and Premium Sound Multimedia.
External audio source via AUX/USB* input

General

Connection points for external audio sources.

An external audio source, e.g. an iPod® or MP3 player, can be connected to the audio system via any of the connections in the centre console. An audio source connected to the USB input can then be handled with the car’s audio controls. A device connected via the AUX input cannot be controlled via the car.

There is a recess in the right-hand rear edge of the tunnel console where cables can be routed so that the hatch can be closed without cables being pinched.

NOTE

If the car is equipped with a steering wheel keypad* and/or remote control* then in many cases these can be used instead of the buttons in the centre console. For a description of the buttons in the steering wheel, see page 255. For a description of the remote control, see page 300.

An iPod® or MP3 player with rechargeable batteries is recharged (when the ignition is on or the engine is running) if the device is plugged into the USB connection.

To connect the audio source:

1. Press MEDIA, turn TUNE to the desired audio source USB, iPod or AUX, press OK/MENU.
   > If USB is selected then Connect USB is shown in the TV screen.

2. Connect your audio source to one of the connections in the centre console’s storage compartment (see previous illustration).

   The text Reading USB is shown in the TV screen when the system is loading the storage media’s file structure. Depending on the file structure and number of files there may be some delay before loading is finished.

NOTE

The system supports most iPod® models produced in 2005 or later.

NOTE

To prevent damage to the USB connection, this is shut off if the USB connection is short-circuited or if a connected USB unit is taking too much power (this may happen if the unit connected does not meet the USB standard). The USB connection is reactivated automatically the next time the ignition is turned on, unless the fault persists.

Menus

The menus in MEDIA are controlled from the centre console and the steering wheel keypad*. For general information on menu navigation, see page 257 and menu overview, see page 261.

---

1 Only applies to the media source connected via the USB connection.
External audio source via AUX/USB* input

**Playback and navigation**

Turn **TUNE** to access the playlist/folder structure and navigate in the list/structure. Use **OK/MENU** to either confirm selection of subfolder or start of playback of the selected audio/video file. Press **EXIT** to either stop and exit the playlist or go up (back) in the folder structure. A long press on **EXIT** leads to the playlist’s root level.

Audio/video files can also be changed by pressing / on the centre console or the steering wheel keypad*.

Audio files have the symbol ♫, video files have the symbol 🎥 and folders have the symbol 📁.

When playback of a file is complete the playback of the other files (of the same type) in that particular folder continues. Change of folder takes place automatically when all the files in the current folder have been played back. The system automatically detects and changes setting when a device containing only audio files or only video files is connected to the USB port and then it plays back these files. However, the system does not change setting if a device containing a mixture of audio and video files is connected to the USB port, but instead the player continues to play back the previous file type.

**Fast forward/reverse**

See page 274.

**Scan**

See page 275.

**Random**

See page 275.

**Search function**

The keypad on the control panel in the centre console can be used to find a filename in the current folder.

The search function is accessed either by turning **TUNE** (to access the folder structure) or by pressing one of the letter keys. As a letter or character in a search string is entered you get closer to your search target.

Start playback of a file by pressing **OK/MENU**.

**Repeat folder**

See page 275.

**Pause**

When the volume is reduced entirely or MUTE is pressed, the media player is paused. When the volume is increased or MUTE is pressed again, the media player starts. It is also possible to pause via the menu system*, press **OK/MENU**, select **Play/Pause**.

**Audio sources**

**USB memory**

To facilitate the use of a USB memory stick, only store music files on it. It takes a lot longer for the system to load storage media that contains anything other than compatible music files.

---

* Only applies to USB and iPod®.
3 Applies to High Performance Multimedia and Premium Sound Multimedia.
4 If Repeat folder is activated then this does not take place.
5 Only applies to USB.
6 Does not apply to iPod®.

---

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
06 Infotainment system

External audio source via AUX/USB* input

NOTE
The system supports mobile media compliant with USB 2.0 and the FAT32 file system and can handle 1000 folders with a maximum of 254 subfolders/files in every folder. The top level, which can handle up to 1000 subfolders/files, is an exception to this.

NOTE
When using a longer model USB memory stick the use of a USB adapter cable is recommended. This is to avoid mechanical wear to the USB input and the connected USB memory stick.

iPod®
An iPod® is charged and supplied with power by the USB connection* via the player’s connection cable.

NOTE
The system only supports the playback of audio files from iPod®.

NOTE
When an iPod® is used as audio source, the car’s infotainment system has a menu structure that is similar to the iPod® player’s own menu structure.

USB hub
It is possible to connect a USB hub to the USB connection and thereby connect multiple USB devices simultaneously. Selection of USB device is made in USB mode under USB menu ➔ Select USB device.

MP3 player
Many MP3 players have their own file systems that are not supported by the audio system. For use in the system, an MP3 player must be set in USB Removable device/Mass Storage Device mode.

Compatible file formats via the USB connection
Audio and video files in the following table are supported by the system for playback via the USB connection.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Audio format</th>
<th>mp3, wma, aac, m4a</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Video format</td>
<td>divx, avi, asf</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

^ Only applies to High Performance Multimedia and Premium Sound Multimedia.
General
The car’s media player is equipped with Bluetooth and can wirelessly play streaming audio files from external devices with Bluetooth, such as mobile phones and PDAs. Navigation and control of the sound can be carried out via the centre console buttons or via the steering wheel keypad*. In some external devices it is also possible to change tracks from the device.

To play back the audio the car’s media player must first be set in Bluetooth mode.

When a mobile phone is connected to the car, it is also possible to remotely control a selection of the mobile phone’s functions, see page 283. Switch between the main sources TEL and MEDIA to operate each one’s functions.

NOTE
The Bluetooth media player must support the Audio/Video Remote Control Profile (AVRCP) and Advanced Audio Distribution Profile (A2DP). The player should use AVRCP version 1.3, A2DP 1.2. Otherwise some functions may not work.

Not all mobile phones and external media players available in the market are fully compatible with the Bluetooth function in the car’s media player. Volvo recommends that you contact an authorised Volvo dealer or visit www.volvocars.com for information on compatible phones and external media players.

NOTE
The car’s media player can only play the audio files via the Bluetooth function.

Menus
The menus in MEDIA are controlled from the centre console and the steering wheel keypad*. For general information on menu navigation, see page 257 and menu overview, see page 261.

Overview
1 VOL – volume
2 MEDIA button. Last active source (e.g. iPod®) is activated automatically. If a source is activated and you press MEDIA then a shortcut menu is shown with commonly used menu options.
3 Navigate in the menu by turning TUNE.
4 Confirm your selection or go to the menu by pressing OK/MENU.

1 Applies to High Performance, High Performance Multimedia and Premium Sound Multimedia.
**Infotainment system**

**Media Bluetooth**

EXIT - leads up in the menu system, stops the function in progress.

Short presses are used to scroll between audio files. Long presses are used to fast forward and rewind audio files.

NOTE

If the car is equipped with a steering wheel keypad* and/or remote control* then in many cases these can be used instead of the buttons in the centre console. For a description of the buttons in the steering wheel, see page 255. For a description of the remote control, see page 300.

Getting started

Connect an external Bluetooth® device

A maximum of ten external devices can be registered. The connection is made in the same way as for the phone, see Connect an external Bluetooth® device, page 284.

Automatic connection

When the Bluetooth® function is active and the last external device connected is in range it is connected automatically. When the infotainment system searches for the last device connected its name is shown in the TV screen. To connect to another device, press EXIT.

Change to another external device

It is possible to change a connected device with another device if there are several devices in the car. However, the device must first have been paired, see "Connect an external Bluetooth® device" above. To change to another device:

1. Press MEDIA, turn TUNE until Bluetooth is shown, press OK/MENU.
2. Check that the external device is searchable/visible via Bluetooth®, see the manual for the external device.
3. Press OK/MENU.
4. Turn TUNE to Change device, and confirm with OK/MENU.
   > After a while, the external device’s name is shown in the TV screen. If several external devices have been paired then these are also shown.
5. Select the device to be connected by turning TUNE and confirm with OK/MENU.
   > Connection of the external device takes place.

Change audio file by pressing / on the centre console or the steering wheel keypad*.

Disconnecting the device

Automatic disconnection takes place if the external device moves out of the infotainment system's range. For more information on connection, see page 281.

Remove the connected device

1. Press Bluetooth mode on OK/MENU.
2. Turn TUNE to Remove Bluetooth device and confirm with OK/MENU.
3. Select the device to be removed by turning TUNE, and confirm with OK/MENU.
   > A prompt asking whether or not you want to remove the connection is shown in the TV screen.
4. Press OK/MENU to confirm.
EXIT cancels.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
Random
This function plays back the audio files on the external device in random order. Activate/deactivate the random function in Bluetooth mode under Bluetooth menu  Random.

Change audio file by pressing ⇋ / ➤ on the centre console or the steering wheel keypad*.

Scanning of audio files in external device
This function plays back the first ten seconds of each audio file. Activate/deactivate the function in Bluetooth mode under Bluetooth menu  Scan.

Cancel scanning with EXIT.

Version information Bluetooth®
The car’s current Bluetooth® version can be seen in Bluetooth mode under Bluetooth menu  Bluetooth software version in car.

2 Not supported by all mobile phones.
General
A mobile phone equipped with Bluetooth® can be connected wirelessly to the infotainment system\(^1\). The infotainment system then works handsfree, with the option to control a range of the mobile phone’s functions remotely. The microphone used is located by the driver’s sun visor (2). The mobile phone can be operated by its own keys irrespective of whether or not it is connected.

\[\text{NOTE}\]
Only a selection of mobile phones are fully compatible with the handsfree function. Volvo recommends that you seek assistance from an authorised Volvo dealer or visit www.volvocars.com for information on compatible phones.

When a mobile phone is connected to the car, it is also possible to stream audio files from the phone at the same time, see page 280. Switch between the main sources TEL and MEDIA to operate each one’s functions.

Menus
The menus in TEL are controlled from the centre console and the steering wheel keypad*. For general information on menu navigation, see page 257 and menu overview, see page 261.

Overview
System overview
1 Mobile phone
2 Microphone
3 Steering wheel keypad
4 Centre console control panel

Phone functions, controls overview
1 Number and letter buttons
2 TEL button activates/searches last connected phone. If a phone is already connected, and TEL is pressed, a shortcut menu is shown with commonly used menu options for the phone.
3 TUNE - Turn in normal view to the right to access the phone book, and to the left for the call register for all calls; also used for navigation among the options in the screen.

\(^1\) Applies to High Performance, High Performance Multimedia and Premium Sound Multimedia.
**06 Infotainment system**

**Bluetooth® handsfree**

4. Accept incoming calls, confirm your selection or go to the Phone menu by pressing **OK/MENU**.

5. **EXIT** - Cancels/rejects phone calls, deletes input characters, leads up in the menu system and cancels the current function.

**NOTE**

If the car is equipped with a steering wheel keypad* and/or remote control* then in many cases these can be used instead of the buttons in the centre console. For a description of the buttons in the steering wheel, see page 255. For a description of the remote control, see page 300.

**Remember**

**Activate**

A short press on **TEL** activates/searches last connected phone. If a phone is already connected, and **TEL** is pressed, a shortcut menu is shown with commonly used menu options for the phone. The symbol indicates that a phone is connected.

**Connect an external Bluetooth® device**

A maximum of ten external devices can be registered. Registration is performed once per device. After registration the device no longer needs to be activated as visible/searchable.

**NOTE**

If the phone’s operating system is updated then it is possible that the registration of the phone is interrupted. In which case, disconnect the phone, see page 286 and then reconnect it, see page 284.

It is possible to have two Bluetooth® devices connected simultaneously. One phone and one media device, which it is possible to switch between, see page 285 or see page 281. It is also possible to use the phone while streaming audio files from a connected device.

Connecting an external device takes place in different ways depending on whether or not the device has been connected previously. The connection alternatives below assume that this is the first time the device is being connected and that no other device is connected.

There are two possible ways of connecting devices, either search for the external device from the car, or search for the car from the external device. If one option does not work then try with the other.

**Example of normal view for the phone.**

If you are not already in the normal view, press **TEL** in the centre console.

**Alternative 1** - search for the external device via the car’s menu system

1. Make the external device searchable/visible via Bluetooth®, see the external device’s manual or www.volvocars.com.

2. Press **OK/MENU** and follow the instructions in the car’s screen.

> The external device is now connected and can be controlled from the car.

Connection failed, press **EXIT** twice and connect in accordance with Alternative 2.
Alternative 2 - Search for car with the external device's Bluetooth® function.

1. Make the car searchable/visible via Bluetooth®. Turn TUNE to Phone settings, confirm with OK/MENU, select Discoverable and confirm with OK/MENU.
2. Select My Volvo Car on the external device's screen and follow the instructions.
3. Enter an optional PIN code into the external device, then select the option to connect.
4. Press OK/MENU and then enter the same PIN code via the car's keypad in the centre console.

When the external device is connected, the external device's Bluetooth® name is shown in the car's screen and the device can be controlled from the car.

Automatic connection
When the handsfree function is active and the last mobile phone connected is in range it is connected automatically. If the last connected mobile phone is not available then the system will try to connect a mobile phone that was paired earlier. When the audio system searches for the last phone connected its name is shown in the screen.

Manual connection
If you want to change the connected mobile phone, go in phone mode to Phone menu ➔ Change phone.

Change to another external device
It is possible to change a connected device with another device if there are several devices in the car. However, the device must first have been registered to the car, see Connect an external Bluetooth® device. To change to another device:

1. Check that the external device is searchable/visible via Bluetooth®, see the manual for the external device.
2. Press TEL and then select Change phone.
   > The car searches for previously connected devices. The external devices detected are specified with their respective Bluetooth® name in the screen.
3. Select the device to be connected by turning TUNE and confirm with OK/MENU.

> Connection of the external device takes place.

To call
1. Make sure that the symbol appears at the top of the screen and that the handsfree function is in phone mode.
2. Dial either the desired number or speed dial number, see page 290. Or in normal view turn TUNE to the right to access the phone book, and to the left for the call register for all calls. For information on the phone book, see page 287.
3. Press OK/MENU.
The call is interrupted with EXIT.

Disconnecting the mobile phone
Automatic disconnection takes place if the mobile phone moves out of the audio system's range. The connection to the mobile phone can be manually broken in phone mode under Phone menu ➔ Disconnect phone. For more information on connection, see page 284.

The handsfree function is deactivated when the engine is switched off and the door is opened2.

---

2 Only Keyless Drive.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
Bluetooth® handsfree*

When the mobile phone has been disconnected an ongoing call can be continued by using the mobile phone's built-in microphone and speaker.

**NOTE**
Even when your mobile phone has been manually disconnected, some mobile phones may automatically couple up to the last handsfree unit connected, e.g. when a new call begins.

Remove the device
A connected mobile phone can be deregistered and removed. This is performed in phone mode under Phone menu ➔ Remove Bluetooth device.

Making and receiving calls

Incoming call
- Press OK/MENU to answer the call, even if the audio system is in e.g. RADIO or MEDIA mode.

Refuse or end with EXIT.

Automatic answer
The automatic answer function means that calls are accepted automatically.

- Activate/deactivate in phone mode under Phone menu ➔ Call options ➔ Auto answer.

In call menu
Press OK/MENU during an ongoing call to access the following functions:
- Mute - audio system microphone is muted.
- Mobile phone - the call is transferred from handsfree to the mobile phone. For some mobile phones the connection is interrupted. This is normal. The handsfree function asks if you want to reconnect.
- Dial number - option to call a third party using the number keys (current call set in standby).

Call lists
The call lists are copied to the handsfree function at each new connection and are then updated during the connection. In normal view, turn to the left with TUNE to see the call register for All calls.

In phone mode it is possible to see all the call lists under Phone menu ➔ All calls:
- All calls
- Missed calls
- Answered calls
- Dialed calls
- Call duration

**NOTE**
Certain mobile phones show a list of the last dialled numbers in reverse order.

Voice mailbox
In normal view a speed dial number for the voice mailbox can be programmed in and then accessed later via a long press on 1.

Voice mailbox number is changed in phone mode under Phone menu ➔ Call options ➔ Voicemail number ➔ Change number. If there is no number stored then this menu can be reached with one long press on 1.

Audio settings

Phone call volume
The phone call volume can only be changed during a call. Use the steering wheel keypad* or turn the VOL control.

Audio system volume
Providing there is no ongoing call taking place, the audio system volume is controlled as usual by turning VOL.

If an audio source is active during an incoming call then it can be muted automatically.
Activate/deactivate in phone mode under Phone menu ➔ Phone settings ➔ Sounds and volume ➔ Mute radio/media.

**Ring volume**
In phone mode go to Phone menu ➔ Phone settings ➔ Sounds and volume ➔ Ring volume and adjust by turning VOL. Press OK/MENU to hear the audio volume. Press EXIT to save.

**Ring signals**
The handsfree function has integrated ring signals that can be selected in phone mode under Phone menu ➔ Phone settings ➔ Sounds and volume ➔ Ring signals ➔ Ring signal 1 etc.

**NOTE**
For some mobile phones, the ringtone on the phone connected will not be switched off when one of the inbuilt signals for the handsfree system is used.

In order to select the connected phone's ring signal³, go in phone mode to Phone menu ➔ Phone settings ➔ Sounds and volume ➔ Ring signals ➔ Mobile phone ring signal.

**Phone book**
There are two phone books. These are merged into one in the car and are displayed as a single phone book in the car.

- The car downloads the mobile phone's phone book and only displays this phone book when the mobile phone from which this phone book was downloaded is connected.
- The car also has a built-in phone book. This contains all the contacts stored in the car irrespective of which phone was connected when saving them. These contacts are visible for all users, regardless of the mobile phone that is connected to the car. If a contact is saved in the car then the symbol 📞 is shown in front of the contact in the phone book.

**NOTE**
Changes made from the car to a record in the mobile phone's telephone book will result in a new record in the car's telephone book, i.e. changes will not be saved to the phone. From the car, this will now look like you have double records, with different icons. Note also that when a shortcut number is saved or a change to a contact is made, this will result in a new record in the car's phone book.

All use of the phone book requires that the symbol 📞 appears at the top of the screen and that the handsfree function is in phone mode.

The audio system stores a copy of the phone book from each paired mobile phone. The phone book can be copied automatically to the audio system during each connection.

- Activate/deactivate the function in phone mode under Phone menu ➔ Phone settings ➔ Download phone book.

If the phone book contains a ringing caller's contact information then this is shown in the screen.

³ Not supported by all mobile phones.
Quick search for contacts
In normal view turn TUNE to the right to obtain a list of contacts. Turn TUNE to select and press OK/MENU to call.

Under the name of the contact is the phone number that is selected by default. If the symbol > appears to the right of the contact then there are several phone numbers stored for the contact. Press OK/MENU to show the numbers. Change and dial a number other than that selected by default by turning TUNE. Press OK/MENU to dial.

Search in the list of contacts by using the centre console’s keypad to key in the start of the contact’s name (see “Character table keypad in centre console” for button functions).

The list of contacts can also be accessed from normal view by pressing and holding the button on the centre console’s keypad with the letter that the contact searched for starts with. For example, a long press on the button for 6 gives instant access to that part of the list where the contacts with the letter M are located.

### Character table keypad in centre console

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>+ 0 p w</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>#INFO</td>
<td># *</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Searching for contacts

1. Character list
2. Changing the input mode (see table below)
3. Phone book

Search contacts using the text wheel.
To search for or edit a contact, go in phone mode to Phone menu → Phone book → Search.

**NOTE**

There is no text wheel for High Performance, so TUNE cannot be used there to input characters: only the digit and letter buttons on the control panel in the centre console can be used for this.

1. Turn 4 TUNE to the desired letter, press OK/MENU to confirm. The number and letter buttons on the control panel in the centre console can also be used.

2. Continue with the next letter and so on. The result of the search is shown in the phone book (3).

3. To change the input mode to numbers or special characters, or to go to the phone book, turn TUNE to one of the options (see explanation in the table below) in the list for changing the input mode (2), press OK/MENU.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>123/ABC</th>
<th>Change between letters and numbers with OK/MENU.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>More</td>
<td>Change to special characters with OK/MENU.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>=&gt;</td>
<td>Leads to the phone book (3). Turn TUNE to select a contact, press OK/MENU to see the saved numbers and other information.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A short press on EXIT deletes an input character. A long press on EXIT will clear all entered characters.

By pressing a number key in the centre console when the text wheel is shown (see previous illustration), a new character list (1) is shown in the screen. Continue repeatedly pressing the number key to the desired letter and then release. Continue with the next letter and so on. When a button is depressed the entry is confirmed when another button is depressed.

To enter a number, hold in the corresponding number key.

**New contact**

Entering letters for New contact.

1. Changing the input mode (see table below)
2. Input field

New contacts can be added in phone mode under Phone menu → Phone book → New contact.

**NOTE**

There is no text wheel for High Performance, so TUNE cannot be used there to input characters: only the digit and letter buttons on the control panel in the centre console can be used for this.

---

4 Only applies to High Performance Multimedia and Premium Sound Multimedia.
Bluetooth® handsfree*

1. When the Name row is selected, press OK/MENU to reach the input mode (illustration above).

2. Turn TUNE to the desired letter, press OK/MENU to confirm. The number and letter buttons on the control panel in the centre console can also be used.

3. Continue with the next letter and so on. The name entered is shown in the input field (2) in the screen.

4. To change the input mode to numbers, special characters, change between uppercase/lowercase letters, etc., turn TUNE to one of the options (see explanation in the table below) in the list (1) and then press OK/MENU.

When all details have been filled in, select Save contact in the menu to save the contact.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>123/ABC</th>
<th>Change between letters and numbers with OK/MENU.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>More</td>
<td>Change to special characters with OK/MENU.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OK</td>
<td>Save and go back to Add contact with OK/MENU.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;--&gt;</td>
<td>Press OK/MENU, the cursor moves to the input field (2) at the top of the screen. The cursor can now be moved, with TUNE, to the appropriate place to e.g. insert new letters or delete with EXIT. To be able to insert new letters first go back to the input mode, by pressing OK/MENU.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When the name has been fully entered, select OK in the list in the screen (1) and press OK/MENU. Now continue with the telephone number in the same way as above.

When the telephone number has been entered, press OK/MENU and select a telephone number type (Mobile phone, Home, Work or General). Press OK/MENU to confirm.

Speed dial numbers
Use phone mode to add speed dial numbers under Phone menu ➔ Phone book ➔ Speed dial.

Dialling with speed dial numbers can be performed in phone mode using the number keys on the keypad in the centre console, by pressing a number key and then pressing OK/MENU. If there is no contact stored on the speed dial number then an option is shown to save a contact to the selected speed dial number.

Receiving a vCard
It is possible to receive a vCard to the car’s phone book from other mobile phones (other than the one currently connected to the car). In order to allow this the car is set to visible mode for Bluetooth®. The function is activated in phone mode under Phone menu ➔ Phone book ➔ Receive vCard.

Memory status
Memory status of the car’s phone book and the connected mobile phone’s phone book can be seen in phone mode under Phone menu ➔ Phone book ➔ Memory status.

---

4 Only applies to High Performance Multimedia and Premium Sound Multimedia.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
Delete phone book
The car's phone book can be deleted, this is carried out in phone mode under Phone menu ➔ Phone book ➔ Clear phone book.

NOTE
Deleting the car’s telephone book only deletes contacts in the car’s telephone book. Contacts in the mobile phone’s phone book are not deleted.

Version information Bluetooth®
The car's current Bluetooth® version can be seen in phone mode under Phone menu ➔ Phone settings ➔ Bluetooth software version in car.
Voice recognition* mobile phone

General

The infotainment system’s voice recognition\(^1\) allows the driver to voice-activate certain functions in a Bluetooth\(^\circledR\)-connected mobile phone or in Volvo’s navigation system - RTI (Road and Traffic Information System).

**NOTE**

- The information in this section describes the use of voice commands to control a mobile phone connected using Bluetooth\(^\circledR\). For detailed information on using a mobile phone connected using Bluetooth\(^\circledR\) with the car’s Infotainment system see page 283.
- The Volvo navigation system RTI (Road and Traffic Information System) has a separate user manual which contains more information on voice control and voice commands to control that system.

Voice commands offer convenience and help the driver to avoid being distracted, and instead concentrate on driving and focus attention on the road and traffic conditions.

### WARNING

The driver always holds overall responsibility for driving the vehicle in a safe manner and complying with all applicable rules of the road.

The voice recognition system allows the driver to voice-activate certain functions of a Bluetooth\(^\circledR\)-connected mobile phone and in Volvo's navigation system - RTI (Road and Traffic Information System), while the driver can keep his/her hands on the wheel at the same time. The input data are in dialogue form with spoken commands from the user and verbal replies from the system. The voice recognition system uses the same microphone as the Bluetooth\(^\circledR\) handsfree system (see illustration on page 283) and the voice recognition system's replies come via the car's speakers.

### Language

**Language list.**

Voice recognition is not possible for all languages. Languages available for voice recognition are marked with an icon in the language list - \(\text{ kształt}\). Changing the language is performed in the menu system **MY CAR**, see page 215.

\(^1\) Only applies to vehicles equipped with Volvo's navigation system - RTI (Road and Traffic Information System).
Keep the following things in mind when you use the voice recognition system:

- For a command - speak after the tone, with normal voice at normal speed.
- Do not speak while the system is replying (the system cannot understand commands during this time).
- The car’s doors, windows and sunroof* must be closed.
- Avoid background noise in the passenger compartment.

**NOTE**

If the driver is unsure of which command to use, he (she) can say "Help" - the system then responds with a few different commands which can be used in the current situation.

Voice commands can be disabled by:
- saying "Cancel"
- not speaking
- a long press on the steering wheel button for Voice recognition
- Press EXIT or another main source button (e.g. MEDIA).

**Help functions for voice recognition**

- **Instructions**: A function that helps you get familiar with the system and the procedure for giving commands.
- **Voice training**: A function that enables the voice recognition system to learn to know your voice and your accent. The function provides an opportunity to voice train two user profiles.

The help functions can be accessed by pressing the MY CAR button on the control panel in the centre console and then turning TUNE to the desired menu option.

**Instructions**

The instructions can be started in two ways:

- Press the button for Voice recognition and say "Voice tutorial".
- Activate the instructions in the menu system MY CAR under Settings ➔ Voice settings ➔ Voice tutorial. For a description of the menu system, see page 213.

The instructions are divided into 3 lessons, which take around 5 minutes in total to complete. The system starts with the first lesson.
Voice recognition* mobile phone

To skip a lesson and go to the next one, press the button for voice recognition and say "Next". Go back to the previous lesson by saying "Previous".

Exit the instructions by means of a long press on the button for voice recognition.

Voice training
The system displays up to fifteen phrases for you to say. Voice training can be started in the menu system MY CAR under Settings ➔ Voice settings ➔ Voice training. Choose between User 1 or User 2. For a description of the menu system, see page 213.

After voice training has been completed, remember to set your user profile under Voice user setting.

Additional settings in MY CAR
- **User setting** - Two user profiles can be set, the function is activated in the menu system MY CAR under Settings ➔ Voice settings ➔ Voice user setting. Choose between User 1 or User 2. For a description of the menu system, see page 213.
- **Voice output volume** - Can be changed in the menu system MY CAR under Settings ➔ Voice settings ➔ Voice output volume. For a description of the menu system, see page 213.

Using voice commands
The driver initiates a dialogue with the voice commands by pressing the button for voice recognition (see illustration on page 293).

Once a dialogue has been started, commonly used commands will be shown in the screen. Greyed-out text or text within brackets is not included in the spoken command.

When the driver becomes accustomed to the system, he/she can speed up the command dialogue and skip the prompts from the system, by briefly pressing the button for voice recognition.

Commands can be given in several ways
The command "Phone call contact" can be pronounced as e.g.:
- "Phone > Call contact" - Say "Phone", wait for the system’s reply, and then continue by saying "Call contact."
- or
- "Phone call contact" - Say the whole command in one sequence.

Quick commands
Quick commands for the phone can be found in the menu system MY CAR under Settings ➔ Voice settings ➔ Voice command list ➔ Phone commands and General commands. For a description of the menu system, see page 213.

Dial a number
The system understands the numbers 0 (zero) to 9 (nine). These numbers can be pronounced individually, in groups of several numbers at a time, or the whole number all at once. Numbers greater than 9 (nine) cannot be handled by the system, e.g. 10 (ten) or 11 (eleven) are not possible.

The following is an example of a dialogue with voice commands. The system's reply will vary depending on the situation.

The user starts the dialogue by saying:
Phone > dial number
or
Phone dial number
System reply
Number?
User action
Start saying the numbers (as individual units, i.e. six-eight-seven, etc.) in the phone number. If you say several numbers and pause, the system will repeat them, and then say "Continue".

Continue to say the numbers. When finished, finish the command by saying "Call".

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
• You can also change the number by saying the commands "Correct" (which deletes the last spoken group of numbers) or "Delete" (which deletes the whole spoken phone number).

**Dialling from the call register**
The following dialogue allows you to make a phone call from one of your mobile phone’s call registers.

The user starts the dialogue by saying:
Phone > call from the call register
or
Phone call from the call register
Continue by responding to the system’s prompts.

**Call a contact**
The following dialogue allows you to call your pre-defined contacts in the mobile phone.

The user starts the dialogue by saying:
Phone > call contact
or
Phone call contact
Continue by responding to the system’s prompts.
Consider the following when you call a contact:

• If there are several contacts with similar names, they will be presented in the screen in the numbered rows and the system prompts you to select a row number.

• If there are more rows in the list than can be displayed simultaneously, saying "Down" allows you to scroll down in the list (and saying "Up" allows you to scroll up in the list).

**Calling voice mailbox**
The following dialogue allows you to call your voice mailbox to check if you have received any messages. The phone number for your voice mailbox must be registered in the Bluetooth® function, see page 286.

The user starts the dialogue by saying:
Phone > call voice mailbox
or
Phone call voice mailbox
Continue by responding to the system’s prompts.
06 Infotainment system

TV*  

General

NOTE
This system only supports TV broadcasts in the countries that broadcast in MPEG-2 or MPEG-4 format and follow the DVB-T standard. The system does not support analogue broadcasts.

NOTE
The TV picture is only shown when the car is stationary. When the car is moving at a speed over about 6 km/h the picture disappears. No visual media available while driving appears on the display screen, although the audio is heard during this time. The picture reappears when the car has stopped.

Cars with RSE do not shut off the rear screens.

NOTE
The reception is dependent both on how good the signal strength and signal quality are. The transmission may be disturbed by various factors such as tall buildings or the TV transmitter being far away. Coverage level can also vary depending on where in the country you are located.

IMPORTANT
A TV licence is required for this product in some countries.

Menus
The menus in MEDIA are controlled from the centre console and the steering wheel keypad*. For general information on menu navigation, see page 257 and menu overview, see page 261.

Overview

Centre console control panel.

1 MEDIA button. Last active source (e.g. iPod® or TV) is activated. If a source is activated and you press MEDIA then a shortcut menu is shown with commonly used menu options.

2 Station presets, numeric input.

3 Navigate in channel lists or menus by turning TUNE.

4 Confirm your selection or go to the menu by pressing OK/MENU.

5 EXIT - leads up in the menu system, stops the function in progress.

6 The next available channel is shown by pressing ◄ / ►.

NOTE
If the car is equipped with a steering wheel keypad* and/or remote control* then in many cases these can be used instead of the buttons in the centre console. For a description of the buttons in the steering wheel, see page 255. For a description of the remote control, see page 300.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
Watch TV
- Press MEDIA, turn TUNE until TV is shown in the screen, press OK/MENU.
  > A search starts and after a short while the most recently used channel is shown.

Changing channel
It is possible to change channel as follows:
- Turn TUNE, a list of all available channels in the area is shown. If any of these channels is already saved as a preset then its preset number is shown to the right of the channel name. Continue turning TUNE to reach the desired channel and press OK/MENU.
- By pressing the preset buttons (0-9).
- Via a short press on the ❯❯ buttons the next available channel in the area is shown.

NOTE
If the car has been moved within the country, for example, from one city to another, it is not certain that the presets are available at the new location as the frequency range may have changed. In which case, carry out a new search and save a new preset list, see the function "Save the available TV channels as presets", page 298.

NOTE
If no reception is available on the preset buttons, it may be because the car is at a location other than where the scan of TV channels was run, for example, if the car was driven from Germany to France. A new selection of country and a new search may then need to be carried out.

Searching TV channels/Preset list
1. Press TV mode on OK/MENU.
2. Turn TUNE to TV menu and press OK/MENU.
3. Turn TUNE to Select country and press OK/MENU.
   > If one or more countries have previously been selected then they are shown in a list.

4. Turn TUNE to either Other countries or one of the previously selected countries. Press OK/MENU.
   > A list of all available countries is shown.

5. Turn TUNE to the desired country (e.g. Sweden) and press OK/MENU.
   > An automatic scan for available TV channels starts, this scan takes a little while. During this time the figure for each channel found and added as a preset is shown. When the scan is complete a message is shown and the picture is shown. A preset list (max. 30 presets) has now been created and is available. To change channel, see page 297.

The scan and preset storage can be cancelled with EXIT.

Channel management
The preset list can be edited. You can change the order of the channels that are shown in the preset list. A TV channel can have more than one place in the preset list. The TV channel positions can also vary in the preset list.

To change the order in the preset list, go in TV mode to TV menu ➔ Reorganise presets.
1. Turn **TUNE** to the channel you want to move in the list and confirm with **OK/MENU**.
   > The selected channel is highlighted.

2. Turn **TUNE** to the new location in the list and confirm with **OK/MENU**.
   > The channels change places with each other.

After the preset channels (max. 30) come all the other channels available in the area. It is possible to move a channel up to a place in the preset list.

**Save the available TV channels as presets**
If the car has been moved within the country, for example, from one city to another, it is not certain that the presets are available at the new location as the frequency range may have changed. In which case, carry out another scan and save a new preset list.

1. Press TV mode on **OK/MENU**.
2. Turn **TUNE** to TV menu and press **OK/MENU**.
3. Turn **TUNE** to Autostore and press **OK/MENU**.
   > An automatic scan for available TV channels starts, this scan takes a little while. During this time the figure for each channel found and added as a preset is shown. When the scan is complete a message is shown and the picture is shown. A preset list (max. 30 presets) has now been created and is available. To change channel, see page 297.

**Scanning the TV channels**
This function automatically scans through the frequency range for all channels available in the area where you are. When a channel is found, it is shown for approx. 10 seconds before scanning is resumed. Scanning is stopped with **EXIT**, then the channel that you just watched continues to be shown. Scanning does not affect the preset list.

Activate scanning in TV mode under TV menu ➔ Scan.

**Teletext**
It is possible to read Teletext. Follow these steps:
1. Press the **[** button on the remote control.
2. Enter the page number (3 digits) with the number keys (0-9) to select page.
   > The page is shown automatically.

Enter new page number, or press the remote control buttons ➔ / ➔ to go to the next page.

Return to TV screen with **EXIT** or by pressing the **[** button on the remote control.

It is also possible to control the teletext with the coloured buttons on the remote control.

**Information about the current programme**
Press the **INFO** button in order to display the information about the current programme, the next programme and its start time. If the **INFO** button is pressed once more then additional information on the current programme can sometimes be displayed, such as start and end times and a brief description of the current programme. For more information on the **INFO** button, see page 255.

To return to the TV picture, wait several seconds or press **EXIT**.
**Picture settings**

The settings for brightness and contrast can be adjusted. For more information, see page 276.

**The reception is lost**

If the reception for the TV channel that is being shown disappears then the picture will freeze. Shortly after this a message appears informing that the reception has been lost for the current TV channel, and a new search for the channel continues. When the reception returns the display of the TV channel starts immediately. It is possible to change channel at any time when the message is shown.

If the message Reception lost, searching is shown then this is because the system has detected that there is no reception for all TV channels. One possible reason may be that a border has been crossed and that the system is set to the wrong country. In which case, change to the right country in accordance with "Searching TV channels/Preset list", see page 297.
Remote control*

The remote control can be used for all functions in the infotainment system. The remote control's buttons have the same functions as the buttons in the centre console or steering wheel keypad*.

When using the remote control, first press the remote control's button \( F \) to position \( F \). Then aim the remote control at the IR receiver, which is located to the right of the INFO button (see page 255) in the centre console.

If the car is fitted with rear TV screens* and you want to operate one of these, select the required TV screen with the button \( R \) on the remote control. Then aim the remote control at the IR receiver for the TV screen to be operated, see page 302.

**WARNING**

Keep loose objects such as mobile phones, cameras, remote controls for accessories, etc. in the glove compartment or other compartments. Otherwise they may injure people in the car in the event of sudden braking or a collision.

### Functions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>Change between: ( L ) = Rear left TV screen* ( F ) = Front TV screen ( R ) = Rear right TV screen*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAV</td>
<td>Change to navigation*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RADIO</td>
<td>Change to radio source (e.g. FM1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MEDIA</td>
<td>Change to media source (Disc, TV* etc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TEL</td>
<td>Change to Bluetooth® hands-free*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Previous</td>
<td>Scroll/fast rewind, change track/song</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Play</td>
<td>Play/pause</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
06 Infotainment system

Remote control*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stop</td>
<td>Stop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scroll/fast forward, change track/song</td>
<td>Scroll/fast forward, change track/song</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Menu</td>
<td>Menu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To previous, cancels function, deletes input characters</td>
<td>To previous, cancels function, deletes input characters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Navigate up/down</td>
<td>Navigate up/down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Navigate right/left</td>
<td>Navigate right/left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Confirm selection or go to the menu system for the selected source</td>
<td>Confirm selection or go to the menu system for the selected source</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Volume, decrease</td>
<td>Volume, decrease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Volume, increase</td>
<td>Volume, increase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preset channels, number and letter input</td>
<td>Preset channels, number and letter input</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shortcuts for favourite setting.</td>
<td>Shortcuts for favourite setting.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>INFO</td>
<td>Information about the current programme, song, etc. Also used when there is more information available than can be shown in the display screen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selection of language for soundtrack</td>
<td>Selection of language for soundtrack</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subtitles, selection of language for text</td>
<td>Subtitles, selection of language for text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Teletext*, On/Off</td>
<td>Teletext*, On/Off</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Replacing the battery in the remote control

1. Push down the catch on the battery cover and slide the battery cover in the direction of the infrared lens.
2. Remove the used batteries, turn the new batteries in accordance with the symbols in the battery compartment and fit them.
3. Refit the cover.

### NOTE

Battery life is normally 1-4 years and depends on how much the remote control is used.

The remote control is powered by four batteries of the AA/LR6 type.

Take along extra batteries for a long journey.

### NOTE

Be sure to dispose of the exhausted batteries in an environmentally safe manner.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
RSE - Rear Seat Entertainment system*

Overview

1. Screen
2. Headphones socket
3. On/Off button
4. A/V-AUX input
5. Remote control
6. Headphones
7. IR receiver/transmitter

General

The RSE system is a system for rear-seat entertainment that makes it possible to e.g. watch video, play music, listen to the radio, watch TV* or connect other external devices (e.g. a games console).

The RSE system is fully integrated with the car's infotainment system and can be used simultaneously with other functions of the infotainment system.

When the rear seat passengers are using e.g. A/V-AUX or watching TV* while listening with headphones, the driver and front seat passenger can still use the car’s radio or media player. However, only one disc at a time can be played in the media player. It is possible to play back music from e.g. an iPod® or streaming audio files via Bluetooth®.

The RSE system can be controlled from the front screen (parental control).

It is possible to display or play back various media from different sources on each screen. It is also possible to display or play back media from the same source on one or more of the screens (front, right rear and left rear). It is not possible to play back video from USB while a CD or DVD disc is being played back.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
IMPORTANT
When loading luggage and large objects in the vehicle, ensure that sufficient space is left for the TV screens in the head restraints, so that the TV screens are not scratched or damaged. Cover the TV screens with appropriate covering material during loading.

NOTE
The TV screens and remote control do not work at very low or high temperatures - they only "come alive" after the climate control system has created an acceptable operating temperature in the passenger compartment.

NOTE
Clean the lens on the IR receiver regularly with a damp cloth, a dirty lens affects remote control function.

Power consumption, ignition positions
The system can be activated in ignition position I or II and while the engine is running. When the car is being started the film stops temporarily and continues when the engine has started.

NOTE
For prolonged use (more than 10 minutes) with the engine switched off, the capacity of the vehicle's battery may fall to such a low level that it is not possible to start the engine.

In this case a message will be displayed on the screen.

Menus
The menus for RSE are controlled using the remote control. For general information on menu navigation and menu structures, see page 308.

Remote control
The RSE system is equipped with a remote control. Using this it is possible to control the functions for each screen. The remote control can also be used to control other functions in the infotainment system, even from the rear seat.

For information on the remote control, see page 300.

Wireless headphones
Control for channel A (CH.A) or channel B (CH.B)
On/Off button
Volume
Indicator lamp On/Off

The RSE system includes two wireless headphones.

The wireless headphones are activated with the On/Off button (2), an indicator lamp illuminates (4). Select CH.A (channel A) or CH.B (channel B) using the control (1). Adjust the volume using the volume control (3).

The headphones are automatically switched off after about 3 minutes if they are not used.
Battery replacement in wireless headphones
The headphones are powered by two batteries of the AAA model.
Take along extra batteries for a long journey.

Wireless headphones.
1. Unscrew the screw and detach the battery cover.
2. Remove the used batteries, turn the new batteries in accordance with the symbols in the battery compartment and insert them.
3. Fit the cover and screw in the screw.

Environmental care
Be sure to dispose of the exhausted batteries in an environmentally safe manner.

Headphones socket
It is possible to connect external headphones via the headphones socket (3.5 mm) on the side of the head restraints, see the illustration on page 302. The volume is controlled using the remote control.

A/V-AUX input, Electrical socket 12 V
The input allows you to connect other equipment. Always follow the instructions included with the external equipment, or from the manufacturer or reseller, when connecting. Equipment connected via the A/V-AUX input can use the screens, wireless headphones, headphones sockets and the car’s speakers.

NOTE
The customer is responsible that equipment connected to the A/V-AUX input or headphones socket does not cause interference in the vehicle’s RSE system.

Connection of A/V-AUX input
The A/V-AUX input is located under the armrest in the tunnel console.
1. Connect the video cable to the yellow socket.
2. Connect the left-hand audio cable to the white socket and the right-hand one to the red socket.
3. Connect the power cable to the electrical socket if your equipment is designed for 12 V.

Always follow the instructions for the external equipment when connecting.
There is a recess in the right-hand rear edge of the tunnel console where cables can be routed so that the hatch can be closed without cables being pinched.
For electrical socket location, see page 250

Playing back audio/video via the A/V-AUX input
1. Switch on the rear screen by means pressing the On/Off button in the screen.
2. Aim the remote control at the IR receiver on the screen and press MEDIA, turn TUNE to A/V AUX, confirm selection with OK/MENU.
3. Switch on the connected device and press PLAY or equivalent on the connected device.

Input volume
The input volume is adjusted in the menu under A/V AUX input volume.

To activate the system
The RSE system can be activated from either the front or rear screen.

From the front screen, press MEDIA, turn TUNE and select RSE, confirm with OK/MENU.

From the rear screen, by means of pressing the On/Off button on the rear screen and then pressing MEDIA or RADIO on the remote control, turn TUNE and select a source (e.g. Disc), confirm selection with OK/MENU.

Settings from the front screen

1. Press MEDIA, turn TUNE to scroll down to RSE in the screen, confirm selection with OK/MENU.
2. Turn TUNE to select the right, left-hand or both screens, and confirm with OK/MENU.
3. Turn TUNE to select RADIO, MEDIA (or RSE settings). Press OK/MENU to confirm.
4. Turn TUNE to the desired source (e.g. Disc) and confirm with OK/MENU. The selected source will start automatically (if e.g. a disc is in the media player).

Cancel and go back with EXIT.

The remote control can also be used for settings. For more information on the remote control, see page 300.

Parental control for the TV*
It is possible to set a permitted age limit for the TV, so that only programmes for the appropriate age can be viewed. The setting is activated for both screens.

Activate under RSE settings ➔ TV parental control, in accordance with point 2-4 in the section “Selection of source in the rear screens”, see page 305. Choose between Age 0-6, Age 7-13, Age 14-18 and No parental control.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
RSE - Rear Seat Entertainment system

Audio off
It is possible to mute the two rear screens from the front screen. The function is activated under RSE settings → Mute, in accordance with point 2-4 in the section "Selection of source in the rear screens", see page 305.

Screen off
It is possible to switch off the video for the two rear screens from the front screen. The function is activated under RSE settings → Display off, in accordance with point 2-4 in the section "Selection of source in the rear screens", see page 305.

Press one of the remote control's numeric keys (0-9) to switch on the screen again. The screen is also switched to the On mode when the ignition is switched on.

Switching off the remote control (front)
It is possible to switch off the IR receiver for the front screen, which means that the remote control cannot be used for the front screen. The function is activated under RSE settings → Disable remote control (front), in accordance with point 2-4 in the section "Selection of source in the rear screens", see page 305.

Screen settings¹ rear screen
When playing back video files and displaying TV* a pop-up menu is available by means of pressing OK MENU on the remote control. The pop-up menu has different content depending on what is being played back or displayed.

Day/Night mode
The screen can be set in three different modes for different light conditions. Choose between Auto, Day and Night.

Press OK MENU on the remote control and change the mode under Day/Night mode in the screen. For general information on menu navigation and menu structures, see page 308.

Picture settings
You can adjust the settings for brightness, contrast, shade and colour.

Press OK MENU on the remote control and change the mode under Image settings in the screen. For general information on menu navigation and menu structures, see page 308.

Display format
It is possible to choose between display formats Normal, Zoom and Screen fit.

Normal - The image is shown in its normal mode (normally 4:3 or 16:9 format).

Zoom - Full screen used but parts of the image are cut off.

Screen fit - Full screen used but image proportions may be slightly distorted.

Unless otherwise stated the image is displayed in the screen format Normal.

Press OK MENU on the remote control and change the mode under Screen format in the screen. For general information on menu navigation and menu structures, see page 308.

Source menu
What is shown in the pop-up menu for the source menu depends on what is being played back or displayed, it can be e.g. CD/DVD data menu or USB menu. For general information on menu navigation and menu structures, see page 308.

DVD disc's menu²
If a DVD video disc is played back then this menu option is shown in the pop-up menu.

¹ Only available for playing back video files and displaying TV*.
² Only applies to DVD video discs.
For general information on menu navigation and menu structures, see page 308.

Menu settings from the rear screen
For general information on menu navigation and menu structures, see page 308.

Random
See page 275.

Repeat folder
See page 275.

DivX® Video On Demand
The media player can be registered in order to play DivX VOD type files from burned discs or USB. The code for registration is available in disc mode or USB mode under DivX® VOD code. For more information visit www.divx.com/vod.

USB hub
It is possible to connect a USB hub to the USB connection, see page 279.

TV settings*
Searching TV channels/Preset list
See page 297.

Save the available TV channels as presets
See page 298.

Scanning the TV channels
See page 298.

Music, video, radio and TV*
Playing back music
It is possible to play back music from disc tracks/audio files via the car's media player, USB port/AUX input or via streaming audio files from a Bluetooth®-connected phone.

NOTE
The system only supports one iPod® user at a time in the navigation mode (playlist).

For more information about media players, USB/AUX and Media Bluetooth®, see the pages 273, 277 and 280.

1. Switch on the wireless headphones, select CH.A for left-hand screen or CH.B for right-hand screen.
2. Aim the remote control at the IR receiver on the screen and press MEDIA, turn TUNE to desired source (Disc, USB, AUX etc.), confirm selection with OK.
3. Insert a CD disc in the car’s media player or connect an external audio source via the car’s USB port/AUX input or via Bluetooth®.

Playback and navigation in playlists
Rotate the scroll wheel on the remote control to access the playlist/folder structure. either gives confirmation of subfolder selection or starts playing back the selected disc track/audio file. It is also possible to play back the disc track/audio file using on the remote control and change the disc tracks/audio file using / . Stop playback using .
For more information, see page 274.

Watching video
It is possible to watch video from disc tracks/video files via the car’s media player or USB port.

3 Applies to CD-Audio, CD/DVD discs, USB and iPod®.
4 Applies to CD/DVD discs and USB.
RSE - Rear Seat Entertainment system*

For more information about media players and USB, see the pages 273 and 277.

1. Switch on the wireless headphones, select CH.A for left-hand screen or CH.B for right-hand screen.
2. Aim the remote control at the IR receiver on the screen and press MEDIA, turn TUNE to desired source (Disc or USB), confirm selection with OK MENU.
3. Insert a DVD disc in the car’s media player or connect an external source via the car’s USB port.

Playback and navigation
Play back disc track/video file using ▶ on the remote control and change disc track/video file using ◀ / ▶. Stop playback using ◿. For more information about playback and navigation of DVD video discs, see page 275 and for video files, see page 274.

Fast forward/ reverse
Start fast forward/rewind by means of a long press on the buttons ◀ / ▶. Then increase fast forward/rewind speed by short presses the buttons. Audio files are fast forwarded/rewound at one speed, while video files can be fast forwarded/rewound at four different speeds. Fast forward/rewind is stopped by pressing ◿ - , ◿ - or the equivalent opposite ◀ / ▶ button.

Listening to radio
It is possible to listen to radio via the car’s radio.

1. Switch on the wireless headphones, select CH.A for left-hand screen or CH.B for right-hand screen.
2. Aim the remote control at the IR receiver on the screen and press RADIO, turn TUNE to desired source (AM, FM1, DAB1* etc.), confirm selection with OK MENU.
3. Select a station with one of the preset buttons (0 - 9) on the remote control or press ◀ / ▶, the radio will search for the next/previous available station.

For more information on the radio, see page 266.

Watching TV*
It is possible to watch TV via the car’s media player.

1. Switch on the wireless headphones, select CH.A for left-hand screen or CH.B for right-hand screen.
2. Aim the remote control at the IR receiver on the screen and press MEDIA, turn TUNE to TV, confirm selection with OK MENU.
3. Select a channel with one of the preset buttons (0 - 9) on the remote control or press ◀ / ▶, the next/previous channel available in the area is displayed.

For more information on the TV, see page 296.

Menu navigation RSE

General
The RSE menus are operated both from the front screen, and from either of the rear screens. From the front screen it is possible to both activate a source for a rear screen, and to make certain settings for the two rear screens.

RSE menus front screen
To access the menu RSE must first be selected under MEDIA via the front screen. Then press OK/MENU to access the menu. Turn TUNE to the desired selection and confirm with OK/MENU. The remote control and steering wheel keypad can also be used.

It is possible to make settings for either right or left-hand screen or both screens.

Left RSE screen menu, Right RSE screen menu and Both RSE screen menus:

Power off/Power on
RADIO
RSE - Rear Seat Entertainment system*

MEDIA
RSE settings
Mute
Display off
Disable remote control (front)
TV parental control
Reset all RSE settings

Pop-up menu RSE

Press \[\text{OK}\] on the remote control when a video file is being played back or the TV* is being displayed in order to access the pop-up menu. Menu selections are made using the scroll wheel and the buttons on the remote control. For information on the remote control, see page 300.

- Screen format
- Image settings
- Day/Night mode
- Source menu
- DVD disc menu

RSE menus rear screens

Press \[\text{OK}\] on the remote control when a source (e.g. Disc) is selected in order to access the RSE menus for the rear screen.

Menu selections are made using the scroll wheel and the buttons on the remote control. For information on the remote control, see page 300.

- Day/Night mode
- Display off
- Reset all RSE settings

RADIO

Menu valid for AM, FM1, FM2, DAB1* and DAB2*:
- Day/Night mode
- Display off
- Reset all RSE settings

MEDIA

RSE CD Audio menu

Disc menu
- Random
- Day/Night mode
- Display off

RSE CD/DVD Data menu

Disc menu
- Random
- Repeat folder
- DivX® VOD code
- Day/Night mode
- Display off
- Reset disc settings

RSE DVD Video menu

DVD Video Menu
- DVD disc menu
- Subtitles
- Audio tracks
- Advanced settings
- Day/Night mode
- Display off
- Reset disc settings

5 Only applies when playing back videos or displaying TV*.
6 What is shown in the pop-up menu for the source menu depends on what is being played back or displayed, it can be e.g. CD/DVD data menu or USB menu.
7 Only applies to DVD video discs.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
**06 Infotainment system**

**RSE - Rear Seat Entertainment system***

**RSE USB menu**

USB menu
- Random
- Repeat folder
- DivX® VOD code
- Select USB device
- Day/Night mode
- Display off
- Reset USB settings

**RSE AUX menu**

AUX menu
- AUX input volume
- Day/Night mode
- Display off
- Reset AUX settings

**RSE A/V-AUX menu**

A/V AUX menu
- A/V AUX input volume
- Day/Night mode
- Display off
- Reset AUX settings

**RSE iPod menu**

iPod menu
- Random
- Day/Night mode
- Display off
- Reset iPod settings

**RSE Bluetooth® menu**

Bluetooth menu
- Random
- Day/Night mode
- Display off
- Reset Bluetooth settings

**RSE TV menu***

TV menu
- Select country
- Autostore
- Scan
- Day/Night mode
- Display off
- Reset TV settings

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
DURING YOUR JOURNEY
Recommendations during driving

General

**Economical driving**
Driving economically means driving smoothly while thinking ahead and adjusting your driving style and speed to the prevailing conditions.

- Drive in the highest gear possible, adapted to the current traffic situation and road - lower engine speeds result in lower fuel consumption.
- Avoid driving with open windows.
- Avoid sudden unnecessary acceleration and heavy braking.
- Drive with the correct tyre pressure, see page 418.
- Remove unnecessary items from the car - the greater the load the higher the consumption.
- Use engine braking to slow down, when it can take place without risk to other road users.
- A roof load and ski box increase air resistance, leading to higher consumption - remove the load carriers when not in use.
- Do not run the engine to operating temperature at idling speed, but rather drive with a light load as soon as possible - a cold engine consumes more fuel than a warm one.

- A V70 with D2, D3, D4 or D5 engine in combination with a 6-speed manual gearbox is started in 2nd gear. An XC70 with D4 AWD or D5 AWD engine in combination with a 6-speed manual gearbox is started in 2nd gear.

For more information and further advice, see the pages 11 and 416.

**WARNING**

Never switch off the engine while moving, such as downhill, this deactivates important systems such as the power steering and brake servo.

**IMPORTANT**

- Engine damage can occur if water enters the air filter.
- In depths greater than 25 cm, water could enter the transmission. This reduces the lubricating ability of the oils and shortens the service life of these systems.
- In the event of the engine stalling in water, do not try restart - tow the car from the water to a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended. Risk of engine breakdown.

**Engine, gearbox and cooling system**
Under special conditions, for example hard driving in hilly terrain and hot climate, there is a risk that the engine and drive system may overheat - in particular with a heavy load.

For information about overheating when driving with a trailer, see page 330.
Recommendations during driving

- Remove any auxiliary lamps from in front of the grille when driving in hot climates.
- If the temperature in the engine’s cooling system is too high then a warning symbol is illuminated in the combined instrument panel and its display shows the text message **High engine temp Stop safely** - stop the car in a safe way and allow the engine to run at idling speed for several minutes in order to cool down.
- If the text message **High engine temp Stop engine** or **Coolant level low, Stop engine** is shown then the engine must be switched off after stopping the car.
- In the event of overheating in the gearbox a built-in protection function is activated which, amongst other things, illuminates a warning symbol in the combined instrument panel, and its display shows the text message **Transmission hot Reduce speed or Transmission hot Stop safely** - follow the recommendation given and lower the speed and stop the car in a safe way and allow the engine to run at idling speed for a few minutes in order to allow the gearbox to cool down.
- If the car overheats, the air conditioning may be switched off temporarily.
- Do not turn the engine off immediately you stop after a hard drive.

### NOTE

It is normal for the engine’s cooling fan to operate for a while after the engine has been switched off.

### Open tailgate

**WARNING**

- Do not drive with the tailgate open. Toxic exhaust fumes could be drawn into the car through the cargo area.

### Do not overload the starter battery

The electrical functions in the car load the battery to varying degrees. Avoid using the key position **II** when the engine is switched off. Instead use the **I** mode - which uses less power.

For more information on key position, see page 81.

Also, be aware of different accessories that load the electrical system. Do not use functions which use a lot of power when the engine is switched off. Examples of such functions are:

- ventilation fan
- headlamps
- windscreen wiper

- audio system (high volume).

If the starter battery voltage is low then the combined instrument panel's information display shows the text **Low battery Power save mode**. The energy-saving function then shuts down certain functions or reduces certain functions such as the ventilation fan and/or audio system.

- In which case, charge the starter battery by starting the engine and then running it for at least 15 minutes - charging the starter battery is more effective during driving than running the engine at idling speed while stationary.

### Before a long journey

- Check that the engine is working normally and that fuel consumption is normal.
- Make sure that there are no leaks (fuel, oil or other fluid).
- Check all bulbs and tyre tread depths.
- Carrying a warning triangle is a legal requirement in certain countries.

### Winter driving

Check the following in particular before the cold season:

- The engine coolant must contain at least 50% glycol. This mixture protects the engine against frost erosion down to approximately –35 °C. To achieve opti-
mum antifreeze protection, different types of glycol must not be mixed.

- The fuel tank must be kept filled to prevent condensation.
- Engine oil viscosity is important. Oils with lower viscosity (thinner oils) facilitate starting in cold weather and also reduce fuel consumption while the engine is cold. For more information on suitable oils, see page 411.

**IMPORTANT**
Low viscosity oil must not be used for hard driving or in hot weather.

- The condition of the starter battery and charge level must be inspected. Cold weather places great demands on the starter battery and its capacity is reduced by the cold.
- Use washer fluid to avoid ice forming in the washer fluid reservoir.

To achieve optimum roadholding Volvo recommends using winter tyres on all wheels if there is a risk of snow or ice.

**NOTE**
The use of winter tyres is a legal requirement in certain countries. Studded tyres are not permitted in all countries.

**Slippery driving conditions**
Practise driving on slippery surfaces under controlled conditions to learn how the car reacts.
Refuelling

Opening/closing the fuel filler flap

Open the fuel filler flap using the button on the lighting panel - the flap opens when the button is released.

In the combined instrument panel’s display the arrow on the symbol indicates which side of the car the fuel cap is located.

- Close the fuel filler flap by pressing it in until a click confirms that it is closed.

Opening the fuel filler flap manually

The fuel filler flap can be opened manually when electric opening from the passenger compartment is not possible.

1. Open/remove the side hatch in the cargo area (same side as fuel filler flap) and locate the green cord with handle.
2. Pull the cord gently straight back until the fuel filler flap folds out with a "click".

**IMPORTANT**
Pull the wire gently - minimal force is required to disengage the hatch lock.

Opening/closing the fuel cap

A certain overpressure may arise in the tank in the event of high outside temperatures. Open the cap slowly.

- After refuelling - refit the cap and turn it until one or more clicking sounds are heard.

Filling up with fuel

- Do not overfill the tank but fill until the pump nozzle cuts out.

**NOTE**
Excess fuel in the tank can overflow in hot weather.
07 During your journey

Fuel

General information on fuel
Fuel of a lower quality than that recommended by Volvo must not be used as engine power and fuel consumption is negatively affected.

**WARNING**
Always avoid inhaling fuel vapour and getting fuel splashes in the eyes.
In the event of fuel in the eyes, remove any contact lenses and rinse the eyes in plenty of water for at least 15 minutes and seek medical attention.
Never swallow fuel. Fuels such as petrol, bioethanol and mixtures of them and diesel are highly toxic and could cause permanent injury or be fatal if swallowed. Seek medical attention immediately if fuel has been swallowed.

**WARNING**
Fuel which spills onto the ground can be ignited.
Switch off the fuel-driven heater before starting to refuel.
Never carry an activated mobile phone when refuelling. The ring signal could cause spark build-up and ignite petrol fumes, leading to fire and injury.

**IMPORTANT**
Mixing different types of fuel or the use of fuel not recommended invalidates Volvo's guarantees, and any associated service agreement. This applies to all engines.

**NOTE**
Extreme weather conditions, driving with a trailer or driving at high altitudes in combination with fuel grade are factors that could affect the car's performance.

Catalytic converters
The purpose of the catalytic converters is to purify exhaust gases. They are located close to the engine so that operating temperature is reached quickly.
The catalytic converters consist of a monolith (ceramic or metal) with channels. The channel walls are lined with a thin layer of platinum/rhodium/palladium. These metals act as catalysts, i.e., they participate in and accelerate a chemical reaction without being used up themselves.

**Lambda-sond™ oxygen sensor**
The Lambda-sond is part of a control system intended to reduce emissions and improve fuel economy.
An oxygen sensor monitors the oxygen content of the exhaust gases leaving the engine. This value is fed into an electronic system that continuously controls the injectors. The ratio of fuel to air directed to the engine is continuously adjusted. These adjustments create optimal conditions for efficient combustion, and together with the three-way catalytic converter reduce harmful emissions (hydrocarbons, carbon monoxide and nitrous oxides).

**Petrol**
Petrol must fulfil the EN 228 standard. Most engines can be run with octane ratings of 95 and 98 RON. Only in exceptional cases should 91 RON be used.
• 95 RON can be used for normal driving.
• 98 RON is recommended for optimum performance and minimum fuel consumption.
When driving in temperatures above +38 °C, fuel with the highest possible octane rating is recommended for optimum performance and fuel economy.
IMPORTANT

- Always refuel with unleaded petrol so as not to damage the catalytic converter.
- Do not use additives not recommended by Volvo.

Bioethanol E85

Do not modify the fuel system or its components, and do not replace components with parts that are not specifically designed for use with bioethanol.

WARNING

Methanol must not be used. A decal on the inside of the fuel filler flap shows the correct alternative fuel.

The use of components not designed for bioethanol engines could cause fire, injury or engine damage.

Reserve fuel can

The reserve fuel can should be filled with petrol, see the NOTE box, page 122.

IMPORTANT

Make sure the reserve fuel can is securely fastened and that its cap is sealed.

WARNING

Ethanol is sensitive to sparks, and explosive gases could form in the reserve fuel can if it is refuelled with ethanol.

Diesel

Only use diesel fuel from well-known producers. Never use diesel of dubious quality. Diesel should fulfil the EN 590 or JIS K2204 standards. Diesel engines are sensitive to contaminants in the fuel, such as excessively high volumes of sulphur particles for example.

At low temperatures (-6 °C to -40 °C), a paraffin precipitate may form in the diesel fuel, which may lead to ignition problems. Special diesel fuel designed for low temperatures around freezing point is available from the major oil companies. This fuel is less viscous at low temperatures and reduces the risk of paraffin precipitate.

The risk of condensation in the fuel tank is reduced if the tank is kept well filled. When refuelling, check that the area around the fuel filler pipe is clean. Avoid spilling fuel onto the paintwork. Wash off any spillage with detergent and water.

IMPORTANT

Only ever use fuel that fulfils the European diesel standard.

The sulphur content must be a maximum of 50 ppm.

IMPORTANT

Diesel type fuels that must not be used:
- Special additives
- Marine diesel fuel
- Heating oil
- FAME\(^1\) (Fatty Acid Methyl Ester) and vegetable oil.

These fuels do not fulfil the requirements in accordance with Volvo recommendations and generate increased wear and engine damage that is not covered by the Volvo warranty.

\(^1\) Diesel fuel may contain a certain amount of FAME, but further amounts must not be added.
**Fuel**

**Empty tank**
The design of the fuel system in a diesel engine means that if the vehicle runs out of fuel, the tank may need to be vented in the workshop in order to restart the engine after fuelling.

Once the engine has stopped due to fuel starvation, the fuel system needs a few moments to carry out a check. Do this before starting the engine, once the fuel tank has been filled with diesel:

1. Insert the remote control key in the ignition switch and push it in to the end position (see page 81).
2. Press the **START** button without depressing the brake and/or clutch pedal.
3. Wait approx. 1 minute.
4. To start the engine: Depress the brake and/or clutch pedal and then press the **START** button again.

**Draining condensation from the fuel filter**
The fuel filter separates condensation from the fuel. Condensation can disrupt engine operation.

The fuel filter must be drained at the intervals specified in the Service and Warranty Booklet or if you suspect that the car has been filled with contaminated fuel.

**IMPORTANT**
Certain special additives remove the water separation in the fuel filter.

**Diesel particle filter (DPF)**
Diesel cars are equipped with a particle filter, which results in more efficient emission control. The particles in the exhaust gases are collected in the filter during normal driving. So-called "regeneration" is started in order to burn away the particles and empty the filter. This requires the engine to have reached normal operating temperature.

Regeneration of the particle filter is automatic and normally takes 10-20 minutes. It may take a little longer at a low average speed. Fuel consumption may increase slightly during regeneration.

**Regeneration in cold weather**
If the car is frequently driven short distances in cold weather then the engine does not reach normal operating temperature. This means that regeneration of the diesel particle filter does not take place and the filter is not emptied.

When the filter has become approx. 80% full of particles, a yellow warning triangle is shown in the combined instrument panel, and the message *Soot filter full* is shown in its display.

Start regeneration of the filter by driving the car until the engine reaches normal operating temperature, preferably on a main road or motorway. The car should then be driven for approximately 20 minutes more.

**NOTE**
The following may arise during regeneration:

- a smaller reduction of engine power may be noticed temporarily
- fuel consumption may increase temporarily
- a smell of burning may arise.

When regeneration is complete the warning text is cleared automatically.

**NOTE**
Before filling with fuel in the event of fuel shortage:

- Stop the car on as flat/level ground as possible - if the car is tilting there is a risk of air pockets in the fuel supply.
Use the parking heater* in cold weather - the engine then reaches normal operating temperature more quickly.

**IMPORTANT**
If the filter fills up with particles then it can be difficult to start the engine and the filter will be incapable of functioning. Then there is a risk that the filter will have to be replaced.

**Fuel consumption and emissions of carbon dioxide**
Fuel consumption figures may change if the car is equipped with extra equipment that affects the car’s weight. See information on weights page 404 and table page 416.

The manner in which the car is driven, and other non-technical factors can also affect fuel consumption.

Consumption is higher and power output lower for fuel with an octane rating of 91 RON.

**NOTE**
Extreme weather conditions, driving with a trailer or driving at high altitudes in combination with fuel grade are factors that could affect the car’s performance.
Loading

General information on loading
Payload depends on the car’s kerb weight. The total of the weight of the passengers and all accessories reduces the car’s payload by a corresponding weight. For more detailed information on weights, see page 404.

The tailgate is opened via a button on the lighting panel or the remote control key, see page 58.

WARNING
The car’s driving characteristics change depending on the weight and distribution of the load.

To bear in mind when loading
- Position the load firmly against the rear seat’s backrest.
- Centre the load.
- Heavy objects should be placed as low as possible. Avoid placing heavy loads on lowered backrests.
- Cover sharp edges with something soft to avoid damaging the upholstery.

- Secure all loads to the load retaining eyelets with straps or web lashings.

WARNING
A loose object weighing 20 kg can, in a frontal collision at a speed of 50 km/h, carry the impact of an item weighing 1000 kg.

WARNING
The protection provided by the inflatable curtain in the headlining may be compromised or eliminated by high loads.
- Never load cargo above the backrest.

WARNING
Always secure the load. During heavy braking the load may otherwise shift, causing injury to the car’s occupants.
- Cover sharp edges and sharp corners with something soft.
- Switch off the engine and apply the parking brake when loading/unloading long items. Otherwise you may accidentally knock the gear lever or gear selector with the load into a drive position - and the car could then move off.

Front seat
The passenger seat backrest can also be folded for an extra long load, see page 83.

Roof load
Using load carriers
To avoid damaging the car and for maximum possible safety while driving, the load carriers designed by Volvo are recommended.

Carefully follow the installation instructions supplied with the carriers.
- Check periodically that the load carriers and load are properly secured. Lash the load securely with retaining straps.
- Distribute the load evenly over the load carriers. Put the heaviest objects at the bottom.
- The size of the area exposed to the wind, and therefore fuel consumption, increase with the size of the load.
- Drive gently. Avoid quick acceleration, heavy braking and hard cornering.

WARNING
The car’s centre of gravity and driving characteristics are altered by roof loads. For information on maximum permitted roof load, including load carriers and any space box, see page 404.
Lowering the rear seat backrest
To simplify loading in the cargo area, the rear seat backrest can be folded down, see page 85.

Securing loads
On both sides of the cargo area there are several mounting points designed for securing loads. They are located in the floor and in the top edge of both sides of the cargo area.

**WARNING**
Hard, sharp and/or heavy objects that are loose or protrude could cause injury during heavy braking.
Always secure large and heavy objects with a seatbelt or cargo retaining straps.

**Floor rails**
Load secured in both upper and lower mounting points.
In the floor of the cargo area there are two rails with movable cargo retaining hooks for securing items in the cargo area using cargo retaining straps.

**IMPORTANT**
Do not use other adjustable straps as these could pull and break the mounting points.

Cleaning
Dirt and objects collecting down in the rails could hinder the repositioning, locking, raising and removal of the cargo retaining hooks. Make it a habit to clean the tracks with a vacuum cleaner and a lightly-moistened soft cloth.

**Cargo retaining straps**
One loop of the cargo retaining strap around one of the cargo retaining hooks secures the strap and prevents it from sliding around the hook.

**NOTE**
A suitable width for a cargo retaining strap is approx. 25 mm.
Moving a cargo retaining hook

1. Fold the cargo retaining hook down in the direction to which its opening points.
2. Press the hook down lightly and at the same time push it to the required position.
3. Fold the hook up – it is self-locking.

NOTE
There must be at least 50 cm between the cargo retaining hooks in the rail.

Removing a cargo retaining hook

1. Fold the cargo retaining hook down in the direction to which its opening points.
2. Press the hook down lightly and at the same time push it to the required position.
3. Fold the hook up – it is self-locking.
4. Lift the hook straight up.

Securing the hook takes place in reverse order.

NOTE
A removed hook must be pressed down lightly at the same time in order to enable its reinsertion into the rail.

Removing a cargo retaining hook

1. Fold the cargo retaining hook down in the direction to which its opening points.
2. Press the hook down lightly and at the same time slide it to the cut-out opening.

WARNING
Fit the cargo retaining hooks correctly. Otherwise the cargo retaining strap will move the cargo retaining hook down so that it loosens and the strap slides off.

Cargo retaining hook correctly fitted/incorrectly fitted

Fit the cargo retaining hooks correctly!
It is important that the cargo retaining hooks are fitted correctly. The hooks’ openings must point away from each other.
Bag holder*

Bag holder under folding hatch in the floor.
The bag holder keeps carrier bags in place and prevents them from overturning and spreading their contents across the cargo area.

1. Fold up the holder, which is part of the floor hatch.
2. Fasten the bags with strap and secure the carrying handle in the hooks.

12 V electrical socket*

Lower the cover to access the electrical socket.
- The socket also provides voltage when the remote control key is not in the ignition switch.

**IMPORTANT**
Max. power takeoff is 10 A (120 W).

**NOTE**
The compressor for temporary emergency puncture repair has been tested and approved by Volvo. For information on the use of Volvo’s recommended temporary emergency puncture repair (TMK), see page 350.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
07 During your journey

Cargo area

Safety net*

Storage space, safety net cassettes.
A rollable safety net comprising two cassettes has a storage space under the cargo area floor hatch.

Securing the net cassettes

The two-part safety net cassette is secured on the rear of the backrest. The narrowest cassette is secured on the left-hand side (seen from the tailgate).

1. Fold the rear seat’s backrest forward, see page 86.
2. Align the cassette’s anchor rails in front of the backrest attachment lugs 1.
3. Slide the cassette into the attachment lugs 2.
4. Fold back and lock the backrests.
   • Removing the cassettes takes place in reverse order.

Using the safety net

Pull the net up from the cassettes. The net is self-locking after about 1 minute if the rear seat’s backrests are raised.

1. Pull up the right-hand section of the net using its strap.
2. Insert the rod in the mounting on the right-hand side and then press it forward – the rod locks in with a click.
3. Pull out the rod’s telescope section and click it in on the other side.
4. Pull up the left-hand safety net and hook it into the rod.
   • Folding up takes place in reverse order. The net can also be used when the rear seat’s backrests are folded forward.

Removing the net cassettes

1. Roll the safety nets into the cassettes in accordance with the procedure in the section entitled "Using the safety net", but in reverse.
2. Fold the whole backrest forward.
3. Slide the cassettes out until they loosen from the anchor rails.
Store the cassettes in their compartment under the cargo area floor hatch.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
**WARNING**

Loads in the cargo area must be firmly secured, even if the safety net is correctly fitted.

**Safety net combined with cargo cover**

Puller-strap for raising the net.

The safety net can also be raised from the rear seat when the cargo cover is extended.

Follow the procedure in the section entitled "Using the safety net". The straps for raising are located by the arrows.

**Safety grille**

A safety grille prevents loads or pets from being thrown forward in the passenger compartment in the event of sudden braking.

**Folding up**

Take hold of the bottom of the safety grille and pull back/up.

**IMPORTANT**

The safety grille cannot be folded up or down when a cargo cover is fitted.

**Fitting/removal**

The safety grille is normally permanently installed in the car because it can easily be folded up in the roof and so be out of the way if a longer cargo area is required. However, if desired, the safety grille can be dismantled and removed from the car.

For safety reasons, the safety grille must always be correctly fastened and secured when being refitted.

**Fitting**

The backrests must first be lowered to allow the safety grille to be fitted, see page 86.

**NOTE**

The safety grille is most easily fitted/removed by two people via the rear doors.

During fitting the handle should be on the front of the grille, see the illustrations 1, 3.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
**Cargo area**

1. Position the handle in fitting position, see illustration. Press gently on the handle to enable it to be turned into position, see arrow.

2. Press the strut in towards the grille and align the grille in the roof mounting.

3. Turn the handle 90°. Press gently as in the illustration (1) if necessary. Secure the grille by angling the handle 90°.

   - Removal of the grille takes place in reverse order.

**Cargo cover***

Pull the cargo cover over the load and hook it into the recesses at the cargo area’s rear posts.

**IMPORTANT**

The safety grille cannot be folded up or down when the cargo cover is fitted.

**Attaching the cargo cover**

1. Move one end piece of the cover into the recess on the side panel.

2. Move the other end piece into the corresponding recess.

3. Press both sides in. A "click" should be audible and the red marking should disappear.

> Check that both end pieces are locked.

**Removing the cargo cover**

1. Press in one end piece button and lift it out.

2. Carefully angle the cover up/out and the other end piece loosens automatically.

**Lowering the cargo cover’s rear sealing disc**

In its rolled-in position, the cargo cover’s rear sealing disc protrudes horizontally into the cargo area when it is fitted.

- Pull the sealing disc back gently, free from its support shelves, and lower.

*Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.*
**07 During your journey**

**Driving with a trailer**

**General**

Payload depends on the car’s kerb weight. The total of the weight of the passengers and all accessories, e.g. towbar, reduces the car’s payload by a corresponding weight. For more detailed information on weights, see page 404.

If the towing bracket is mounted by Volvo, then the car is delivered with the necessary equipment for driving with a trailer.

- The car’s towing bracket must be of an approved type.
- If the towbar is retrofitted, check with your Volvo dealer that the car is fully equipped for driving with a trailer.
- Distribute the load on the trailer so that the weight on the towing bracket complies with the specified maximum towball load.
- Increase the tyre pressure to the recommended pressure for a full load. For tyre pressure label location, see page 348.
- The engine is loaded more heavily than usual when driving with a trailer.
- Do not tow a heavy trailer when the car is brand new. Wait until it has been driven at least 1000 km.
- The brakes are loaded much more than usual on long and steep downhill slopes.

Downshift to a lower gear and adjust your speed.

- For safety reasons, the maximum permitted speed for the car when coupled with a trailer should not be exceeded. Follow the regulations in force for the permitted speeds and weights.
- Maintain a low speed when driving with a trailer up long, steep ascents.
- Avoid driving with a trailer on inclines of more than 12%.

**Trailer cable**

An adapter is required if the car’s towing bracket has 13 pin electrics and the trailer has 7 pin electrics. Use an adapter cable approved by Volvo. Make sure the cable does not drag on the ground.

**Direction indicators and brake lights on the trailer**

If any of the trailer’s lamps for direction indicators are broken, then the combined instrument panel’s symbol for direction indicators flashes faster than normal and the information display shows the text Bulb fail - Ind. signal trailer.

If any of the trailer’s lamps for the brake light are broken then the Bulb fail - Stop lamp trailer text is shown.

**Level control**

The rear shock absorbers maintain a constant height irrespective of the car’s load (up to the maximum permissible weight). When the car is stationary the rear of the car lowers slightly, which is normal.

**NOTE**

The stated maximum permitted trailer weights are those permitted by Volvo. National vehicle regulations can further limit trailer weights and speeds. Towbars can be certified for higher towing weights than the car can actually tow.

**WARNING**

Follow the stated recommendations for trailer weights. Otherwise, the car and trailer may be difficult to control in the event of sudden movement and braking.
Manual gearbox  

Overheating  
When driving with a trailer in hilly terrain in a hot climate there may be a risk of overheating.  

- Do not run the engine at higher revolutions than 4500 rpm (diesel engines: 3500 rpm) - otherwise the oil temperature may become too high.

Diesel engine 5-cyl  
- In the event of a risk of overheating the optimal speed for the engine is 2300-3000 rpm for optimal circulation of the coolant.

Automatic gearbox  

Overheating  
When driving with a trailer in hilly terrain in a hot climate there may be a risk of overheating.  

- An automatic gearbox selects the optimum gear related to load and engine speed.  
- In the event of overheating a warning symbol is illuminated in the combined instrument panel with a message that is shown in the information display - follow the recommendation given.

Steep inclines  
- Do not lock the automatic transmission in a higher gear than the engine "can cope with" - it is not always a good idea to drive at a high gear with low engine revolutions.

IMPORTANT  
See also the specific information on slow driving with trailer for cars with the Powershift automatic transmission on page 131.

Parking on a hill  
1. Depress the foot brake.  
2. Activate the parking brake.  
3. Move the gear selector to position P.  
4. Release the foot brake.  
- Move the gear selector to park position P when parking an automatic car with a hitched trailer. Always use the parking brake.  
- Block the wheels with chocks when parking a car with hitched trailer on a hill.

Starting on a hill  
1. Depress the foot brake.  
2. Move the gear selector to driving position D.

3. Release the parking brake.  
4. Release the foot brake and start driving off.

Towing bracket  
If the car is equipped with a detachable towbar, the installation instructions for the loose section must be followed carefully, see page 332.

WARNING  
If the car is fitted with a Volvo detachable towbar:  
- Follow the installation instructions carefully.  
- The detachable section must be locked with the key before setting off.  
- Check that the indicator window shows green.

Important checks  
- The towbar’s towball must be cleaned and greased regularly.

NOTE  
If a towball hitch with vibration damper is used, it is not necessary to grease the towball.
Storing the detachable towbar

**Towbar storage space.**

**IMPORTANT**

Always remove the towbar after use and store it in the appointed location in the car, firmly fastened with its strap.

**Specifications**

**Dimensions, mounting points (mm)**

<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A (V70)</td>
<td>1129</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A (XC70)</td>
<td>1113</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B (V70)</td>
<td>93</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B (XC70)</td>
<td>77</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>855</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>428</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>112</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>346</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
<td>Side member</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>Ball centre</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Driving with a trailer

Attaching the towbar

1. Remove the protective cover by first pressing in the catch and then pulling the cover straight back.

2. Ensure that the mechanism is in the unlocked position by turning the key clockwise.

3. Insert the towbar until you hear a click. The indicator window must show red.

4. Turn the key anticlockwise to locked position. Remove the key from the lock. The indicator window must show green.
7 Check that the towbar is secure by pulling it up, down and back.

**WARNING**
If the towbar is not fitted correctly then it must be detached and reattached in accordance with the previous instructions.

**IMPORTANT**
Only grease in the ball for the towing hitch, the remainder of the towbar should be clean and dry.

8 Safety cable.

**WARNING**
Be sure to attach the trailer’s safety cable to the correct place.

**Removing the towbar**

1 Insert the key and turn it clockwise to the unlocked position.

2 Push in the locking wheel and turn it anticlockwise until you hear a click.

3 Turn the locking wheel down fully, until it comes to a stop. Hold it in this position while pulling the towbar rearward and upward.

**WARNING**
Secure the towbar safely if it is stored in the car, see page 331.
Driving with a trailer

4 Push the protective cover until it snaps tight.

Trailer stabiliser - TSA¹
The TSA system (Trailer Stability Assist) serves to stabilise the car and trailer combination if it begins to snake.

The TSA function is part of the DSTC system (Dynamic Stability and Traction Control), see page 154.

Function
The snaking phenomenon can occur with any car/trailer combination. Snaking normally occurs at high speed. But, there is a risk of it occurring at lower speeds (70-90 km/h) if the trailer is overloaded or the load is improperly distributed, e.g. too far back.

In order for snaking to occur, there must be a triggering factor, e.g.:
- Car with trailer subjected to a sudden and powerful side wind.
- Car with trailer drives on an uneven road surface or in a pothole.
- Sweeping steering wheel movements.

Operation
If snaking has started, it could be difficult or even impossible to suppress. This makes the car/trailer combination difficult to control and there is a risk that you could, for example, end up in the wrong lane or leave the carriageway.

TSA system continually monitors car movements, particularly lateral movements. If snaking is detected, the front wheels are individually braked. This serves to stabilise the car/trailer combination. This is often enough to help the driver regain control of the car.

If snaking is not eliminated the first time the TSA system comes into action, the car/trailer combination is braked with all wheels and engine power is reduced. Once snaking has been gradually suppressed and the car/trailer combination is once again stable, the TSA system stops regulating and the driver once again has full control of the car.

Miscellaneous
The TSA system can engage within the speed interval 60 to 160 km/h.

NOTE
TSA function is switched off if the driver selects Sport mode, see page 154.

TSA may fail to engage if the driver uses severe steering wheel movements to try to rectify the snaking because in such a situation the TSA system cannot determine whether it is the trailer or the driver that is causing the snaking.

The DSTC symbol in the combined instrument panel flashes when the TSA system is working.

¹ Included in the installation of Volvo genuine towbar.
Towing
Find out the statutory maximum speed limit for towing before towing begins.

1. Unlock the steering lock by inserting the remote control key in the ignition switch and giving a long press on the START/STOP ENGINE button - key position II is activated, see page 81 for more information on key positions.

2. The remote control key must remain in the ignition switch while the car is being towed.

3. Keep the towline taut when the towing vehicle reduces speed by holding your foot gently pressed on the brake pedal - thereby avoiding unnecessary jerking.

4. Be prepared to brake to stop.

**WARNING**
- Check that the steering lock is unlocked before towing.
- The remote control key must be in key position II - in position I all airbags are deactivated.
- Never remove the remote control key from the ignition switch when the car is being towed.

**Manual gearbox**
Prior to towing:
- Move gear lever into neutral and release the parking brake.

**Automatic gearbox Geartronic**
Prior to towing:
- Move gear selector to position N and release the parking brake.

**WARNING**
The brake servo and power steering do not work when the engine is switched off - the brake pedal needs to be depressed about 5 times more heavily and the steering is considerably heavier than normal.

**Important**
- Note that the car must always be towed with the wheels rolling forward.
- Do not tow cars with automatic transmission at speeds higher than 80 km/h or for distances in excess of 80 km.

Prior to towing:
- Move the gear selector to position N and release the parking brake.

**Important**
- Avoid towing.
  - However, the car can be towed for a short distance at low speed to move it from a dangerous position - not further than 10 km and not faster than 10 km/h. Note that the car must always be towed with the wheels rolling forward.
  - In the event of moving a longer distance than 10 km, the car must be transported with the drive wheels raised from the road - professional recovery is recommended.

**Automatic gearbox Powershift**
The model with Powershift transmission should not be towed as it is dependent on the engine running in order to receive sufficient lubrication. If towing still has to take place, the route must be as short as possible and then with very low speed.

In the event of uncertainty as to whether or not the car is equipped with Powershift transmission, this can be verified by checking the designation on the transmission’s label under the bonnet - see page 400. The designation "MPS6" means that it is Powershift – transmission otherwise it is Geartronic automatic transmission.

Prior to towing:
- Move the gear selector to position N and release the parking brake.
07 During your journey

Towing and recovery

Jump starting
Do not tow the car to bump start the engine. Use a donor battery if the battery is discharged and the engine does not start, see page 124.

⚠️ IMPORTANT
The catalytic converter may be damaged during attempts to tow-start the engine.

Towing eye
The towing eye is screwed into a threaded socket behind a cover on the right-hand side of the bumper, front or rear.

Attaching the towing eye

1 Take out the towing eye that is located under the floor hatch in the cargo area.

2 The cover for the towing eye's attachment point is available in two variants which must be opened in different ways:
   - Open the variant with a recess using a coin or similar inserted in the recess, turning it outwards. Then turn out the cover completely and remove it.
   - The second variant has a marking along one side or in a corner: Press the marking with a finger and fold out the opposite side/corner at the same time using a coin or similar - the cover turns around its axis and can then be removed.

Screw the towing eye right in up to its flange. Turn in the towing eye firmly e.g. using the wheel wrench.

After use, unscrew the towing eye and return it to its place.

Finish by refitting the cover onto the bumper.

Recovery
Call a recovery service for recovery assistance.

The towing eye must be used to pull the car up onto a recovery vehicle with a flatbed platform if:
   - The slope of the recovery vehicle's ramp does not exceed 12 degrees from a horizontal plane
   - The car's wheels rotate freely and roll straight forward.

⚠️ WARNING
No one/thing is allowed to remain behind the recovery vehicle while the car pulled up onto the flatbed platform.

⚠️ IMPORTANT
The towing eye is only designed for towing on roads - not for pulling the car unstuck or out of a ditch. Call a recovery service for recovery assistance.
During your journey

Towing and recovery

**IMPORTANT**

Note that the car must always be transported with the wheels rolling forward.

- An All Wheel Drive car (AWD) with raised front suspension must not be towed at speeds above 70 km/h. It should not be towed further than 50 km.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>General</td>
<td>340</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Changing wheels</td>
<td>345</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tyre pressure</td>
<td>348</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warning triangle and first-aid kit*</td>
<td>349</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Emergency puncture repair (TMK)*</td>
<td>350</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
Driving characteristics

Tyres greatly affect the car’s driving characteristics. The type of tyre, dimensions, tyre pressure and speed rating are important for how the car performs.

Direction of rotation

Tyres with a tread pattern which are designed to only turn in one direction have the direction of rotation marked with an arrow. The tyre must always rotate in the same direction throughout its lifespan. Tyres should only be switched between front and rear positions, never between left and right-hand sides, or vice versa. If the tyres are fitted incorrectly, the car’s braking characteristics and capacity to force rain and slush out of the way are adversely affected.

Tyres with the greatest tread depth should always be fitted to the rear of the car (to decrease the risk of skidding).

NOTE

Ensure that tyres of the same type and dimensions, and also the same make, are fitted to all four wheels.

Follow the recommended tyre pressures specified in the tyre pressure table, see page 418.

Tyre care

Tyre age

All tyres older than 6 years old should be checked by an expert even if they seem undamaged. Tyres age and decompose, even if they are hardly ever or never used. The function can therefore be affected. This applies to all tyres that are stored for future use. Examples of external signs which indicate that the tyre is unsuitable for use are cracks or discoloration.

New tyres

Tyres are perishable. After a few years they begin to harden at the same time as the friction capacity/characteristics gradually deteriorate. For this reason, aim to get as fresh tyres as possible when you replace them. This is especially important with regard to winter tyres. The last four digits in the sequence mean the week and year of manufacture. This is the tyre’s DOT marking (Department of Transportation), and this is stated with four digits, for example 1510. The tyre in the illustration was manufactured in week 15 of 2010.

Summer and winter tyres

When summer and winter wheels are changed the wheels should be marked with
which side of the car they were mounted on, for example L for left and R for right.

**Wear and maintenance**
The correct tyre pressure results in more even wear, see page 348. Driving style, tyre pressure, climate and road condition affect how quickly your tyres age and wear. To avoid differences in tread depth and to prevent wear patterns arising, the front and rear wheels can be switched with each other. A suitable distance for the first change is approx. 5000 km and then at 10 000 km intervals. Volvo recommends that you contact an authorised Volvo workshop for checking if you are uncertain about tread depth. If significant differences in wear (>1 mm difference in tread depth) between tyres have already occurred, the least worn tyres must always be placed on the rear. Understeer is normally easier to correct than oversteer, and leads to the car continuing forwards in a straight line rather than having the rear end skidding to one side, resulting in possible complete loss of control over the car. This is why it is important for the rear wheels never to lose grip before the front wheels.

Wheels should be stored lying down or hanging up - and not standing up.

**WARNING**
A damaged tyre can lead to loss of control of the car.

**Tyres with tread wear indicators**

**Tread wear indicators.**

Tread wear indicators are narrow treadless bands across the width of the tread. On the side of the tyre are the letters TWI (Tread Wear Indicator). When the tyre’s tread depth is down to 1.6 mm, the tread depth will be level in height with the tread wear indicators. Change to new tyres as soon as possible. Remember that tyres with little tread depth provide very poor grip in rain and snow.

**Rims and wheel bolts**

**IMPORTANT**
The wheel bolts must be tightened to 140 Nm. Overtightening can damage the nuts and the bolts.

Only use rims that are tested and approved by Volvo and which are Volvo genuine accessories. Check the torque with a torque wrench.

**Locking wheel bolts**

Locking wheel bolts* can be used on both aluminium and steel rims. Under the cargo area floor there is space for the sleeve for the lockable wheel bolts.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
# Wheels and tyres

## General

### Tools

Located under the cargo area floor are the car's towing eye, jack* and wheel wrench*. There is also space for the sleeve for the lockable wheel bolts.

**Jack***

The original jack should only be used for changing to the spare wheel. The jack's thread must always be well greased.

### Tools - returning into place

The tools and jack* must be returned to their correct places after use. The jack needs to be cranked together to the correct position in order to have space.

The foam block and spare wheel are replaced in the reverse order to taking out.

Note that there is an arrow on the upper foam block. It must point forwards in the car.

### IMPORTANT

The tools and jack* must be stored in the intended location in the car's cargo area when not in use.

### NOTE

If the floor hatch in the cargo area floor is not closed then privacy locking does not work, see page 50.

### Winter tyres

Volvo recommends winter tyres with particular dimensions. Tyre dimensions are dependent on engine variant. When driving on winter tyres, the correct type of tyres must be fitted to all four wheels.

### NOTE

Volvo recommends that you consult a Volvo dealer about which wheel rim and tyre types are most suitable.

### Studded tyres

Studded winter tyres should be run in gently for 500-1000 km so the studs settle properly into the tyres. This gives the tyre, and especially the studs, a longer service life.

### NOTE

The legal provisions for the use of studded tyres vary from country to country.
Tread depth
Road conditions with ice, slush and low temperatures place considerably higher demands on tyres than summer conditions. Volvo therefore recommends not to drive on winter tyres that have a tread depth of less than 4 millimetres.

Using snow chains
Snow chains may only be used on the front wheels (also applies to all-wheel drive cars). Never drive faster than 50 km/h with snow chains. Avoid driving on bare ground as this wears out both the snow chains and tyres.

WARNING
Use Volvo genuine snow chains or equivalent chains designed for the car model, and tyre and rim dimensions. In the event of uncertainty Volvo recommends that you consult an authorised Volvo workshop. The wrong snow chains may cause serious damage to your car and lead to an accident.

Specifications
The car has whole vehicle approval. This means that certain combinations of wheels and tyres are approved. For the permissible combinations, see page 418

Wheel (rim) dimensions
Wheels (rims) have a designation of dimensions, for example: 7Jx16x50.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>7</th>
<th>Rim width in inches</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>J</td>
<td>Rim flange profile</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Rim diameter in inches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>Off-set in mm (distance from wheel centre to wheel contact surface against the hub)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Tyre dimensions
The dimensions are stated on all car tyres.

Example of designation:
225/50R17 98W.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>225</th>
<th>Tyre width (mm)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>Ratio between tyre wall height and tyre width (%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R</td>
<td>Radial ply</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>Rim diameter in inches (&quot;&quot;)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Load index
Each tyre has a certain capacity to carry a load, a load index (LI). The car’s weight determines the load capacity required of the tyres. Minimum permitted index is specified in the table, see page 418.

Speed ratings
Each tyre can withstand a certain maximum speed, a speed rating (Speed Symbol; SS).

Tyre speed class must at least correspond with the car’s top speed. Minimum permitted speed rating is specified in the table, see page 418.

The only exception to these conditions is winter tyres (both those with metal studs and those without), where a lower speed rating may be used. If such a tyre is chosen, the car must not be driven faster than the speed rating of the tyre (for example, class Q can be driven at a maximum of 160 km/h).
Traffic regulations determine how fast a car can be driven, not the speed rating of the tyres.

**NOTE**
It is the maximum permitted speed that is stated in the table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Letter</th>
<th>Speed (km/h)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Q</td>
<td>160 (used only on winter tyres)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T</td>
<td>190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>210</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V</td>
<td>240</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W</td>
<td>270</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Y</td>
<td>300</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**WARNING**
The car must be fitted with tyres which have the same or a higher load index (LI) and speed rating (SS) than specified. If a tyre with too low a load index or speed rating is used, it may overheat.
Spare wheel*

The spare wheel (Temporary spare) is only intended for use temporarily and must be replaced by an ordinary wheel as soon as possible. The car’s handling may be altered by the use of the spare wheel. The spare wheel is smaller than the normal wheel. The car’s ground clearance is affected accordingly. Pay attention to high kerbs and do not machine wash the car. If the spare wheel is fitted on the front axle, you cannot use snow chains at the same time. On all-wheel drive cars the drive on the rear axle can be disconnected. The spare wheel must not be repaired. The correct tyre pressure for the spare wheel is stated in the tyre pressure table, see page 418.

**IMPORTANT**

Never drive faster than 80 km/h with a spare wheel on the car.

**IMPORTANT**

The car must never be driven fitted with more than one temporary spare wheel.

The spare wheel is located in the spare wheel well with the outside down. The same bolt runs through to secure the spare wheel and the foam block. The foam block contains all the tools.

**Taking out the spare wheel**

1. Fold up the cargo area floor, from the rear and forwards.
2. Undo the retaining screw.
3. Lift out the foam block with its tools.
4. Lift out the spare wheel.

**Removing**

Set up the warning triangle, see page 349 if a wheel must be replaced at a busy location. The car and jack* must be on a firm horizontal surface.

1. Apply the parking brake and engage reverse gear, or position P if the car has an automatic gearbox.

**NOTE**

Volvo recommends only using the jack* that belongs to the car model in question, which is indicated on the jack's label. The label also indicates the jack’s maximum lift capacity at a specified minimum lifting height.

2. Take out the jack*, wheel wrench* and removal tool for wheel covers* located under the cargo floor in the cargo area. If another jack is selected, see page 358.

3. Place chocks in front of and behind the wheels which will remain on the ground. Use heavy wooden blocks or large stones for example.

4. Cars with steel rims have removable wheel covers. Use the removal tool to hook in and pull off any full-wheel wheel covers. Alternatively, the wheel covers can be pulled away by hand.

**WARNING**

Check that the jack is not damaged, that the threads are thoroughly lubricated and that it is free from dirt.
Changing wheels

5. Screw together the towing eye with the wheel wrench* until the stop position as illustrated below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IMPORTANT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The towing eye must be screwed into all threads in the wheel bolt wrench.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6. Loosen the wheel bolts ½-1 turn anti-clockwise with the wheel wrench.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>WARNING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Never position anything between the ground and the jack, nor between the jack and the car's jacking point.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7. There are two jacking points on each side of the car. There is a recess in the plastic cover at each point. Crank the foot of the jack down so it is pressed squarely on the ground.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IMPORTANT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The ground must be firm, smooth and level.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

8. Lift the car so that the wheel is free. Remove the wheel bolts and lift off the wheel.

**Installation**

1. Clean the contact surfaces between wheel and hub.

2. Put on the wheel. Tighten the wheel bolts thoroughly.

3. Lower the car so that the wheels cannot rotate.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
4. Tighten the wheel bolts crosswise. It is important that the wheel bolts are tightened properly. Tighten to 140 Nm. Check the torque with a torque wrench.

5. Refit any full wheel covers.

**NOTE**
The wheel cover outlet for the valve must be positioned over the valve on the wheel rim during fitting.

**WARNING**
Never crawl under the car when it is raised on the jack.
Passengers must leave the car when it is raised on the jack.
Park the car so that passengers have the car - or preferably a crash barrier - between them and the road.

**NOTE**
The car's regular jack is designed only for use occasionally and for a short time, such as when changing a wheel with a punctured tyre, switching between summer tyres and winter tyres, etc. Only the jack belonging to the specific model is to be used to jack up the car. If the car is to be jacked up more often, or for a longer time than is required just to change a wheel, use of a garage jack is recommended. In this instance, follow the instructions for use that come with the equipment.
Tyre pressure

The tyre pressure decal on the driver’s side door pillar (between frame and rear door) shows which pressures the tyres should have at different loads and speed conditions. This is also specified in the tyre pressure table, see page 418.

- Tyre pressure for the car’s recommended tyre dimension
- ECO pressure¹
- Spare wheel tyre pressure (Temporary Spare)

NOTE

Temperature differences change the tyre pressure.

¹ ECO pressure results in improved fuel economy.

Fuel economy, ECO pressure

In order to obtain optimum fuel economy at speeds below 160 km/h an ECO pressure is recommended (applies to both full and light load - see page 418).

Checking the tyre pressure

The tyre pressures must be checked every month.

This also applies to the car’s spare wheel.

Check tyre pressures on cold tyres. “Cold tyres” means the tyres are the same temperature as the ambient temperature. After several few kilometres of driving, the tyres warm up and the pressure increases.

Inadequate tyre pressure increases fuel consumption, shortens tyre lifespan and impairs the car’s roadholding. Driving on tyres with tyre pressure that is too low could result in the tyres overheating and being damaged.

Tyre pressure affects travelling comfort, road noise and steering characteristics.

NOTE

Tyre pressure decreases over time, this is a natural phenomenon. Tyre pressure also varies depending on ambient temperature.
Warning triangle and first-aid kit*

**Warning triangle**

1. Lift the floor hatch and take out the warning triangle.
2. Take the warning triangle from the case, fold out and assemble the two loose sides.
3. Fold out the warning triangle’s support legs.

Follow the regulations for the use of a warning triangle. Position the warning triangle in a suitable place with regard to traffic. Ensure the warning triangle and its case are properly secured in the cargo area after use.

**NOTE**

If the car has been locked with privacy locking then the boot lid/tailgate and floor hatch cannot be opened, see page 50.

**First aid kit**

A case with first aid equipment is located under the floor in the cargo area.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
Emergency puncture repair (TMK)*

General

Emergency puncture repair (TMK; Temporary Mobility Kit) is used to seal a puncture and check and adjust tyre pressure. It consists of a compressor and a bottle with sealing fluid. The kit works as a temporary repair. The sealing fluid bottle must be replaced before its expiration date and after use.

The sealing fluid effectively seals tyres punctured in the tread.

NOTE
The emergency puncture repair kit is only intended for sealing tyres with a puncture in the tread.

The emergency puncture repair kit has limited capacity to seal tyres which have punctures in the wall. Do not seal tyres with the emergency puncture repair kit if they have larger slits, cracks or similar damage.

Connect the compressor to one of the car’s 12 V sockets. Choose the socket that is nearest to the punctured tyre.

IMPORTANT
If the compressor for emergency puncture repair is connected to one of the two sockets in the tunnel console, see page 250, no other current consumer must be connected to the other one.

NOTE
The compressor for temporary emergency puncture repair has been tested and approved by Volvo.

Location of the emergency puncture repair kit
Set up the warning triangle (see page 349) if a tyre is being sealed in a trafficked location. The emergency puncture repair kit is located under the floor in the cargo area.

WARNING
You should not drive faster than 80 km/h after the emergency tyre repair kit has been used. Volvo recommends that you visit an authorised Volvo workshop for inspection of the sealed tyre (maximum driving distance is 200 km). The staff there can determine whether or not the tyre can be repaired or if it needs to be replaced.

Overview

1 Label, maximum permitted speed
2 Switch
3 Cable
4
5
6
7
8

1 Option only in certain markets.
**Emergency puncture repair (TMK)**

**WARNING**
You should not drive faster than 80 km/h after the emergency tyre repair kit has been used. Volvo recommends that you visit an authorised Volvo workshop for inspection of the sealed tyre (maximum driving distance is 200 km). The staff there can determine whether or not the tyre can be repaired or if it needs to be replaced.

**WARNING**
The sealing fluid can irritate the skin. In the case of contact with skin, wash away the fluid with soap and water.

1. Detach the label for maximum permitted speed (which is fitted on one side of the compressor) and affix it to the steering wheel.

**NOTE**
Do not break the bottle's seal before use. The seal is broken automatically when the bottle is screwed in.

2. Check that the switch is in position 0 and locate the cable and the air hose.

3. Unscrew the orange cap and unscrew the bottle's stopper.

4. Screw the bottle into its holder.

---

4 Bottle holder (orange cap)
5 Protective cap
6 Pressure reducing valve
7 Air hose
8 Sealing fluid bottle
9 Pressure gauge

---

For information on the function of the parts, see preceding illustration.
Emergency puncture repair (TMK)*

**WARNING**
Do not unscrew the bottle, it is equipped with a reverse catch to prevent leakage.

5. Connect the hose from the compressor to the valve.

6. Plug the cable into the 12 V socket and start the car.

**NOTE**
If the compressor is connected to one of the two 12 V sockets, in the tunnel console, no other current consumer must be connected to the other one.

**WARNING**
Do not leave children in the car without supervision when the engine is running.

7. Flick the switch to position I.

8. Inflate the tyre for 7 minutes.

**IMPORTANT**
Risk of overheating. The compressor must not run for more than 10 minutes.

9. Switch off the compressor to check the pressure on the pressure gauge. Minimum pressure is 1.8 bar and maximum 3.5 bar. (Release air with the pressure reducing valve if the tyre pressure is too high.)

**WARNING**
Never stand next to the tyre when the compressor is running. If cracks or unevenness arise then the compressor must be switched off immediately. The journey should not be continued. Contacting an authorised tyre centre is recommended.

10. Switch off the compressor and unplug the cable from the 12 V socket.

11. Detach the hose from the tyre valve and fit the valve cap.

12. As soon as possible, drive approximately 3 km at a maximum speed of 80 km/h so that the sealing fluid can seal the tyre.

**Rechecking the repair and pressure**
1. Reconnect the equipment.
2. Read the tyre pressure on the pressure gauge.
   - If it is below 1.3 bar then the tyre is insufficiently sealed. The journey should not be continued. Contact a tyre centre.
   - If the tyre pressure is higher than 1.3 bar, the tyre must be inflated to the pressure specified in accordance with the tyre pressure table, see page 418 (1 bar=100 kPa). Release air using the

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
Wheels and tyres

Emergency puncture repair (TMK)*

Do not unscrew the bottle, it is equipped with a reverse catch to prevent leakage.

WARNING

Do not unscrew the bottle, it is equipped with a reverse catch to prevent leakage.

3. Make sure the compressor is switched off. Detach the air hose and cable.

Fit the valve cap.

NOTE

The sealing fluid bottle and the hose must be replaced after use. Volvo recommends that this replacement is performed by an authorised Volvo workshop.

WARNING

Check the tyre pressure regularly.

Inflating the tyres

The car’s original tyres can be inflated by the compressor.

1. The compressor must be switched off. Make sure that the switch is in position 0 and locate the cable and air hose.

2. Unscrew the wheel’s dust cap and screw in the air hose valve connection to the bottom of the thread on the tyre’s air valve.

WARNING

You should not drive faster than 80 km/h after the emergency tyre repair kit has been used. Volvo recommends that you visit an authorised Volvo workshop for inspection of the sealed tyre (maximum driving distance is 200 km). The staff there can determine whether or not the tyre can be repaired or if it needs to be replaced.

WARNING

Inhaling car exhaust fumes can result in danger to life. Never leave the engine running in sealed areas or areas that lack sufficient ventilation.

WARNING

Do not leave children in the car without supervision when the engine is running.

3. Connect the cable to one of the car’s 12 V sockets and start the car.

4. Start the compressor by flicking the switch to position I.

IMPORTANT

Risk of overheating. The compressor must not run for more than 10 minutes.

5. Inflate the tyre to the pressure specified in accordance with the tyre pressure table, see page 418. (Release air using the pressure reducing valve if the tyre pressure is too high.)

6. Switch off the compressor. Detach the air hose and cable.

7. Refit the dust cap.

Volvo recommends that you drive to the nearest authorised Volvo workshop for the replacement/repair of the damaged tyre. Advise the workshop that the tyre contains sealing fluid.

WARNING

You should not drive faster than 80 km/h after the emergency tyre repair kit has been used. Volvo recommends that you visit an authorised Volvo workshop for inspection of the sealed tyre (maximum driving distance is 200 km). The staff there can determine whether or not the tyre can be repaired or if it needs to be replaced.

WARNING

Do not unscrew the bottle, it is equipped with a reverse catch to prevent leakage.

3. Make sure the compressor is switched off. Detach the air hose and cable.

Fit the valve cap.

NOTE

The sealing fluid bottle and the hose must be replaced after use. Volvo recommends that this replacement is performed by an authorised Volvo workshop.

WARNING

Check the tyre pressure regularly.

Inflating the tyres

The car’s original tyres can be inflated by the compressor.

1. The compressor must be switched off. Make sure that the switch is in position 0 and locate the cable and air hose.

2. Unscrew the wheel’s dust cap and screw in the air hose valve connection to the bottom of the thread on the tyre’s air valve.

WARNING

Inhaling car exhaust fumes can result in danger to life. Never leave the engine running in sealed areas or areas that lack sufficient ventilation.

WARNING

Do not leave children in the car without supervision when the engine is running.

3. Connect the cable to one of the car’s 12 V sockets and start the car.

4. Start the compressor by flicking the switch to position I.

IMPORTANT

Risk of overheating. The compressor must not run for more than 10 minutes.

5. Inflate the tyre to the pressure specified in accordance with the tyre pressure table, see page 418. (Release air using the pressure reducing valve if the tyre pressure is too high.)

6. Switch off the compressor. Detach the air hose and cable.

7. Refit the dust cap.

Volvo recommends that you drive to the nearest authorised Volvo workshop for the replacement/repair of the damaged tyre. Advise the workshop that the tyre contains sealing fluid.
Emergency puncture repair (TMK)*

Replacing the sealing fluid canister
Replace the bottle when the expiration date has passed. Treat the old bottle as environmentally hazardous waste.

⚠️ WARNING
The bottle contains 1,2-Ethanol and natural rubber-latex.
Harmful if ingested. Could result in allergic reaction in the event of skin contact.
Avoid contact with the skin and eyes.
Store out of the reach of children.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Engine compartment</td>
<td>358</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lamps</td>
<td>366</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wiper blades and washer fluid</td>
<td>372</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Battery</td>
<td>375</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuses</td>
<td>380</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Car care</td>
<td>392</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
MAINTENANCE AND SERVICE
Engine compartment

General

Volvo service programme
To keep the car as safe and reliable as possible, follow the Volvo service programme as specified in the Service and Warranty Booklet. Volvo recommends engaging an authorised Volvo workshop to perform the service and maintenance work. Volvo workshops have the personnel, special tools and service literature to guarantee the highest quality of service.

IMPORTANT
For the Volvo warranty to apply, check and follow the instructions in the Service and Warranty Booklet.

Check regularly
Check the following oils and fluids at regular intervals, e.g. when refuelling:
- Coolant
- Engine oil
- Power steering fluid
- Washer fluid

WARNING
Remember that the radiator fan (located at the front of the engine compartment, behind the radiator) may start automatically some after the engine has been switched off.
Always have the engine cleaned by a workshop. There is a risk of fire if the engine is hot.

Raising the car

NOTE
Volvo recommends only using the jack that belongs to the car model in question. If a jack is selected other than the one recommended by Volvo, follow the instructions for use supplied with the equipment.

If the car is raised with a workshop jack; position the jack against the front edge on the engine’s subframe.

Do not damage the splashguard under the engine. Ensure that the workshop jack is positioned so that the car cannot slide off the jack. Always use axle stands or similar.

If you raise the car using a two-pillar workshop lift, ensure that the front and rear lift arms are fixed under the lifting points. See preceding illustration.
Opening and closing the bonnet

1. Pull the handle by the pedals. You will hear when the catch releases.

2. Move the catch to the left and open the bonnet. (The catch hook is located between the headlamp and grille, see illustration.)

![Image of bonnet opening process]

**WARNING**
Check that the bonnet locks properly when closed.

**Engine compartment, overview**

1. Coolant expansion tank
2. Power steering fluid reservoir
3. Engine oil dipstick
4. Radiator
5. Filling engine oil
6. Reservoir for brake and clutch fluid (located on the driver’s side)
7. Battery
8. Relay and fuse box
9. Filling washer fluid
10. Air filter

**WARNING**
The appearance of the engine compartment may vary depending on engine variant.

- Engines with electronic oil level sensor have no dipstick (5-cyl. diesel).
Checking the engine oil

Volvo recommends Castrol oil products.

When driving under adverse conditions, see page 410.

**IMPORTANT**

In order to fulfil the requirements for the engine's service intervals all engines are filled with a specially adapted synthetic engine oil at the factory. The choice of oil has been made very carefully with regard to service life, starting characteristics, fuel consumption and environmental impact.

An approved engine oil must be used in order that the recommended service intervals can be applied. Only use a prescribed grade of oil for both filling and oil change, otherwise you will risk affecting service life, starting characteristics, fuel consumption and environmental impact.

Volvo Car Corporation disclaims all warranty liability if engine oil of the prescribed grade and viscosity is not used.

Volvo recommends that oil changes are carried out at an authorised Volvo workshop.

Volvo uses different systems for warning of low/high oil level or low/high oil pressure. Certain variants have an oil pressure sensor, and then the combined instrument panel’s warning symbol for low oil pressure is used. Other variants have an oil level sensor, when the driver is informed via the instrument’s warning symbol and display texts. Certain variants have both systems. Contact a Volvo dealer for more information.

Change the engine oil and oil filter in accordance with the intervals specified in the Service and Warranty Booklet.

Using oil of a higher than specified grade is permitted. If the car is driven in adverse conditions, Volvo recommends using an oil of a higher grade, see page 410.

For capacities, see page 411 and onwards.

**Engine with oil dipstick**

Volvo uses different systems for warning of low/high oil level or low/high oil pressure. Certain variants have an oil pressure sensor, and then the combined instrument panel’s warning symbol for low oil pressure is used. Other variants have an oil level sensor, when the driver is informed via the instrument’s warning symbol and display texts. Certain variants have both systems. Contact a Volvo dealer for more information.

Change the engine oil and oil filter in accordance with the intervals specified in the Service and Warranty Booklet.

Using oil of a higher than specified grade is permitted. If the car is driven in adverse conditions, Volvo recommends using an oil of a higher grade, see page 410.

For capacities, see page 411 and onwards.

**Engine with oil dipstick**

Volvo uses different systems for warning of low/high oil level or low/high oil pressure. Certain variants have an oil pressure sensor, and then the combined instrument panel’s warning symbol for low oil pressure is used. Other variants have an oil level sensor, when the driver is informed via the instrument’s warning symbol and display texts. Certain variants have both systems. Contact a Volvo dealer for more information.

Change the engine oil and oil filter in accordance with the intervals specified in the Service and Warranty Booklet.

Using oil of a higher than specified grade is permitted. If the car is driven in adverse conditions, Volvo recommends using an oil of a higher grade, see page 410.

For capacities, see page 411 and onwards.

**Engine with oil dipstick**

Volvo uses different systems for warning of low/high oil level or low/high oil pressure. Certain variants have an oil pressure sensor, and then the combined instrument panel’s warning symbol for low oil pressure is used. Other variants have an oil level sensor, when the driver is informed via the instrument’s warning symbol and display texts. Certain variants have both systems. Contact a Volvo dealer for more information.

Change the engine oil and oil filter in accordance with the intervals specified in the Service and Warranty Booklet.

Using oil of a higher than specified grade is permitted. If the car is driven in adverse conditions, Volvo recommends using an oil of a higher grade, see page 410.

For capacities, see page 411 and onwards.

**Engine with oil dipstick**

Volvo uses different systems for warning of low/high oil level or low/high oil pressure. Certain variants have an oil pressure sensor, and then the combined instrument panel’s warning symbol for low oil pressure is used. Other variants have an oil level sensor, when the driver is informed via the instrument’s warning symbol and display texts. Certain variants have both systems. Contact a Volvo dealer for more information.

Change the engine oil and oil filter in accordance with the intervals specified in the Service and Warranty Booklet.

Using oil of a higher than specified grade is permitted. If the car is driven in adverse conditions, Volvo recommends using an oil of a higher grade, see page 410.

For capacities, see page 411 and onwards.

**Engine with oil dipstick**
Checking the oil level in a new car is especially important before the first scheduled oil change.

Volvo recommends checking the oil level every 2 500 km. The most accurate measurements are made on a cold engine before starting. The measurement will be inaccurate if taken immediately after the engine is switched off. The dipstick will indicate that the level is too low because the oil has not had time to flow down into the oil sump.

### Measurement and filling if required

1. Ensure that the car is level. After switching off the engine it is important to wait 5 minutes to allow the oil time to run back to the sump.
2. Pull up and wipe the dipstick.
3. Re-insert the dipstick.
4. Pull it out and check the level.
5. If the level is close to **MIN** then 0.5 litres should be added. If the level is significantly below, then an additional amount is required.
6. If required, check the level again, do it after driving a short distance. Then repeat steps 1 - 4.

**WARNING**

Never fill above the **MAX** mark. The level should never be above **MAX** or below **MIN** as this could lead to engine damage.

**WARNING**

Do not spill oil onto the hot exhaust manifold due to the risk of fire.

---

3 Only applies to 5-cyl. diesel.
4 Engines with electronic oil level sensor have no dipstick (5-cyl. diesel).
Engine compartment

Message and graph in the display. The left-hand display shows the digital combined instrument panel and the right-hand the analogue.

1 Message
2 Engine oil level

The oil level is checked using the electronic oil level gauge with the thumbwheel when the engine is switched off, see page 362.

**WARNING**

If the message Oil service required is shown, visit a workshop. The oil level may be too high.

**IMPORTANT**

In the event of the message Oil level low Refill 0.5 litre, only fill with 0.5 litres.

**NOTE**

The oil level is only detected by the system during driving. The system cannot directly detect changes when the oil is filled or drained. The car must be driven about 30 km before the oil level display is correct.

**WARNING**

Do not fill more oil if filling level (3) or (4) appears as shown in the illustration below. The level must never be above MAX or below MIN, as this could lead to engine damage.

**WARNING**

Do not spill oil onto the hot exhaust manifold due to the risk of fire.

Measuring the oil level

If the oil level needs to be checked then it should be carried out in accordance with the sequence below.

1. Activate key position II, see page 81.
2. Rotate the thumbwheel on the left-hand stalk switch to position Oil level.

For more information on menu management, see page 210.

The figures 1-4 represent filling level. Do not fill more oil if filling level (3) or (4) is shown. Recommended filling level is 4. Message and graph in the display. The left-hand display shows the digital combined instrument panel and the right-hand the analogue.
Coolant

Checking the level and topping up

When topping up the coolant, follow the instructions on the packaging. It is important that the mixture of coolant concentrate and water is correct for the prevailing weather conditions. Never top up with water only. The risk of freezing increases with both too little and too much coolant concentrate.

WARNING
Coolant can be very hot. If the coolant requires topping up when the engine is at operating temperature, unscrew the expansion tank cap slowly to gently release the overpressure.

For capacities and for standards regarding water quality, see page 413.

Check the coolant regularly
The level must lie between the MIN and MAX marks on the expansion tank. If the system is not filled sufficiently, high temperatures could occur, causing a risk of damage to the engine.

IMPORTANT
- A high content of chlorine, chlorides and other salts may cause corrosion in the cooling system.
- Always use coolant with anti-corrosion agent as recommended by Volvo.
- Ensure that the coolant mixture is 50% water and 50% coolant.
- Mix the coolant with approved quality tap water. In the event of any doubt about water quality, used ready-mixed coolant in accordance with Volvo recommendations.
- When changing coolant/replacing cooling system components, flush the cooling system clean with approved quality tap water or flush with ready-mixed coolant.
- The engine must only be run with a well-filled cooling system. Otherwise, temperatures that are too high may occur resulting in the risk of damage (cracks) in the cylinder head.
Brake and clutch fluid

Checking the level
Brake and clutch fluid have a common reservoir. The level must be between the MIN and MAX marks that are visible inside the reservoir. Check the level regularly.

Change the brake fluid every other year or at every other regular service.

For capacities and recommended fluid grade, see page 413. The fluid should be changed annually on cars driven in conditions requiring hard, frequent braking, such as driving in mountains or tropical climates with high humidity.

**WARNING**
If the brake fluid is under the MIN level in the brake fluid reservoir, do not drive further before topping up the brake fluid. Volvo recommends that the reason for the loss of brake fluid is investigated by an authorised Volvo workshop.

### Filling

1. **Turn and open the cover located on the covering.**
2. **Unscrew the reservoir cap and fill the fluid.** The level must be between the MIN and MAX marks, which are located on the inside of the reservoir.

**IMPORTANT**
Do not forget to refit the cap.

### Power steering fluid

**NOTE**
If a fault should arise in the power steering system or if the engine is switched off and the car must be towed, it can still be steered.
Air conditioning system

Troubleshooting and repair
The air conditioning system contains fluorescent tracing agents. Use ultraviolet light when looking for leaks.

Volvo recommends that you contact an authorised Volvo workshop.

⚠️ WARNING
The air conditioning system contains pressurised refrigerant R134a. This system must only be serviced and repaired by an authorised workshop.
Lamps

General
The bulbs are specified, see page 371. The following list contains locations of bulbs and other light sources that are specialised, such as LED\(^1\) lamps, or are unsuitable for changing for some other reason, except at a workshop:

- Active Xenon headlamps - ABL (Xenon lamps)
- Position/parking lamps front
- Daytime running lights
- Side direction indicators, door mirrors on the V70
- Approach lighting, door mirrors
- Interior lighting
- Glovebox lighting
- Position/parking lamps rear
- Side marker lamps rear
- Brake light
- Reversing lamp
- Rear fog lamp.

\(^1\) LED (Light Emitting Diode)

**WARNING**
On cars with Xenon headlamps, the replacement of Xenon lamps must be carried out at a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended. Working with Xenon lamps demands extreme caution because the headlamp is equipped with a high voltage unit.

**WARNING**
The car’s electrical system must be in key position 0 when replacing bulbs, see page 81

**IMPORTANT**
Never touch the glass part of the bulbs with your fingers. Grease and oils from your fingers are vaporised by the heat, coating the reflector and then causing damage.

**NOTE**
Outside lighting such as headlamps, fog lamps and rear lamps may temporarily have condensation on the inside of the lens. This is normal, all exterior lighting is designed to withstand this. Condensation is normally vented out of the lamp housing when the lamp has been switched on for a time.

**Headlamps front**
All of the headlamp bulbs are replaced via the engine compartment. Loosen and remove the whole headlamp.

**Removing the headlamp**
Set the car’s electrical system in key position 0, see page 81.
1. Pull out the headlamp’s locking pins.
2. Pull the headlamp straight forward.

**IMPORTANT**
Do not pull the electrical cable, only the connector.

3. Detach the headlamp connector by pressing down the clip with your thumb.
4. At the same time, guide out the connector with your other hand.
5. Lift out the headlamp and place it on a soft surface to avoid scratching the lens.
6. Replace the bulb in question.

**Securing the headlamp**
1. Plug in the connector, a clicking sound should be heard.
2. Reinstall the headlamp and locking pins. Check that they are correctly inserted.
3. Check the lighting.

The headlamp must be mounted and the connector correctly installed before the lighting is switched on or the remote control key is inserted into the ignition switch.

**Removing the cover**

1. Detach the headlamp, see page 366.
2. Remove the cover.
3. Unplug the connector from the bulb.
4. Detach the bulb by pressing the holder downwards.
5. Fit the new bulb in the socket and snap it in. It can be secured in one position.

Reinstall the parts in reverse order.

**Dipped beam, halogen**

Before starting to replace a bulb, see page 366.

1. Open the lock clamp by pressing up/out.
2. Press down the clips on the cover and remove it.

Reinstall the cover in reverse order.
**Lamps**

**Main beam, Halogen**

1. Detach the headlamp.
2. Remove the cover, see page 367.
3. Detach the bulb by turning anticlockwise and then pulling straight out.
4. Unplug the connector from the bulb.
5. Replace the bulb and align it in the socket and turn clockwise in order to secure it. It can be secured in one position.

Reinstall the parts in reverse order.

**Extra main beam, ABL headlamps**

1. Detach the headlamp.
2. Remove the cover, see page 367.
3. Detach the bulb by pressing the holder downwards.
4. Unplug the connector from the bulb.
5. Fit the new bulb in the socket and snap it in. It can only be secured in one position.

Reinstall the parts in reverse order.

**Direction indicators**

1. Detach the headlamp.
2. Remove the small round cover.
3. Pull the bulb holder in order to extract the bulb.
4. Remove the blown bulb and fit a new one. It can only be installed in one way.
5. Fit the bulb holder in the socket and press until a clicking sound is heard.
6. Refit the cover. It must be fitted and pressed in until a clicking sound is heard.

Reinstall the parts in reverse order.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
Side marker lamps

Before starting to replace a bulb, see page 366.
1. Detach the headlamp.
2. Remove the small round cover.
3. Pull the cable in order to withdraw the bulb holder.
4. Remove the blown bulb and fit a new one. It can only be installed in one way.
5. Fit the bulb holder in the socket and press until a clicking sound is heard.
6. Refit the cover. It must be fitted and pressed in until a clicking sound is heard.

Reinstall the parts in reverse order.

Lamp housing, rear

The direction indicator bulb in the rear lamp cluster is replaced from inside the cargo area.
1. Open the panel.
2. Remove the insulation by pulling it straight out.
3. Loosen the bulb holder by turning its handle anticlockwise.
4. Detach the bulb by pulling it straight out.

Location of rear bulbs

1. Position/parking lights (LED)
2. Brake light (LED)
3. Indicator
4. Side marker lamps (LED)
5. Reversing lamp
6. Rear fog lamp
7. Brake light (LED)
Lamps

Number plate lighting
1. Remove the screws with a screwdriver.
2. Carefully detach the whole lamp housing and withdraw it.
3. Replace the bulb.
4. Refit the whole lamp housing and screw it into place.

Lighting in the cargo area
1. Insert a screwdriver and gently prize so that the lamp housing comes loose.
2. Replace the bulb.
3. Check that the bulb illuminates and press back the lamp housing.

Vanity mirror lighting

Removal of lamp lens
1. Insert a screwdriver under the lamp lens and gently prize up the lock lugs on the edge.
2. Snap off the lamp lens.
3. Use needle-nose pliers to pull the bulb straight out to the side and replace with a new one. Note! - Do not pinch hard with the pliers. Otherwise the lamp lens could then be crushed.

Attaching the lamp lens
1. Refit the lamp lens.
2. Press it into place.
### Specifications of bulbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lighting</th>
<th>WA</th>
<th>Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dipped beam, halogen</td>
<td>55</td>
<td>H7 LL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Main beam, Halogen</td>
<td>65</td>
<td>H9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Extra main beam, ABL</td>
<td>55</td>
<td>H7 LL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Front direction indicators</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>H21W LL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Side marker lamps front</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>W5W LL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Side direction indicators, door mir-</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>WY5W LL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rors&lt;sup&gt;B&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glovebox lighting</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>Socket SV8.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Length 43 mm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vanity mirror lighting</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>T5 Socket</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>W2x4.6d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cargo area lighting</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>Socket SV8.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Length 43 mm</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Lighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lighting</th>
<th>WA</th>
<th>Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Number plate lighting</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>C5W LL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Direction indicators, rear</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>PY21W SV</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>A</sup> Watt  
<sup>B</sup> Replacement of bulbs only on the XC70. The V70 is equipped with LED lamps.
Wiper blades and washer fluid

Wiper blades

Service position

In order to change, clean or lift the wiper blades (for scraping off ice from the windshield, for example) they must be in service position.

**IMPORTANT**
Before placing the wiper blades in the service position, make sure that they are not frozen down.

1. Insert the remote control key in the ignition switch¹ and briefly press the **START/STOP ENGINE** button to set the car’s electrical system to key position I. (For detailed information on key positions, see page 81.)

2. Briefly press the **START/STOP ENGINE** button again to set the car’s electrical system in key position 0.

3. Within 3 seconds, move the right stalk switch up and hold it in position for approx. 1 second.
   > The wipers then move to standing straight up.

The wipers return to their starting position when you briefly press the **START/STOP ENGINE** button to set the car’s electrical system to key position I (or when the car is started).

**IMPORTANT**
If the wiper arms in service position have been folded up from the windshield, they must be folded back down onto the windshield before the wipers are allowed to return to their starting position. This is to avoid scraping the paint on the bonnet.

¹ Not necessary in cars with Keyless function.
Fold up the wiper arm when it is in service position. Press the button located on the wiper blade mounting and pull straight out parallel with the wiper arm.

Slide in the new wiper blade until a "click" is heard.

Check that the blade is firmly installed.

Fold the wiper arm back towards the windscreen.

The wipers return from service position to their starting position when you briefly press the START/STOP ENGINE button to set the car’s electrical system to key position I (or when the car is started).

NOTE

The wiper blades are different lengths. The blade on the driver’s side is longer than the blade on the passenger side.

Replacing the wiper blades, rear window

1. Fold out the wiper arm.
2. Grip the inner section of the blade (by the arrow).
3. Turn anticlockwise to use the blade’s end position against the wiper arm as a lever to detach the blade more easily.
4. Press the new wiper blade into position.
5. Check that it is firmly installed.
6. Lower the wiper arm.

Cleaning

For cleaning wiper blades and windscreen, see page 392 and onwards.

IMPORTANT

Check the wiper blades regularly. Neglected maintenance shortens the service life of the wiper blades.

Filling washer fluid

The windscreen and headlamp washers share a common reservoir.
Wiper blades and washer fluid

**IMPORTANT**

Use washer fluid with antifreeze during the winter to avoid freezing in the pump, reservoir and hoses.

For capacities, see page 413.
Operation
The service life and function of the battery is influenced by factors such as the number of starts, discharging, driving style, driving conditions, climatic conditions etc.
- Never disconnect the battery when the engine is running.
- Check that the cables to the battery are correctly connected and properly tightened.

WARNING
- The battery can generate oxyhydrogen gas, which is highly explosive. A spark can be formed if a jump lead is connected incorrectly, and this can be enough for the battery to explode.
- The battery contains sulphuric acid, which can cause serious burns.
- If sulphuric acid comes into contact with eyes, skin or clothing, flush with large quantities of water. If acid splashes into the eyes - seek medical attention immediately.

NOTE
The life of the battery is shortened if it becomes discharged repeatedly.
The life of the battery is affected by several factors, including driving conditions and climate. Battery starting capacity decreases gradually with time and therefore needs to be recharged if the car is not used for a longer time or when it is only driven short distances. Extreme cold further limits starting capacity.

To maintain the battery in good condition, at least 15 minutes of driving/week is recommended or that the battery is connected to a battery charger with automatic trickle charging.

A battery that is kept fully charged has a maximum service life.

IMPORTANT
Never use a quick charger to charge the battery.

IMPORTANT
If the following instruction is not observed then the energy saving function for infotainment system may be temporarily dis-engaged, and/or the message in the combined instrument panel's information display about the starter battery's state of charge may be temporarily inapplicable, following the connection of an external battery or battery charger:
- The negative battery terminal on the car's starter battery must never be used for connecting an external battery or battery charger - only the car chassis may be used as the grounding point.

See the section "Start assistance" - for a description of how the cable clamps must be attached.
## Battery

### Symbols on the battery

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Icon</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Protective Goggles" /></td>
<td>Use protective goggles.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Further Information" /></td>
<td>Further information in the owner’s manual.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Store Out of Reach" /></td>
<td>Store the battery out of the reach of children.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Battery Contains Corrosive Acid" /></td>
<td>The battery contains corrosive acid.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Avoid sparks and naked flames.

### Risk of explosion.

### Must be taken for recycling.

### NOTE

An expended battery must be recycled in an environmentally responsible manner - it contains lead.

### Replacing the starter battery

**Removal**

*First of all:* Take the remote control key from the ignition switch and wait at least 5 minutes before any electrical connections are touched - this is because the car’s electrical system needs to store the necessary information to control modules.

1. ![Removal Step 1](image)
2. ![Removal Step 2](image)
Open the clips on the front cover and remove the cover.

2. Release the rubber moulding so that the rear cover is free.

3. Remove the rear cover by screwing one quarter turn and lifting it away.

**WARNING**

Connect and remove the positive and negative cables in the correct order.

4. Detach the black negative cable.

5. Detach the red positive cable.

6. Detach the ventilation hose from the battery.

7. Loosen the screw holding the battery clamp.

8. Move the battery to the side and lift it up.

**Fitting**

1. Lower the battery into the battery box.

2. Move the battery inward and to the side until it reaches the rear edge of the box.

3. Tighten the clamp that holds the battery.

4. Connect the ventilation hose.
   > Check that it is correctly connected to both battery and outlet in the body.

5. Connect the red positive cable.

6. Connect the black negative cable.

7. Press in the rear cover. (See Removal.)

8. Fit the rubber moulding. (See Removal.)

9. Align the front cover and secure it with the clips. (See removal.)

For more information on the car’s starter battery - see page 419.
Battery

Start/Stop

Cars with the Start/Stop function are equipped with two 12 V batteries - one extra powerful battery for starting and one support battery that helps during the Start/Stop function’s starting sequence.

For more information on Start/Stop - see page 134.

For more information on the car’s starter battery - see page 124 and 419.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Battery</th>
<th>Start</th>
<th>Support</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cold start capacity(^A), CCA (A)</td>
<td>760</td>
<td>180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Size(^B), LxWxH (mm)</td>
<td>278x175x190</td>
<td>150x90x130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Capacity (Ah)</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^A\) In accordance with the SAE standard.
\(^B\) Largest possible size.

IMPORTANT

When replacing batteries in cars with the Start/Stop function, the AGM\(^1\) type batteries must be fitted.

NOTE

- The higher the current take-off in the car (extra cooling/heating, etc.) the more the batteries must be charged = increased fuel consumption.
- When the capacity of the battery has fallen below the lowest permissible level then the Start/Stop function is disengaged.

Temporarily reduced Start/Stop function due to high current take-off means:

- The engine starts automatically\(^2\) without the driver depressing the clutch pedal (manual gearbox).
- The engine starts automatically without the driver lifting his/her foot off the foot brake pedal (automatic gearbox).

Location of the batteries

A: Left-hand drive car. B: Right-hand drive car. 1. Battery for starting\(^3\) 2. Support battery.

The support battery normally requires no more service than the normal battery that is used for starting. A workshop should be contacted in the event of questions or problems - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

---

\(^1\) Absorbed Glass Mat

\(^2\) Automatic starting can only take place if the gear lever is in neutral position.

\(^3\) The battery for starting is described in detail on page 376.
IMPORTANT

If the following instruction is not observed then the Start/Stop function may temporarily cease to work after the connection of an external battery or battery charger:

- The negative battery terminal on the car’s main battery must never be used for connecting an external battery or battery charger - only the car chassis may be used as the grounding point.

See the section “Start assistance” - for a description of how the cable clamps must be attached.

NOTE

If the battery has become so discharged that everything is “black” and in principle the car does not have all the normal electrical functions and the engine is subsequently started using an external battery or battery charger, then the Start/Stop function will be activated. It will then be possible for the engine to be auto-stopped but in the event of an auto-stop the Start/Stop function may fail to auto-start the engine due to inadequate capacity in the battery.

The battery must first be charged in order to ensure a successful auto-start after an auto-stop. At an outside temperature of +15 °C the battery needs to be charged for at least 1 hour. At a lower outside temperature a charging time of 3-4 hours is recommended. The recommendation is that the battery is charged using an external battery charger.

If this is not possible then the recommendation is to temporarily deactivate the Start/Stop function until the battery has been adequately recharged.

For more information about recharging the battery, see the section “Battery” in the chapter “Maintenance and service”.
Fuses

General
All electrical functions and components are protected by a number of fuses in order to protect the car’s electrical system from damage by short circuiting or overloading.

If an electrical component or function does not work, it may be because the component’s fuse was temporarily overloaded and failed. If the same fuse fails repeatedly then there is a fault in the circuit. Volvo recommends that you visit an authorised Volvo workshop for checking.

Changing
1. Look in the fuse diagram to locate the fuse.
2. Pull out the fuse and check from the side to see whether the curved wire has blown.
3. If this is the case, replace it with a new fuse of the same colour and amperage.

⚠️ WARNING
Never use a foreign object, or a fuse with an amperage higher than that specified when replacing a fuse. This could cause significant damage to the electrical system and possibly lead to fire.

Location of central electrical units

Central electrical unit locations in a left-hand drive car. In a right-hand drive car the central electrical units under the glovebox change sides.

1. Engine compartment
2. Under the glovebox
3. Under the glovebox
4. Cargo area
5. Engine compartment cold zone (only Start/Stop)
Engine compartment

A

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14

B

15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27

C

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14

09 Maintenance and service
Fuses
## Fuses

### General fuses, engine compartment
On the inside of the cover there are tweezers that facilitate the procedure for the removal and fitting of fuses.

### Positions (see preceding illustration)

- **A** Engine compartment, upper
- **B** Engine compartment, front
- **C** Engine compartment, lower

These fuses are all located in the engine compartment box. The fuses in (C) are located under (A).

On the inside of the cover is a label that shows the location of the fuses.

- Fuses 1-7 and 42-44 are of the "Midi Fuse" type and must only be replaced by a workshop\(^1\).
- Fuses 8-15 and 34 are of the "JCASE" type and should be replaced by a workshop\(^1\).
- Fuses 16-33 and 35-41 are of the "Mini Fuse" type.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>A</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 Primary fuse for the central electronic module (CEM) under the glovebox(^A)</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Primary fuse for the central electronic module (CEM) under the glovebox</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 Primary fuse for central electrical unit in cargo area(^A)</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 Primary fuse for relay/fuse box under the glovebox(^A)</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 Primary fuse for relay/fuse box under the glovebox(^A)</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 -</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 Electric additional heater(^A)</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 Heated windscreen*, left-hand side</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 Windscreen wipers</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 Parking heater*</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11 Ventilation fan(^A)</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>A</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>12 Heated windscreen*, right-hand side</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13 ABS pump</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14 ABS valves</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15 Headlamp washers*</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16 Headlamp levelling*; Active Xenon headlamps - ABL*</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17 Primary fuse for the central electronic module (CEM) under the glovebox</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18 ABS</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19 Speed related power steering*</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20 Engine control module; Transmission control module; Airbags</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21 Heated washer nozzles*</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22 -</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23 Headlamp control</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^1\) An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
## Fuses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>A</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Start relay^A</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relay coils</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auxiliary lamps*</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Horn</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relay coil in main relay for engine management system; Engine control module (5, 6-cyl.)</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transmission control module</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Solenoid clutch A/C (not 5-cyl. diesel)</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relay coil in relay for solenoid clutch A/C (not 5-cyl. diesel); Relay coil in relay for coolant pump (5-cyl. diesel Start/Stop); Relay coils in central electrical unit in engine compartment cold zone (Start/Stop)</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ignition coils (4-cyl. petrol); Glow control module (5-cyl. diesel)</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ignition coils (5, 6-cyl. petrol); Capacitor (6-cyl.)</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine control module (petrol)</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine control module (diesel)</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Valves (1.6 l petrol); Mass air flow sensor (1.6 l petrol)</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mass air flow sensor (D4162T); Control valve, fuel flow (D4162T)</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Solenoid clutch A/C (5, 6-cyl.); Valves, Engine control module (5-cyl. diesel)</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lambda-sons (4-cyl. petrol); Lambda-sons (diesel); Control module, radiator roller cover (5-cyl. 2.0 l diesel)</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EVAP valve (5, 6-cyl. petrol); Lambda-sons (5, 6-cyl. petrol)</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coolant pump (1.6 l petrol Start/Stop, 5-cyl. petrol Start/Stop); Crankcase ventilation heater (5-cyl. Petrol); Oil pump automatic gearbox (5-cyl. petrol Start/Stop)</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diesel filter heater</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

^ Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
### Fuses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>A</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Control module, radiator roller cover (5-cyl. petrol)</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crankcase ventilation heater (5-cyl. diesel); Oil pump automatic gearbox (5-cyl. diesel Start/Stop)</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glow plugs (diesel)</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cooling fan (4-cyl., 5-cyl. petrol)</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cooling fan (6-cyl., 5-cyl. diesel)</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Electro-hydraulic power steering</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*A For cars with the Start/Stop function this fuse location is empty - see instead page 390.*
**Fuses**

### Under the glovebox - Relay/Fuse box

**Positions**
On the inside of the cover is a label that shows the location of the fuses.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>A</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Primary fuse for audio control module*; Primary fuse for fuses 16-20: Infotainment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Heated steering wheel*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>12 V socket, cargo area*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Control panel, driver’s door</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Control panel, front passenger door</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Control panel, rear passenger door, right</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Control panel, rear passenger door, left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Keyless*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Power seat driver’s side*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Power seat passenger side*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Infotainment control module</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
## Fuses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>A</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>17</strong> Audio control unit (amplifier)<em>; Digital radio</em>; TV*</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>18</strong> Audio</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>19</strong> Telematics*; Bluetooth*</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>20</strong> Multimedia system for rear seat (RSE)*</td>
<td>7.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>21</strong> Sunroof*; Interior lighting roof; Climate sensor*; Damper motors, air intake</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>22</strong> 12 V socket, tunnel console</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>23</strong> Seat heating, rear right*</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>24</strong> Seat heating, rear left*</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>25</strong> -</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>26</strong> Seat heating (passenger side)</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>27</strong> Seat heating (driver’s side)</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>28</strong> Parking assistance*; Parking camera*; Towbar control module *</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>29</strong> AWD control module*</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>30</strong> Active chassis Four-C*</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
### Under the glovebox - Central electronic module (CEM)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positions</th>
<th>Function</th>
<th>A</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Rear window wiper</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Interior lighting; Driver's door control panel, power windows; Power seats, front*; Remote controlled garage door opener*</td>
<td>7.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Combined instrument panel</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>A</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Adaptive cruise control, ACC*; collision warning system*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Interior lighting; Rain sensor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Steering wheel module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Central locking system, fuel filler flap</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Rear window washer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Windscreen washers</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
### Fuses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>A</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>17 -</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18 Airbags</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19 Collision warning system*</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20 Accelerator pedal sensor; Dimming interior rearview mirror*; Seat heating, rear*; Electric additional heater*</td>
<td>7.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21 Infotainment control module (Performance); Audio (Performance)</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22 Brake light</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23 Sunroof*</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24 Immobiliser</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Cargo area

The fuse box is located behind the upholstery on the left-hand side.

Positions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>A</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 Electric parking brake, left</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Electric parking brake, right</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 Rear window defroster</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 Trailer socket 2*</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 Power operated tailgate*</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>A</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11 Trailer socket 1*</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
**Fuses**

**Engine compartment, cold zone - Start/Stop**

Location of fuses for the Start/Stop function.

- Fuses A1 and A2 are of the "MEGA Fuse" type and must only be replaced by a workshop\(^2\).
- Fuses 1-11 are of the "Midi Fuse" type and must only be replaced by a workshop\(^2\).
- Fuse 12 is of the "Mini Fuse" type.

For more information on Start/Stop - see page 134.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positions</th>
<th>Function</th>
<th>A</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A1</td>
<td>Main fuse for central electrical unit in the engine compartment</td>
<td>175</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A2</td>
<td>Main fuse for central electronic module (CEM) under the glovebox, relay/fuse box under the glovebox, central electrical unit in cargo area</td>
<td>175</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>A</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 Electric additional heater*</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Primary fuse for the central electronic module (CEM) under the glovebox</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 Primary fuse for relay/fuse box under the glovebox</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 Primary fuse for relay/fuse box under the glovebox</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^2\) An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>A</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5  Primary fuse for central electrical unit in cargo area</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6  Ventilation fan</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7  -</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8  -</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9  Start relay</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 Internal diode</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11 Support battery</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12 Central electronic module (CEM) - reference voltage support battery;</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Charging point support battery</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Car care

Washing the car

Wash the car as soon as it becomes dirty. Wash the car in a car wash with oil separator. Use car shampoo.

- Remove bird droppings from the paintwork as soon as possible. Bird droppings contain chemicals that affect and discolour paintwork very quickly. An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended for the removal of any discoloration.
- Hose down the underbody.
- Rinse the whole car until the loose dirt has been removed in order to reduce the risk of scratches from washing. Do not spray directly onto the locks.
- If necessary, use cold degreasing agent on very dirty surfaces. Note that the surfaces must not then be warmed up by the sun!
- Wash using a sponge, car shampoo and plenty of lukewarm water.
- Clean the wiper blades with a lukewarm soap solution or car shampoo.
- Dry the car using a clean, soft chamois or a water scraper. If you avoid allowing water droplets to dry in strong sunlight then the risk of water stains that may need to be polished away is reduced.

WARNING

Always have the engine cleaned by a workshop. There is a risk of fire if the engine is hot.

IMPORTANT

Dirty headlamps have impaired functionality. Clean them regularly, when refuelling for example.

Do not use any corrosive cleaning agents but use water and a non-scratching sponge instead.

NOTE

Outside lighting such as headlamps, fog lamps and rear lamps may temporarily have condensation on the inside of the lens. This is normal, all exterior lighting is designed to withstand this. Condensation is normally vented out of the lamp housing when the lamp has been switched on for a time.

Cleaning the wiper blades

Asphalt, dust and salt residue on wiper blades, as well as insects, ice etc. on the windscreen, impair the service life of wiper blades.

For cleaning:
- Set the wiper blades in service position, see page 372.

NOTE

Wash the wiper blades and windscreen regularly with lukewarm soap solution or car shampoo.

Do not use any strong solvents.

Automatic car washes

An automatic car wash is a simple and quick way of washing the car, but it cannot reach everywhere. Handwashing the car is recommended for achieving optimum results.

NOTE

During the first few months a new car must only be handwashed. This is because the paintwork is more sensitive when it is new.

High-pressure washing

When using high-pressure washing, use sweeping movements and make sure that the nozzle does not come closer than 30 cm to the surface of the car (the distance applies to all exterior parts). Do not spray directly onto the locks.
Testing the brakes

WARNING
Always test the brakes after washing the car, including the parking brake, to ensure that moisture and corrosion do not attack the brake linings and reduce braking performance.

Lightly depress the brake pedal now and then when driving long distances in rain or slush. The heat from the friction causes the brake linings to warm up and dry. Do the same thing after starting in very damp or cold weather.

Exterior plastic, rubber and trim components
A special cleaning agent available from Volvo dealers is recommended for the cleaning and care of coloured plastic parts, rubber and trim components, such as glossy trim mouldings. When using such a cleaning agent the instructions must be followed carefully.

IMPORTANT
Avoid waxing and polishing on plastic and rubber.
When using degreasant on plastic and rubber, only rub with light pressure if it is necessary. Use a soft washing sponge.
Polishing glossy trim mouldings could wear away or damage the glossy surface layer.
Polishing agent that contains abrasive must not be used.

Rims
Only use rim cleaning agent recommended by Volvo.

IMPORTANT
Avoid waxing and polishing on plastic and rubber. More stubborn stains can be removed using fine rubbing paste designed for car paintwork.

Polish first with a polish and then wax with liquid or solid wax. Follow the instructions on the packaging carefully. Many preparations contain both polish and wax.

Rims
Only use rim cleaning agent recommended by Volvo.

IMPORTANT
Only paint treatment recommended by Volvo should be used. Other treatment such as preserving, sealing, protection, lustre sealing or similar could damage the paintwork. Paintwork damage caused by such treatments is not covered by Volvo warranty.

Polishing and waxing
Polish and wax the car if the paintwork is dull or to give the paintwork extra protection.

The car does not need to be polished until it is at least one year old. However, the car can be waxed during this time. Do not polish or wax the car in direct sunlight.
Wash and dry the car thoroughly before you begin polishing or waxing. Clean off asphalt

Water-repellent coating*
Never use products such as car wax, degreaser or similar on glass surfaces as this could ruin their water-repellent properties.

Take care when cleaning so as not to damage the glass surface.
To avoid damaging glass surfaces when removing ice – only use plastic ice scrapers.
There is natural wear of the water-repellent coating.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
Car care

Treatment with a special finishing agent available from Volvo dealers is recommended in order to maintain the water-repellent properties. This should be used first after three years and then each year.

Rustproofing – inspection and maintenance

The car received a thorough and complete rustproofing at the factory. Parts of the body are made of galvanised sheet metal. The underbody is protected by a wear-resistant anti-corrosion compound. A thin, penetrating rustproofing fluid was sprayed into the exposed members, cavities, closed sections and side doors.

Under normal conditions the rustproofing does not require treatment for approximately 12 years. After this period, it should be treated at three-year intervals. Volvo recommends that you engage an authorised Volvo workshop for assistance if the car needs further treatment.

Dirt and road salt can lead to corrosion so it is important to keep the car clean. The car’s rustproofing needs to be checked regularly and touched-up if necessary in order for it to be maintained.

Cleaning the interior

Only use cleaning agents and car care products recommended by Volvo. Clean regularly and follow the instructions included with the car care product.

Vacuuming is important prior to using cleaning agents.

Carpets and cargo area

Remove inlaid carpets for separate cleaning of the floor carpet and the inlaid carpets. Use a vacuum cleaner to remove dust and dirt.

Each inlay mat is secured with pins.

– Take hold of the inlay mat at each pin and lift the mat straight up.

Fit the inlay mat in place by pressing it in at each pin.

WARNING

Before setting off check that the inlaid mat in the driver area is firmly affixed and secured in the pins in order to avoid getting caught adjacent to and under the pedals.

A special textile cleaner is recommended for stains on the floor mat after vacuuming. Floor mats should be cleaned with agents recommended by your Volvo dealer!

Stains on fabric upholstery and roof upholstery

A special fabric cleaning agent, available from authorised Volvo dealers, is recommended to avoid impairing the fire retardant qualities of the upholstery.

IMPORTANT

Sharp objects and Velcro may damage the fabric upholstery.

Treating stains on leather upholstery

Volvo’s leather upholstery is chromium-free and is treated to preserve its original appearance.

Leather upholstery ages and acquires a beautiful patina over time. The leather is refined and processed so that it retains its natural characteristics. It is given a protective coating, but regular cleaning is required in order to maintain both characteristics and appearance. Volvo offers a comprehensive product for the cleaning and treatment of leather upholstery which, when used in accordance with the instructions, preserves the leather’s protective coating. After a period of use the natural appearance of the leather will nevertheless emerge, depending more or less on the surface texture of the leather. This is a
natural maturing of the leather and shows that it is a natural product.

To achieve best results Volvo recommends cleaning and the application of protective cream once to four times per year (or more if necessary). The Volvo Leather Care kit is available from your Volvo dealer.

**IMPORTANT**
- Certain items of coloured clothing (for example, jeans and suede garments) may stain the upholstery.
- Never use strong solvents. Such products may damage fabric, vinyl and leather upholstery.

Washing instructions for leather upholstery
1. Pour the leather cleaner on the dampened sponge and squeeze out a strong foam.
2. Work the dirt away with gentle circular movements.
3. Dab accurately with the sponge on the stains. Allow the sponge to absorb the stain. Do not rub.
4. Wipe off with soft paper or a cloth and allow the leather to dry completely.

**Protective treatment of leather upholstery**
1. Pour a small amount of the protective cream on the felted cloth and massage in a thin layer of cream with gentle circular movements on the leather.
2. Allow the leather to dry for 20 minutes before use.

The leather has now been given improved protection against stains and improved UV protection.

Washing instructions for the leather steering wheel
- Remove dirt and dust with a soft pre-moistened sponge and neutral soap.
- Leather needs to breathe. Never cover the leather steering wheel with protective plastic.
- Use natural oils. Volvo’s leather care agents are recommended for best results.

**If the steering wheel has stains:**
**Group 1** (ink, wine, coffee, milk, sweat and blood)
- Use a soft cloth or sponge. Mix a 5% ammonia solution. (For blood stains, use a solution of 2 dl water and 25g salt.)

**Group 2** (fats, oils, sauces and chocolate)
1. Same procedure as for group 1.
2. Polish with an absorbent paper or cloth.

**Group 3** (dry dirt, dust)
1. Use a soft brush to remove the dirt.
2. Same procedure as for group 1.

**Treating stains on interior plastic, metal and wood parts**
A fibrillated fibre or microfibre cloth, lightly moistened with water, available from Volvo dealers, is recommended for cleaning interior parts and surfaces.

Do not scrape or rub stains. Never use strong stain removers. A special cleaning agent available from Volvo dealers can be used for more difficult cleaning.

**Cleaning seatbelts**
Use water and a synthetic detergent. A special textile cleaning agent is available from your Volvo dealer. Make sure the seatbelt is dry before allowing it to retract.
Touching up minor paintwork damage

Paint is an important part of the car’s rust-proofing and should therefore be checked regularly. To avoid the onset of rust, damaged paintwork should be rectified immediately. The most common types of paintwork damage are stone chips, scratches, and marks on the edges of wings, doors and bumpers.

Materials

- primer\(^1\) - for e.g. plastic-clad bumpers there are special adhesive primers available in spray cans
- base coat and clear coat - are available in spray cans or as touch-up pens/sticks\(^2\)
- masking tape
- fine sand paper\(^1\).

Colour code (Paint code)

1 Code for car’s colour

It is important that the correct colour is used. For product decal location, see page 400.

Repairing minor paint damage such as stone chips and scratches

Before work is started, the car must be clean and dry as well as at a temperature above 15 °C.

1. Apply a piece of masking tape over the damaged surface. Then remove the tape to remove any loose paint.

If the damage has reached down to a metal surface (sheet steel), it is preferable to use a primer. In the event of damage to a plastic surface, an adhesive primer should be used for better results - spray into the spray can’s cap and brush thinly.

---

\(^1\) If required.

\(^2\) Follow the instructions that are included with the package for the touch-up pen/stick.
2. A light sanding with very fine abrasive material can be performed locally before painting if necessary (e.g. if there are rough edges). Clean the surface thoroughly and allow to dry.

3. Stir the primer well and apply using a fine brush, matchstick or similar. Finish with base coat and clear coat once the primer has dried.

4. For scratches, proceed as above, but mask around the damaged area to protect the undamaged paintwork.

NOTE

If the stone chip has not penetrated down to the meal and an undamaged layer of paint remains in place, fill in with base coat and clear coat as soon as the surface has been cleaned.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Type designations</td>
<td>400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dimensions and weights</td>
<td>402</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine specifications</td>
<td>408</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine oil</td>
<td>410</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fluids and lubricants</td>
<td>413</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuel</td>
<td>416</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wheel and tyres, dimensions and pressure</td>
<td>418</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Electrical system</td>
<td>419</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type approval</td>
<td>420</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Licenses</td>
<td>429</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Symbols in the display</td>
<td>432</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
10 Specifications

Type designations

Label location
Knowing the car’s type designation, vehicle identification and engine numbers can facilitate all contact with an authorised Volvo dealer regarding the car and when ordering spare parts and accessories.

1. Type designation, vehicle identification number, maximum permissible weights, codes for colour and upholstery and type approval number. The label is visible when the right rear door is opened.

2. Label for parking heater.

3. Engine code and engine serial number.

4. Label for engine oil.

5. Gearbox type designation and serial number.
   - Manual gearbox
   - Automatic gearbox

6. Car’s identification number. (VIN Vehicle Identification Number)

Further information on the car is presented in the registration document.

**NOTE**

The labels shown in the owner’s manual are not provided as exact reproductions of those in the car. The purpose is to show their approximate appearance and location in the car. The information that applies to your car in particular is available on the label in question in your car.
## Dimensions and weights

### Dimensions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dimensions</th>
<th>mm</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A Wheelbase</td>
<td>2816</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B Length</td>
<td>4814</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C Load length, floor, folded seat</td>
<td>1878</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D Load length, floor</td>
<td>1089</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E Height</td>
<td>1547</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F Load height</td>
<td>724</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dimensions</th>
<th>mm</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>G Front track</td>
<td>1588&lt;br&gt;1578&lt;sup&gt;A&lt;/sup&gt;&lt;br&gt;1578&lt;sup&gt;B&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H Rear track</td>
<td>1586&lt;br&gt;1576&lt;sup&gt;A&lt;/sup&gt;&lt;br&gt;1576&lt;sup&gt;B&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I Load width, floor</td>
<td>1153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>J Width</td>
<td>1861 (1876&lt;sup&gt;C&lt;/sup&gt;)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Dimensions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dimensions</th>
<th>mm</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>K Width including door mirrors</td>
<td>2106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L Width including folded-in door mirrors</td>
<td>1907</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>A</sup> with 16"50 and 17"50 wheel  
<sup>B</sup> with 17"55 and 18"55 wheel  
<sup>C</sup> with Keyless drive*
### 10 Specifications

#### Dimensions and weights

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dimensions</th>
<th>mm</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Wheelbase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Length</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Load length, floor, folded seat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Load length, floor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>Height</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>Load height</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
<td>Front track</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>Rear track</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>Load width, floor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>J</td>
<td>Width</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Additional Dimensions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dimensions</th>
<th>mm</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>K</td>
<td>Width including door mirrors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>Width including folded-in door mirrors</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*A with 16"50 wheel  
*B with 17"55 and 18"55 wheel  
*C with Keyless drive*
Weights

Kerb weight includes the driver, the fuel tank 90% full and all fluids.

The weight of passengers and accessories, and towball load (when a trailer is hitched, see table page 404) influences the payload and is not included in the kerb weight.

Permitted max. load = Gross vehicle weight - Kerb weight.

NOTE
The documented kerb weight applies to cars in the standard version - i.e. a car without extra equipment or accessories. This means that for every accessory added the loading capacity of the car is reduced correspondingly by the weight of the accessory.

Examples of accessories that reduce loading capacity are the Kinetic/Momentum/Summum equipment levels, as well as other accessories such as Towbar, Load carriers, Space box, Audio system, Auxiliary lamps, GPS, Fuel-driven heater, Safety grille, Carpets, Cargo cover, Power seats, etc.

Weighing the car is a certain way of ascertaining the kerb weight of your own particular car.

WARNING

The car’s driving characteristics change depending on how heavily it is loaded and how the load is distributed.

Towing capacity and towball load

NOTE

The use of a stabiliser hitch on the towing bracket is recommended for trailers heavier than 1800 kg.
## Dimensions and weights

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>V70 Engine</th>
<th>Engine code&lt;sup&gt;A&lt;/sup&gt;</th>
<th>Gearbox</th>
<th>Max. weight braked trailer (kg)</th>
<th>Max. towball load (kg)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>All</td>
<td>All</td>
<td>All</td>
<td>1200</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4&lt;sup&gt;B&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>B4164T</td>
<td>Manual, MMT6</td>
<td>1600</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4&lt;sup&gt;B&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>B4164T</td>
<td>Automatic, MPS6</td>
<td>1600</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4F</td>
<td>B4164T2</td>
<td>Manual, MMT6</td>
<td>1600</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4F</td>
<td>B4164T2</td>
<td>Automatic, MPS6</td>
<td>1600</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T5</td>
<td>B4204T7</td>
<td>Automatic, MPS6</td>
<td>1800</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2</td>
<td>B6324S5</td>
<td>Automatic, TF-80SC</td>
<td>1800</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2 AWD</td>
<td>B6324S5</td>
<td>Automatic, TF-80SC</td>
<td>1800</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T6 AWD</td>
<td>B6304T4</td>
<td>Automatic, TF-80SC</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D2</td>
<td>D4162T</td>
<td>Manual, MMT6</td>
<td>1300</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D2</td>
<td>D4162T</td>
<td>Automatic, MPS6</td>
<td>1300</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D3</td>
<td>D5204T7</td>
<td>Manual, M66</td>
<td>1600</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D3</td>
<td>D5204T7</td>
<td>Automatic, TF-80SD&lt;sup&gt;D&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>1600</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D4</td>
<td>D5204T3</td>
<td>Manual, M66</td>
<td>1600</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D4</td>
<td>D5204T3</td>
<td>Automatic, TF-80SC&lt;sup&gt;C&lt;/sup&gt; / TF-80SD&lt;sup&gt;D&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>1600</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D4 AWD</td>
<td>D5244T17</td>
<td>Automatic, TF-80SC</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Dimensions and weights

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>V70 Engine</th>
<th>Engine code&lt;sup&gt;A&lt;/sup&gt;</th>
<th>Gearbox</th>
<th>Max. weight braked trailer (kg)</th>
<th>Max. towball load (kg)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>D5</td>
<td>D5244T11</td>
<td>Manual, M66</td>
<td>1800</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D5</td>
<td>D5244T15</td>
<td>Automatic, TF-80SC</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D5 AWD</td>
<td>D5244T15</td>
<td>Automatic, TF-80SC</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>A</sup> Engine code, component and serial number can be read on the engine, see page 400.

<sup>B</sup> DRIVe for certain markets.

<sup>C</sup> Without Start/Stop.

<sup>D</sup> With Start/Stop.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>XC70 Engine</th>
<th>Engine code&lt;sup&gt;A&lt;/sup&gt;</th>
<th>Gearbox</th>
<th>Max. weight braked trailer (kg)</th>
<th>Max. towball load (kg)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>All</td>
<td>All</td>
<td>All</td>
<td>1200</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2 AWD</td>
<td>B6324S5</td>
<td>Automatic, TF-80SC</td>
<td>1800</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T6 AWD</td>
<td>B6304T4</td>
<td>Automatic, TF-80SC</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D4</td>
<td>D5204T3</td>
<td>Manual, M66</td>
<td>1600</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D4</td>
<td>D5204T3</td>
<td>Automatic, TF-80SC</td>
<td>1600</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D4 AWD</td>
<td>D5244T17</td>
<td>Manual, M66</td>
<td>2100</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D4 AWD</td>
<td>D5244T17</td>
<td>Automatic, TF-80SC</td>
<td>2100</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Dimensions and weights

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>XC70 Engine</th>
<th>Engine code&lt;sup&gt;A&lt;/sup&gt;</th>
<th>Gearbox</th>
<th>Max. weight braked trailer (kg)</th>
<th>Max. towball load (kg)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>D5 AWD</td>
<td>D5244T11</td>
<td>Manual, M66</td>
<td>2100</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D5 AWD</td>
<td>D5244T15</td>
<td>Automatic, TF-80SC</td>
<td>2100</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>A</sup> Engine code, component and serial number can be read on the engine, see page 400.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Max. weight unbraked trailer (kg)</th>
<th>Max. towball load (kg)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>750</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
10 Specifications

Engine specifications

**NOTE**
Not all engines are available in all markets.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>V70 Engine</th>
<th>Engine codeA</th>
<th>Output (kW/rpm)</th>
<th>Output (hp/rpm)</th>
<th>Torque (Nm/rpm)</th>
<th>No. of cylinders</th>
<th>Bore (mm)</th>
<th>Stroke (mm)</th>
<th>Swept volume (litres)</th>
<th>Compression ratio</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>T4B</td>
<td>B4164T</td>
<td>132/5700</td>
<td>180/5700</td>
<td>240/1600-5000</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>79</td>
<td>81.4</td>
<td>1,596</td>
<td>10.0:1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4F</td>
<td>B4164T2</td>
<td>132/5700</td>
<td>180/5700</td>
<td>240/1600-5000</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>79</td>
<td>81.4</td>
<td>1,596</td>
<td>10.0:1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T5</td>
<td>B4204T7</td>
<td>177/5500</td>
<td>240/5500</td>
<td>320/1800-5000</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>87.5</td>
<td>83.1</td>
<td>1,999</td>
<td>10.0:1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2</td>
<td>B6324S5</td>
<td>179/6400</td>
<td>243/6400</td>
<td>320/3200</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>84</td>
<td>96</td>
<td>3.192</td>
<td>10.8:1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T6</td>
<td>B6304T4</td>
<td>224/5600</td>
<td>304/5600</td>
<td>440/2100-4200</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>82.0</td>
<td>93.2</td>
<td>2.953</td>
<td>9.3:1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D2</td>
<td>D4162T</td>
<td>84/3600</td>
<td>115/3600</td>
<td>270/1750-2500</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>88.3</td>
<td>1.560</td>
<td>16.0:1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D3</td>
<td>D5204T7</td>
<td>100/3500</td>
<td>136/3500</td>
<td>350/1500-2250</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>81.0</td>
<td>77</td>
<td>1.984</td>
<td>16.5:1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D4</td>
<td>D5204T3</td>
<td>120/3500</td>
<td>163/3500</td>
<td>400/1500-2750</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>81.0</td>
<td>77</td>
<td>1.984</td>
<td>16.5:1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D4</td>
<td>D5244T17</td>
<td>120/4000</td>
<td>163/4000</td>
<td>420/1500–2500</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>81.0</td>
<td>93.2</td>
<td>2.400</td>
<td>16.5:1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## 10 Specifications

### Engine specifications

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>V70 Engine</th>
<th>Engine code&lt;sup&gt;A&lt;/sup&gt;</th>
<th>Output (kW/rpm)</th>
<th>Output (hp/rpm)</th>
<th>Torque (Nm/rpm)</th>
<th>No. of cylinders</th>
<th>Bore (mm)</th>
<th>Stroke (mm)</th>
<th>Swept volume (litres)</th>
<th>Compression ratio</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>D5</td>
<td>D5244T11&lt;sup&gt;C&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>158/4000</td>
<td>215/4000</td>
<td>420/1500–3250</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>81.0</td>
<td>93.15</td>
<td>2.400</td>
<td>16.5:1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D5</td>
<td>D5244T15&lt;sup&gt;D&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>158/4000</td>
<td>215/4000</td>
<td>440/1500–3000</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>81.0</td>
<td>93.15</td>
<td>2.400</td>
<td>16.5:1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>A</sup> Engine code, component and serial number can be read on the engine, see page 400.

<sup>B</sup> DRIVe for certain markets.

<sup>C</sup> Manual gearbox

<sup>D</sup> Automatic gearbox

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>XC70 Engine</th>
<th>Engine code&lt;sup&gt;A&lt;/sup&gt;</th>
<th>Output (kW/rpm)</th>
<th>Output (hp/rpm)</th>
<th>Torque (Nm/rpm)</th>
<th>No. of cylinders</th>
<th>Bore (mm)</th>
<th>Stroke (mm)</th>
<th>Swept volume (litres)</th>
<th>Compression ratio</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3.2 AWD</td>
<td>B6324S5</td>
<td>179/6400</td>
<td>243/6400</td>
<td>320/3200</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>84</td>
<td>96</td>
<td>3.192</td>
<td>10.8:1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T6 AWD</td>
<td>B6304T4</td>
<td>224/5600</td>
<td>304/5600</td>
<td>440/2100–4200</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>82.0</td>
<td>93.2</td>
<td>2.953</td>
<td>9.3:1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D4</td>
<td>D5204T3</td>
<td>120/3500</td>
<td>163/3500</td>
<td>400/1500–2750</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>81.0</td>
<td>77</td>
<td>1.984</td>
<td>16.5:1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D4 AWD</td>
<td>D5244T17</td>
<td>120/4000</td>
<td>163/4000</td>
<td>420/1500–2500</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>81.0</td>
<td>93.15</td>
<td>2.400</td>
<td>16.5:1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D5 AWD</td>
<td>D5244T11&lt;sup&gt;B&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>158/4000</td>
<td>215/4000</td>
<td>420/1500–3250</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>81.0</td>
<td>93.15</td>
<td>2.400</td>
<td>16.5:1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D5 AWD</td>
<td>D5244T15&lt;sup&gt;C&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>158/4000</td>
<td>215/4000</td>
<td>440/1500–3000</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>81.0</td>
<td>93.15</td>
<td>2.400</td>
<td>16.5:1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>A</sup> Engine code, component and serial number can be read on the engine, see page 400.

<sup>B</sup> Manual gearbox

<sup>C</sup> Automatic gearbox
Adverse driving conditions

Adverse driving conditions can lead to abnormally high oil temperature or oil consumption. Below are some examples of adverse driving conditions.

Check the oil level more frequently for long journeys:

- towing a caravan or trailer
- in mountainous regions
- at high speeds
- in temperatures colder than -30 °C or hotter than +40 °C

The above also apply to shorter driving distances at low temperatures.

Choose a fully synthetic engine oil for adverse driving conditions. It provides extra protection for the engine.

Volvo recommends Castrol oil products.

**IMPORTANT**

In order to fulfil the requirements for the engine’s service intervals all engines are filled with a specially adapted synthetic engine oil at the factory. The choice of oil has been made very carefully with regard to service life, starting characteristics, fuel consumption and environmental impact.

An approved engine oil must be used in order that the recommended service intervals can be applied. Only use a prescribed grade of oil for both filling and oil change, otherwise you will risk affecting service life, starting characteristics, fuel consumption and environmental impact.

Volvo Car Corporation disclaims all warranty liability if engine oil of the prescribed grade and viscosity is not used.

Volvo recommends that oil changes are carried out at an authorised Volvo workshop.
### Engine oil grade

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>V70 Engine</th>
<th>Engine code</th>
<th>Recommended oil grade</th>
<th>Volume, incl. oil filter (litres)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3.2</td>
<td>B6324S5</td>
<td>Oil grade: ACEA A5/B5</td>
<td>approx 6.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T6</td>
<td>B6304T4</td>
<td>Viscosity: SAE 0W–30</td>
<td>approx 6.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D4</td>
<td>D5204T3</td>
<td></td>
<td>approx. 5.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D3</td>
<td>D5204T7</td>
<td></td>
<td>approx. 5.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D4 AWD</td>
<td>D5244T17</td>
<td></td>
<td>approx. 5.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D5</td>
<td>D5244T11B</td>
<td>Oil grade: ACEA A5/B5</td>
<td>approx. 5.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D5</td>
<td>D5244T15C</td>
<td>Viscosity: SAE 5W–30</td>
<td>approx. 5.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T5</td>
<td>B4204T7</td>
<td>When driving under adverse conditions, use ACEA A5/B5 SAE 0W-30</td>
<td>approx. 5.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D2</td>
<td>D4162T</td>
<td></td>
<td>approx. 3.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4&lt;sup&gt;D&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>B4164T</td>
<td>Certified and factory-filled oil: Oil grade WSS-M2C925-A</td>
<td>approx. 4.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4F</td>
<td>B4164T2</td>
<td>options for service:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **A** Engine code, component and serial number can be read on the engine, see page 400.
- **B** Manual gearbox.
- **C** Automatic gearbox.
- **D** DRIVe for certain markets.
## Engine oil

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>XC70 Engine</th>
<th>Engine code(^A)</th>
<th>Recommended oil grade</th>
<th>Volume, incl. oil filter (litres)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3.2 AWD</td>
<td>B6324S5</td>
<td>Oil grade: ACEA A5/B5</td>
<td>approx. 6.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T6 AWD</td>
<td>B6304T4</td>
<td>Viscosity: SAE 0W–30</td>
<td>approx. 6.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D4</td>
<td>D5204T3</td>
<td></td>
<td>approx. 5.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D4 AWD</td>
<td>D5244T17</td>
<td></td>
<td>approx. 5.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D5 AWD</td>
<td>D5244T11(^B)</td>
<td></td>
<td>approx. 5.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D5 AWD</td>
<td>D5244T15(^C)</td>
<td></td>
<td>approx. 5.9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^A\) Engine code, component and serial number can be read on the engine, see page 400.

\(^B\) Manual gearbox.

\(^C\) Automatic gearbox.

For filling engine oil, see page 360.
Coolant

Prescribed grade: Coolant recommended by Volvo mixed with 50% water\(^1\), see the packaging.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Engine(^A)</th>
<th>Volume (litres)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>T5</td>
<td>B4204T7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D2</td>
<td>D4162T(^C)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2</td>
<td>B6324S5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T6</td>
<td>B6304T4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D4</td>
<td>D5204T3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D3</td>
<td>D5204T7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D4 AWD</td>
<td>D5244T17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D5</td>
<td>D5244T15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D5</td>
<td>D5244T11</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Engine(^A)</th>
<th>Volume (litres)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>T4(^B)</td>
<td>B4164T(^C)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4F</td>
<td>B4164T2(^C)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4(^B)</td>
<td>B4164T(^D)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4F</td>
<td>B4164T2(^D)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^A\) Engine code, component and serial number can be read on the engine, see page 400.
\(^B\) DRIVe for certain markets.
\(^C\) Manual gearbox
\(^D\) Automatic gearbox

\(^1\) Water quality must fulfil the standard STD 1285.1.
## Fluids and lubricants

### Other fluids and lubricants

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Manual gearbox</th>
<th>Volume (litres)</th>
<th>Prescribed transmission fluid</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MMT6</td>
<td>1.7</td>
<td>BOT 350M3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M66</td>
<td>1.9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Automatic gearbox</th>
<th>Volume (litres)</th>
<th>Prescribed transmission fluid</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MPS6</td>
<td>7.3</td>
<td>BOT 341</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TF-80SC</td>
<td>7.0</td>
<td>AW1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TF-80SD</td>
<td>7.0</td>
<td>AW1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NOTE**

Under normal driving conditions, the gearbox oil does not need to be changed during its service life. However, it may be necessary under adverse driving conditions, see page 410.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fluid</th>
<th>System</th>
<th>Volume (litres)</th>
<th>Prescribed grade</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Brake fluid</td>
<td>Brake system</td>
<td>0.6</td>
<td>DOT 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Power steering fluid</td>
<td>Power steering</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>WSS M2C204-A2 or equivalent product.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Fluids and lubricants

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fluid</th>
<th>System</th>
<th>Volume (litres)</th>
<th>Prescribed grade</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Washer fluid</td>
<td>Cars with headlamp washing</td>
<td>6.5</td>
<td>Washer fluid recommended by Volvo - with frost protection during cold weather and below freezing point.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cars without headlamp washing</td>
<td>4.5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuel</td>
<td>Petrol engine</td>
<td>approx. 70</td>
<td>Petrol: see page 318</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Diesel engine</td>
<td>approx. 70</td>
<td>Diesel: see page 319</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Fuel

CO₂ emissions and fuel consumption

Consumption and emission data are included in an enclosed supplement.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CO₂</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>gram/km</td>
<td>litre/100 km</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urban driving</td>
<td>Extra-urban driving</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Combined driving</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NOTE**

If the consumption and emission data is missing then it is included in the enclosed supplement.

There are several reasons for increased fuel consumption compared with the table’s values. Examples of this are:

- The driver’s driving style.
- If the customer has specified wheels larger than those fitted as standard on the model’s basic version, then resistance increases.
- High speed results in increased wind resistance.
- Fuel quality, road and traffic conditions, weather and the condition of the car.

Even a combination of the above-mentioned examples can result in significantly improved consumption. For further information, please refer to the regulations referred to.

---

1 Official fuel consumption figures are based on two standardised driving cycles in a laboratory environment ("EU driving cycles") all in accordance with EU Directive 80/1268/EEC (Euro 4), EU Regulation no 692/2008 and 715/2007 (Euro 5) and UN ECE Regulation no 101. The regulations cover the driving cycles for urban driving and extra-urban driving. - Urban driving - the measurement starts with cold starting the engine. The driving is simulated. - Extra-urban driving - the car is accelerated and braked at speeds between 0 and 120 km/h. The driving is simulated. - V70 with D2, D3, D4 or D5 engine and 6-speed manual gearbox is started in 2nd gear. XC70 with D4 AWD or D5 AWD engine and 6-speed manual gearbox is started in 2nd gear. The combined driving value given in the table is a combination of urban driving and extra-urban driving, in accordance with applicable legislation. CO₂ emissions - the exhaust gases are collected in order to calculate the carbon dioxide emissions during the two driving cycles. These are then analysed and give the value for CO₂ emissions.
Large deviations in fuel consumption may arise in a comparison with the EU driving cycles\(^1\) which are used in the certification of the car and on which the consumption figures in the table are based.

**To bear in mind**

Tips that the driver can use in order to reduce consumption:

- Drive gently and avoid unnecessary acceleration as well as braking too hard.
- Drive with the correct air pressure in the tyres and check this regularly - select ECO tyre pressure for best results, see the tyre pressure table on page 418.
- Choice of tyres can affect fuel consumption - seek advice on suitable tyres from a dealer.

See further information and more advice on pages 11 and 314.

See page 318 for general information on fuel.

---

\(^1\) Official fuel consumption figures are based on two standardised driving cycles in a laboratory environment ("EU driving cycles") all in accordance with EU Directive 80/1268/EEC (Euro 4), EU Regulation no 692/2008) and 715/2007 (Euro 5) and UN ECE Regulation no 101. The regulations cover the driving cycles for urban driving and extra-urban driving. - Urban driving - the measurement starts with cold starting the engine. The driving is simulated. - Extra-urban driving - the car is accelerated and braked at speeds between 0 and 120 km/h. The driving is simulated. - V70 with D2, D3, D4 or D5 engine and 6-speed manual gearbox is started in 2nd gear. XC70 with D4 AWD or D5 AWD engine and 6-speed manual gearbox is started in 2nd gear. The combined driving value given in the table is a combination of urban driving and extra-urban driving, in accordance with applicable legislation. CO\(_2\) emissions - the exhaust gases are collected in order to calculate the carbon dioxide emissions during the two driving cycles. These are then analysed and give the value for CO\(_2\) emissions.
Wheel and tyres, dimensions and pressure

Approved tyre pressures

NOTE

The table with information about approved tyre pressures and speed rating is included in an enclosed supplement.
**Electrical system**
The car has a voltage-regulated AC alternator. The electrical system is single-pole and uses the chassis and engine casing as a conductor.

Starter battery capacity is dependent upon the equipment level in the car.

**Battery**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Engine</th>
<th>Voltage (V)</th>
<th>Cold start capacity, CCA - Cold Cranking Amperes (A)</th>
<th>Reserve capacity (minutes)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Petrol (Ethanol)</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>520–800</td>
<td>100–160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diesel</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>700–800</td>
<td>135–160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Petrol/Diesel with Start/Stop function</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>760&lt;sup&gt;A&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>135</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>A</sup> Battery type AGM (Absorbed Glass Mat) must be used in cars with the Start/Stop function.

**NOTE**
- The starter battery’s container size should be consistent with the original battery’s dimensions.
- The starter battery’s height is different depending on size.

**Start/Stop**
For information on batteries in cars with Start/Stop, see page 378.

**IMPORTANT**
If the battery is replaced, replace it with a battery of the same cold start capacity and reserve capacity as the original (see the decal on the battery).
### Remote control key system

#### Lock system, standard

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>EU, China</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Keyless lock system (Keyless drive)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>EU</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Korea</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Radar system

#### Country

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Singapore</td>
<td>Complies with IDA standards DA105753</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brazil</td>
<td>IDA: Infocomm Development Authority of Singapore.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Europe: Delphi Electronics & Safety hereby declares that L2C0038TR and L2C0049TR are in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC. This declaration of conformity may, if necessary, be consulted with Delphi Electronics & Safety / One Corporate Center / Kokomo, Indiana 46904-9005 USA.
### Bluetooth®

#### Declaration of Conformity (Declaration of Conformity)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Country</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Countries in the EU:</td>
<td>![CE Mark]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exporting country: Japan</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manufacturer: Alpine Electronics Inc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type of equipment: <strong>Bluetooth®</strong> device</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>For further information visit <a href="http://ec.europa.eu/enterprise/rtte/faq.htm">http://ec.europa.eu/enterprise/rtte/faq.htm</a> #informing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Type approval

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Declaration of Conformity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Czech Republic:</td>
<td>Alpine Electronics, Inc. tímto prohlašuje, že tento Bluetooth® Module je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Denmark:</td>
<td>Undertegnede Alpine Electronics, Inc. erkærer herved, at følgende udstyr Bluetooth® Module overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Country</td>
<td>Statement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Estonia</td>
<td>Käesolevaga kinnitab Alpine Electronics, Inc. seadme Bluetooth® Module vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UK</td>
<td>Hereby, Alpine Electronics, Inc., declares that this Bluetooth® Module is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spain</td>
<td>Por medio de la presente Alpine Electronics, Inc. declara que el Bluetooth® Module cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greece</td>
<td>ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ Alpine Electronics, Inc. ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ Bluetooth® Module ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>France</td>
<td>Par la présente Alpine Electronics, Inc. déclare que l’appareil Bluetooth® Module est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Italy</td>
<td>Con la presente Alpine Electronics, Inc. dichiara che questo Bluetooth® Module è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Latvia</td>
<td>Ar šo Alpine Electronics, Inc. deklarē, ka Bluetooth® Module atbilst Direktivas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistitajiem noteikumiem.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lithuania</td>
<td>Šiuo Alpine Electronics, Inc. deklaruoja, kad šis Bluetooth® Module atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Netherlands</td>
<td>Hierbij verklaart Alpine Electronics, Inc. dat het toestel Bluetooth® Module in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malta</td>
<td>Hawnhekk, Alpine Electronics, Inc., jiddikjara li dan Bluetooth® Module jikkonforma mal-htigiijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti ofrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hungary</td>
<td>Alulirrott, Alpine Electronics, Inc. nyilatkozom, hogy a Bluetooth® Module megfelel a vonatkozó alapvető követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb előírásainak.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Type approval

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Statement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Poland:</td>
<td>Niniejszym Alpine Electronics, Inc. oświadcza, że Bluetooth® Module jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Portugal:</td>
<td>Alpine Electronics, Inc. declara que este Bluetooth® Module está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slovenia:</td>
<td>Alpine Electronics, Inc. izjavlja, da je ta Bluetooth® Module v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slovakia:</td>
<td>Alpine Electronics, Inc. týmto vyhlasuje, že Bluetooth® Module spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Finland:</td>
<td>Alpine Electronics, Inc. vakuuttaa täten että Bluetooth® Module tyypin laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sweden:</td>
<td>Härmed intygar Alpine Electronics, Inc. att denna Bluetooth® Module står i överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iceland:</td>
<td>Alpine Electronics, Inc. hereby certifies that this Bluetooth® Module conforms to the essential characteristic requirements and other relevant regulations of directive 1999/5/EC.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Norway:</td>
<td>Alpine Electronics, Inc. erklærer herved at utstyret Bluetooth® Module er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 10 Specifications

#### Type approval

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Country</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>China:</td>
<td>第十三条 进口和生产厂商在其产品的说明书或使用手册中，应刊印下述有关内容：</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1. 标明附件中所规定的技术指标和使用范围，说明所有控制、调整及开关等使用方法；</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>■ 使用频率：2.4 - 2.4835 GHz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>■ 等效全向辐射功率 (EIRP)：天线增益 &lt; 10dBi 时：≤100 mW 或≤20 dBm ①</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>■ 最大功率谱密度：天线增益 &lt; 10dBi 时：≤20 dBm / MHz (EIRP) ①</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>■ 载频容限：20 ppm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>■ 杂散发射 (辐射) 功率 (对应载波±2.5 倍信道带宽以外)：</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• ≤−36 dBm / 100 kHz（30 - 1000 MHz）</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• ≤−33 dBm / 100 kHz（2.4 - 2.4835 GHz）</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• ≤−40 dBm / 1 MHz（3.4 - 3.53 GHz）</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• ≤−40 dBm / 1 MHz（5.725 - 5.85 GHz）</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• ≤−30 dBm / 1 MHz（其它 1 - 12.75 GHz）</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2. 不得擅自更改发射频率，加大发射功率（包括额外加装射频功率放大器），不得擅自外接天线或改用其它发射天线；</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3. 使用时不得对各种合法的无线电通信业务产生有害干扰；一旦发现有干扰现象时，应立即停止使用，并采取措施消除干扰后方可继续使用；</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4. 使用微功率无线电设备，必须忍受各种无线电业务的干扰或工业、科学及医疗应用设备的辐射干扰；</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5. 不得在飞机和机场附近使用。</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## 10 Specifications

### Type approval

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Taiwan: | 低功率電波輻射性電機管理辦法第十條  
第十二條  
經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自 變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。  
第十四條  
低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時， 應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。  
前項合法通信，指依電信法規定 作業之無線電通信。低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波 輻射性電機設備之干擾。 |

![CCAB11LP4080T3](image1)  
![CCAB11LP4070T0](image2)
### 10 Specifications

#### Type approval

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Country</th>
<th>제품 정보</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>South Korea:</td>
<td><strong>제품 정보</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Volvo Car Korea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>제품 명: Bluetooth Audio Navigation Radio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>모델 명: IAM2.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>산 날짜: March/2010</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Alpine Electronics, Inc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Made in Japan</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**고객 정보**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Country</th>
<th>고객 정보</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>South Korea:</td>
<td><strong>Volvo Car Korea</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>볼보자동차코리아</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>서울시 용산구 한남 2 동 726–173 볼보빌딩 4 층</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>볼보자동차 고객센터 1588–1777</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><a href="http://www.volvocars.com/kr">http://www.volvocars.com/kr</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**사용자 주의사항**

※당해 무선설비는 전파혼신 가능성이 있으므로 인명안전과 관련된 서비스는 할 수 없습니다
## 10 Specifications

### Type approval

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The United Arab Emirates:</td>
<td><strong>TRA REGISTERED No:</strong> ER0071020/11 <strong>DEALER No:</strong> DA042125/10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>South Africa:</td>
<td><img src="image.png" alt="ICASA Approved" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jamaica:</td>
<td>Approved for use in Jamaica SMA EI: IAM2.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thailand:</td>
<td>This telecommunication equipment conforms to NTC technical requirement.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oman</td>
<td><strong>OMAN - TRA No:</strong> 00001/11 <strong>OMAN - TRA No:</strong> 00002/11</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Sensus software
This software uses parts of sources from clib2 and Prex Embedded Real-time OS - Source (Copyright (c) 1982, 1986, 1991, 1993, 1994), and Quercus Robusta (Copyright (c) 1990, 1993), The Regents of the University of California. All or some portions are derived from material licensed to the University of California by American Telephone and Telegraph Co. or Unix System Laboratories, Inc. and are reproduced herein with the permission of UNIX System Laboratories, Inc. Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met: Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution. Neither the name of the <ORGANIZATION> nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission. THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT OWNER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

This software is based in part on the work of the Independent JPEG Group.

This software uses parts of sources from "libtess". The Original Code is: OpenGL Sample Implementation, Version 1.2.1, released January 26, 2000, developed by Silicon Graphics, Inc. The Original Code is Copyright (c) 1991-2000 Silicon Graphics, Inc. Copyright in any portions created by third parties is as indicated elsewhere herein. All Rights Reserved. Copyright (C) [1991-2000] Silicon Graphics, Inc. All Rights Reserved. Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions: The above copyright notice including the dates of first publication and either this permission notice or a reference to http://oss.sgi.com/projects/FreeB/ shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software. THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL SILICON GRAPHICS, INC. BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE. Except as contained in this notice, the name of Silicon Graphics, Inc. shall not be used in advertising or otherwise
to promote the sale, use or other dealings in this Software without prior written authorization from Silicon Graphics, Inc.

This software is based in parts on the work of the FreeType Team.

This software uses parts of SSLeay Library: Copyright (C) 1995-1998 Eric Young (eay@cryptsoft.com). All rights reserved

**Combined Instrument Panel Software**

**Open Source Software Notice**

This product uses certain free / open source and other software originating from third parties, that is subject to the GNU General Public License version 2 and 3 (GPLv2/ GPLv3), GNU Lesser General Public License version 3 (LGPLv3), The FreeType Project License (“FreeType License”) and other different and/or additional copyright licenses, disclaimers and notices. The links how to access the exact terms of GPLv2, GPLv3, LGPLv3, and the other open source software licenses, disclaimers, acknowledgements and notices are provided to you below. Please refer to the exact terms of the relevant License, regarding your rights under said licenses. Volvo Car Corporation (VCC) offers to provide the source code of said free/open source software to you for a charge covering the cost of performing such distribution, such as the cost of media, shipping and handling, upon written request. Please contact your nearest Volvo Dealer.

This offer is valid for a period of at least three (3) years from the date of the distribution of this product by VCC / or for as long as VCC offers spare parts or customer support.

Portions of this product uses software copyrighted © v2.4.3/2010 The FreeType Project (www.freetype.org). All rights reserved.

This product includes software under following licenses:

**GPL v2** : [http://www.gnu.org/licenses/old-licenses/gpl-2.0.html](http://www.gnu.org/licenses/old-licenses/gpl-2.0.html)

- Linux kernel (merge between MontaVista 2.6.31 kernel and kernel from L2.6.31_MX51_ER_1007 BSP)
- uBoot (based on v2009.08)
- busybox (based on version 1.13.2.)
- GCC runtime library exception: [http://www.gnu.org/licenses/gcc-exception.html](http://www.gnu.org/licenses/gcc-exception.html)
- libgcc_s.so.1

**LGPL v3**: [http://www.gnu.org/licenses/lgpl.html](http://www.gnu.org/licenses/lgpl.html)

- Libc.so.6, libpthread.so.0, Librt.so.1

The FreeType Project License: [http://www.freetype.org/FTL.TXT](http://www.freetype.org/FTL.TXT)

- libfreetype.so.6 (version 2.4.3)

**DivX®**

DivX Certified® to play DivX® video. DivX®, DivX Certified® and associated logos are registered trademarks of DivX, Inc. and are used under license. ABOUT DIVX VIDEO: DivX® is a digital video format created by DivX, Inc. This is an official DivX Certified device that plays DivX video. Visit [www.divx.com](http://www.divx.com) for more information and software tools to convert your files into DivX video.

ABOUT DIVX VIDEO-ON-DEMAND: This DivX Certified® device must be registered in order to play DivX Video-on-Demand (VOD) content. To generate the registration code, locate the DivX VOD section in the device.
setup menu. Go to http://vod.divx.com with this code to complete the registration process and learn more about DivX VOD. Covered by one or more of the following U.S. Patents: 7,295,673; 7,460,668; 7,515,710; 7,519,274.
Symbols in the display

General
There are a variety of different symbols in the display in the car. The symbols are divided into warning, indicator and information symbols. Shown below are the most common symbols with their meanings and a reference to where in the manual further information can be found. For more information on symbols and text messages, see pages 75, 77 and 211.

- Red warning symbol, illuminates when a fault has been indicated which could affect the safety and/or driveability of the car. An explanatory text is shown in the combined instrument panel at the same time.

- Yellow information symbol, comes on and a text appears on the combined instrument panel when one of the car’s systems does not behave as intended. The yellow symbol information can also illuminate in combination with other symbols.

Symbols in the display

Warning symbols in the combined instrument panel

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Low oil pressure</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Parking brake</td>
<td>77, 145, 147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Parking brake applied, alternative symbol</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Airbags - SRS</td>
<td>19, 77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Seatbelt reminder</td>
<td>16, 77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Alternator not charging</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Fault in the brake system</td>
<td>77, 142</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Warning, safety mode</td>
<td>19, 29, 77, 78, 132</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Control symbols in the combined instrument panel

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Fault in the ABL system*</td>
<td>75, 94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Emissions system</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Fault in the ABS system</td>
<td>75, 142</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Rear fog lamp on</td>
<td>75, 95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Stability system, DSTC, Hill descent control, Trailer stability assist</td>
<td>75, 143, 155, 334</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Stability system, sport mode</td>
<td>75, 155</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Engine preheater (diesel)</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Low level in fuel tank</td>
<td>75, 234</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Information, read display text</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Main beam on</td>
<td>75, 93</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
### Symbols in the display

#### Left-hand direction indicators
- Page 75

#### Right-hand direction indicators
- Page 75

#### DRIVe - Start/Stop
- Page 75, 134

#### Not used
- Page -

### Information symbols in the combined instrument panel

#### Symbol | Meaning | Page
---|---|---
| ![Symbol] | Left-hand direction indicators | 75 |
| ![Symbol] | Right-hand direction indicators | 75 |
| ![Symbol] | DRIVe - Start/Stop* | 75, 134 |
| ![Symbol] | Not used | - |

#### Radar sensor*
- Page 169, 174, 187

#### Camera sensor*, Laser sensor*
- Page 179, 187, 192, 195

#### Auto Brake*, Distance Warning* (Distance Alert), City Safety™, Collision warning system*
- Page 174, 179, 187

#### ABL system*
- Page 94

#### Driver Alert System*, Time for a break
- Page 190

#### Driver Alert System*, Time for a break
- Page 192

#### Parking brake
- Page 147

### Symbol | Meaning | Page
---|---|---
| ![Symbol] | Rain sensor* | 102 |
| ![Symbol] | Active high beam, AHB (Active High Beam)* | 93 |
| ![Symbol] | Windscreen sensor* | 93 |
| ![Symbol] | Start/Stop* | 138 |
| ![Symbol] | Start/Stop* | 138 |
| ![Symbol] | Start/Stop* | 138 |
| ![Symbol] | Driver Alert System* | 192, 195 |
| ![Symbol] | Driver Alert System*, Lane Departure Warning* | 194 |

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.
# Symbols in the display

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="..." alt="Driver Alert System" /></td>
<td>Driver Alert System*, Lane Departure Warning*</td>
<td>195</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="..." alt="Recorded speed information" /></td>
<td>Recorded speed information*</td>
<td>156</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="..." alt="Engine block heater and passenger compartment heater" /></td>
<td>Engine block heater and passenger compartment heater*</td>
<td>234</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="..." alt="Activated timer" /></td>
<td>Activated timer*</td>
<td>234</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="..." alt="Activated timer" /></td>
<td>Activated timer*</td>
<td>234</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="..." alt="Low battery" /></td>
<td>Low battery</td>
<td>234</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="..." alt="Fuel filler flap, right-hand side" /></td>
<td>Fuel filler flap, right-hand side</td>
<td>317</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.*

## Information symbols in the roof console display

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="..." alt="Seatbelt reminder" /></td>
<td>Seatbelt reminder</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="..." alt="Airbag, passenger seat, activated" /></td>
<td>Airbag, passenger seat, activated</td>
<td>22, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="..." alt="Airbag, passenger seat, deactivated" /></td>
<td>Airbag, passenger seat, deactivated</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Page</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A/V-AUX input</td>
<td>304</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACC – Adaptive cruise control</td>
<td>161</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Active Bending Lights (ABL)</td>
<td>94</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Active chassis – FOUR-C</td>
<td>247</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Active Xenon headlamps</td>
<td>94</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adaptation</td>
<td>123</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adapting driving characteristics</td>
<td>247</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adaptive cruise control</td>
<td>161</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fault tracing</td>
<td>169</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>radar sensor</td>
<td>167</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Additional heater (Diesel)</td>
<td>237</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjusting headlamp pattern</td>
<td>98</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>halogen headlamp</td>
<td>99</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjusting the steering wheel</td>
<td>88</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Airbag</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>activating/deactivating, PACOS</td>
<td>22</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>driver’s and front passenger side</td>
<td>20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>key switch off</td>
<td>22</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AIRBAG</td>
<td>20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Airbag system</td>
<td>19</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Air conditioning</td>
<td>229</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>general</td>
<td>221</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Air conditioning, AC</td>
<td>229</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Air conditioning system</td>
<td>365</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>repair</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Air distribution</td>
<td>222, 231</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Air quality system IAQS</td>
<td>230</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Air vents</td>
<td>223</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alarm</td>
<td>63</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alarm indicator</td>
<td>63</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alarm signals</td>
<td>64</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arming</td>
<td>63</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>checking the alarm</td>
<td>47</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deactivate</td>
<td>63</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deactivating a triggered alarm</td>
<td>64</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reduced alarm level</td>
<td>64</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alcolock</td>
<td>114</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allergy and asthma inducing substances</td>
<td>222</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All-wheel drive, AWD</td>
<td>140</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All Wheel Drive (AWD)</td>
<td>140</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Approach light, duration</td>
<td>46, 98</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audio</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>headphones socket</td>
<td>258</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rear control panel</td>
<td>258</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>settings</td>
<td>259, 260</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>surround</td>
<td>254, 260</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audio system</td>
<td>254</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auto</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>climate control settings</td>
<td>228</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatic car washes</td>
<td>392</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatic gearbox</td>
<td>127</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>manual gear positions (Geartronic)</td>
<td>128</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>towing and recovery</td>
<td>335</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trailer</td>
<td>330</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatic locking</td>
<td>58</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatic relocking</td>
<td>57</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auxiliary heater</td>
<td>237</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AUX input</td>
<td>254, 277</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AWD, All-wheel drive</td>
<td>140</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
B

Backrest................................. 83
front seat, lowering.................. 83
Backrest rear seat, lowering..... 86
Bag holder ............................... 325
Battery..................................... 375, 419
headphones................................ 304
maintenance.............................. 375
remote control.......................... 301
remote control key/PCC.............. 52
start assistance......................... 124
symbols on the battery.............. 376
warning symbols......................... 376
Bioethanol E85.......................... 319
Blind spot (BLIS)......................... 204
BLIS........................................ 203
Bluetooth®
    handsfree.............................. 283
    media................................... 280
    microphone off...................... 286
    streaming audio..................... 280
    transfer call to mobile........... 286
Bonnet, opening........................ 359
Brake and clutch fluid................. 364
Brake light.............................. 95
Brakes...................................... 141
    anti-lock braking system, ABS.... 141
    brake light.......................... 95
    brake system........................ 141
    electric parking brake............. 145
    Emergency Brake Assistance, EBA .. 141
    emergency brake lights............. 95
    filling brake fluid............... 364
    handbrake............................ 145
    symbols in the combined instrument panel........ 142
Bulbs, see Lighting.................. 366

C

Calls
    incoming................................ 285
    operation................................ 285
Camera sensor......................... 177, 186
Car care.................................. 392
Car care, leather upholstery........ 394
Cargo area
    cargo cover.......................... 328
    lighting............................... 97
    loading................................ 322
    mounting points...................... 323
    safety grille.......................... 327
    safety net................................ 326
Cargo cover............................ 328
Car upholstery.......................... 394
Car wash.................................. 392
Catalytic converter.................... 318
    recovery.............................. 336
CD........................................ 273
Centre console........................ 213
Chassis settings....................... 247
Checking and topping up the coolant.. 363
Checking the engine oil level........ 360
Children.................................. 30
    child safety locks.................. 37
    child seats and side airbags...... 24
    location in the car................. 30
    safety.................................. 30
Child safety locks..................... 62
Child seat................................ 30
Child seats.............................. 30
    integrated two-stage booster cushion. 35
    ISOFIX fixture system for child seats... 38
    recommended.......................... 31
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Alphabetical Index</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>size classes for child seats with the ISOFIX fixture system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>upper mounting points for child seats</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cigarette lighter socket</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>City Safety™</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cleaning automatic car washes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>car wash</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rims</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seatbelts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>upholstery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clean Zone Interior Package (CZIP)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Climate control general</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sensors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clock, setting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CO₂ emissions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Collision</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Collision warning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Collision warning system radar sensor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Collision Warning with Auto Brake*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colour code, paint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Combined instrument panel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comfort inside the passenger compartment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compass calibration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Condensation in headlamps controls centre console</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Controls centre console</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Controls, lights</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Control symbols</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cooling system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crash, see Collision</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cruise control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CZIP (Clear Zone Interior Package)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Defroster</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diesel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diesel particle filter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dipstick, electronic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Direction indicators</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disengaging the gear selector inhibitor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display lighting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Distance Warning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dolby Surround Pro Logic II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Door mirrors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Driver Alert Control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Driver Alert System</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Driving cooling system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>with the tailgate open</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>with trailer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Driving in water</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Driving with a trailer towball load</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>towing capacity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DSTC, see also Stability control system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DVD</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ECC, electronic climate control 224
EcoGuide 73
Economical driving 314
ECO pressure 348, 418
Eco Start/Stop DRIVE 134
Electrical socket 250
cargo area 325
front seat 250
Electric parking brake 145
low battery voltage 145
releasing automatically 146
releasing manually 146
Emergency equipment
warning triangle 349
Emergency puncture repair 350
Emissions of carbon dioxide 321
Engine
overheating 329
starting 118
Engine block heater 122
fuel-driven 233
Engine braking, automatic 143
Engine compartment
coolant 363
oil 360
overview 359
power steering fluid 364
Engine oil 360, 410
adverse driving conditions 410
capacities 410
filter 360
oil grade 410
Engine specifications 408
Environmental labelling, FSC, owner's manual 11
Error messages
Adaptive Cruise Control 169
Driver Alert Control 192
Lane Departure Warning 195
see Messages and symbols 147, 169
Error messages in BLIS 206
Error messages in Distance Alert 174
ERS - Remote Start 119
ETC, electronic temperature control 225
Expectant mothers, seatbelt 17
External dimensions 402
Fan 227
Fault tracing for the camera sensor 177, 186
First aid equipment 349
First aid kit 349
Flexifuel adaptation 123
Fluids, capacities 413
Fluids and oils 413
Fog lamps
rear 95
Foot brake 141
FOUR-C – Active chassis 247
FSC, environmental labelling 11
Fuel
fuel consumption 416
fuel economy 348
fuel filter 320
Fuse box 380
glovebox 385, 387
Fuses 380
box in cargo area 389
changing 380
cold zone 390
general................................................ 380
relay/fuse box in engine compartment.......... 381
Start/Stop........................................... 390
Fuse table
  fuses in engine compartment................. 382

G
Gearbox.............................................. 126
  automatic....................................... 127
  manual.......................................... 126
Gear selector inhibitor.......................... 130
Gear selector inhibitor, mechanical disen-
gagement............................................. 130
Geartronic.......................................... 128
Glass
  laminated/reinforced.......................... 105
Global opening.................................... 221
Glovebox............................................ 249
  locking.......................................... 58
Gross vehicle weight............................ 404
GSI - Gear selector assistance............... 127

H
Handbrake......................................... 145
Hazard warning flashers......................... 95
HDC.................................................. 143
Headlamp levelling................................ 91
Headlamp pattern, adjusting..................... 98
Headlamp pattern adjustment
  Active Bending Lights......................... 99
Headlamps......................................... 366
Headphones
  battery replacement........................... 304
  wireless....................................... 303
Headphones socket.............................. 258, 302, 304
Head restraint
  centre seat, rear............................. 85
  lowering...................................... 85, 86
Heated washer nozzles.......................... 103
Heating............................................ 228
  rearview and door mirrors.................. 108
  rear window................................. 108
  seats.......................................... 225
Heat-reflecting windscreen...................... 105
High engine temperature........................ 329
High-pressure headlamp washing............... 103
Hill Descent Control............................ 143
HomeLink®...................................... 149
Home safe lighting.............................. 98
Hoot............................................... 88
Horn............................................... 88

I
IAQS – Interior Air Quality System............ 222
IC – Inflatable Curtain......................... 25
Ignition keys...................................... 81
Ignition positions................................ 81
Immobiliser....................................... 45
Indicator lamps, PCC.............................. 47
Inflatable curtain.................................. 25
Information button, PCC....................... 47
Information display.............................. 71
Infotainment system............................. 254
  menus.......................................... 257
  overview...................................... 254
  source buttons............................... 255
  voice control................................. 292
Inlaid mats........................................ 249
Instrument lighting, see Lighting............ 91
Instrument overview
   left-hand drive............................... 68
   right-hand drive............................. 70
Instruments and controls.................... 68
Interior lighting, see Lighting.............. 96
Interior rearview mirror....................... 109
   automatic dimming.......................... 109
Intermittent wiping............................ 102
iPod®, connection............................... 277

J
Jack.................................................. 345
Journey statistics............................... 246

K
Kerb weight........................................ 404
Key................................................... 44
Key blade.......................................... 48
Keyless drive................................. 54, 118
Keyless start (keyless drive)............... 54, 118

Keypad in the steering wheel............... 88, 159, 214, 255
Key positions.................................... 81

L
Labels............................................... 400
Laminated glass............................... 105
Lamps, see Lighting............................ 366
Lane Departure Control....................... 194
Laser sensor..................................... 178
Leather upholstery, washing instructions 394
Lighting........................................... 366
   Active Xenon headlamps.................... 94
   approach light, duration.................. 46, 98
   automatic lighting, passenger com-
   partment........................................ 97
   bulbs, specifications...................... 371
   controls........................................ 96
   daytime running lights.................... 92
   display lighting............................ 91
   headlamp levelling........................ 91
   home safe lighting......................... 98
   in passenger compartment................ 96
   instrument lighting....................... 91
   main/dipped beam........................... 92
   position/parking lamps.................... 91
   rear fog lamp............................... 95
   tunnel detection............................ 92
Lighting, bulb replacement.................. 366
   bulb holder, rear, direction indicators. 369
   cargo area..................................... 370
   dipped beam halogen....................... 367
   direction indicators....................... 368
   main beam, Xenon lamp.................... 368
   main beam halogen......................... 368
   number plate lighting..................... 370
   side marker lamps......................... 369
   vanity mirror............................... 370
Light switches.................................... 90
Loading
   cargo area..................................... 322
   general........................................ 322
   mounting points............................ 323
   roof load...................................... 322
Lock confirmation ................................ 44
Locking/unlocking
   inside......................................... 57
   tailgate........................................ 58
Locks
  automatic locking................................. 57
  locking.................................................. 57
  unlocking.............................................. 57
Lubricants.............................................. 413
Lubricants, capacities.............................. 413

Menus/functions........................................ 215
Menus and messages.................................. 210
Menu structures RSE.................................. 308, 309
Menu system MY CAR.................................... 213
Messages and symbols
  Adaptive Cruise Control.......................... 169
  Collision Warning with Auto Brake.............. 179, 187
  Distance Alert........................................ 174
  Driver Alert Control............................... 192
  Lane Departure Warning........................... 195
Messages in BLIS........................................ 206
Messages in the combined instrument panel........ 211
Messages in the information display............... 155
Meters
  fuel gauge............................................. 72
  speedometer.......................................... 72
  tachometer............................................ 72
Microphone.............................................. 283
Misting.................................................... 229
  attending to the windows........................ 221
  condensation in headlamps....................... 392
  remove with the air vents........................ 231
  timer function...................................... 230
Mobile phone
  connect............................................... 284
  handsfree............................................ 283
  register phone..................................... 284
  voice control........................................ 292
Mood lighting........................................... 97
MY CAR.................................................... 213

Oil, see also Engine oil.............................. 410
Oil level low............................................ 360
Overheating............................................. 329
Owner's manual, environmental labelling.. 11

PACOS....................................................... 22
PACOS, switch........................................... 22
Paddle on the steering wheel....................... 88
Paintwork
  colour code.......................................... 396
  damage and touch-up................................ 396
Panel lighting.......................................... 91
Panic function ............................................ 46
Park assist camera .................................. 200
Parking assistance ................................... 197
parking assistance sensors ................ 199
Parking brake ......................................... 145
Parking heater
  battery and fuel.................................. 233
general.............................................. 233
parking on a hill.................................. 233
time setting........................................ 236
Passenger compartment......................... 248
Passenger compartment filter............... 221
Passenger compartment heater
  fuel-driven....................................... 233
PCC – Personal Car Communicator
  functions......................................... 45
range............................................... 46, 47
Pedestrian protection.............................. 181
Petrol grade........................................... 318
Phone
  connect.......................................... 284
handsfree......................................... 283
incoming calls................................... 285
making calls..................................... 285
phone book....................................... 287
phone book, shortcut........................... 287
receiving a call.................................. 286
register phone................................. 284
voice control.................................. 292
Pinch protection, sunroof...................... 113
Polishing........................................... 393
Position/parking lamps ......................... 91
Power guide........................................ 73
Power seat......................................... 84
Powershift gearbox ............................... 131, 335
Power sunroof...................................... 112
Power windows.................................... 105
Privacy locking.................................... 50
Puncture, see Tyres................................ 345
Queue Assist........................................ 166
Queue Assistant................................... 166
Radar sensor........................................ 161
  limitations...................................... 167
Radio ................................................ 266
  AM/FM........................................... 266
  DAB............................................. 270
Rain sensor......................................... 102
Rear bulbs
  location......................................... 369
Rear control panel
  audio system.................................. 258
Rear-seat entertainment....................... 302
Rear TV screens.................................. 302
Rearview and door mirrors
  compass......................................... 110
  door............................................. 107
  electrically retractable..................... 108
  heating......................................... 108
  interior........................................ 109
Rear window, defrosting....................... 108
Recirculation...................................... 230
Recommendations during driving........... 314
Recommended child seats, table .......... 31
Recovery........................................... 336
Refrigerant............................................... 365
Refuelling.................................................. 317
  fuel cap.............................................. 317
  fuel filler flap, electrical opening........ 317
  fuel filler flap, manual opening.......... 317
  refuelling........................................ 317
Relay/fuse box, see Fuses...................... 380
Remote control ....................................... 300
  battery replacement ........................... 301
Remote control, HomeLink®
  programmable .................................... 149
Remote control key.................................... 44
  battery replacement ............................ 52
  detachable key blade........................... 48
  functions.......................................... 45
  range............................................... 46
Remote control key system, type approval.... 420
Remote Start - ERS................................. 119
Resetting, trip meter............................. 241, 244, 245
Resetting the door mirrors..................... 108
Resetting the power windows................... 107
Retractable power door mirrors............... 108
Reverse gear inhibitor........................... 126

Rims
  cleaning........................................... 393
Road sign information.......................... 156
Roof load, max. weight .......................... 404
RSE - Rear Seat Entertainment system...... 302
Rustproofing........................................ 394

S
Safety grille ......................................... 327
Safety mode.......................................... 29
Safety net........................................... 326
Seat, see Seats................................... 83
Seatbelt
  rear seat.......................................... 17
  seatbelt tensioner............................. 18
Seatbelt reminder.................................. 17
Seatbelts........................................... 83
Seats................................................ 83
  head restraints, rear.......................... 85
  heating.......................................... 225
  lowering the front backrest............... 83
  lowering the rear backrest............... 86
  power seats.................................... 84
  ventilated front seats...................... 226
Securing loads (Loading)........................ 323
Sensus............................................... 80
Service position.................................. 372
Service programme.............................. 358
Set time interval................................. 172
Side airbags....................................... 24
Signal input, external......................... 254, 277
SIPS bags............................................ 24
Soot filter.......................................... 320
Soot filter full.................................... 320
Spare wheel........................................ 345
  temporary spare.............................. 345
Spin control........................................ 154
Spin control function........................... 154
Stability and traction control system...... 154
Stability system.................................. 154
Stains............................................... 394
Start assistance................................... 124
Steering force, speed related................ 247
Steering force level, see Steering force... 247
Steering lock...................................... 119
Steering wheel........................................... 88
  keypad.......................... 88, 159, 214, 255
  keypad, adaptive cruise control......... 163
  paddle................................................... 88
  steering wheel adjustment............. 88
Stone chips and scratches...................... 396
Storage spaces in the passenger compartment.................................................. 248
Sunroof
  opening and closing............. 112, 113
  pinch protection..................... 113
  sunscreen................................. 113
  ventilation position............... 112
Sunscreen, sunroof.......................... 113
Surround.......................................... 254, 260
Symbols................................................... 155
  indicator symbols.................. 75
  warning symbols........................... 75
Symbols and messages
  Adaptive Cruise Control.............. 169
  Collision Warning with Auto
  Brake................................. 179, 187
  Distance Alert.......................... 174
  Driver Alert Control................... 192
  Lane Departure Warning................ 195
  Trip computer............................ 239
  Trip meter..................................... 78
  Trip meter, resetting.............. 241, 244, 245
Troubleshooting
  Adaptive Cruise Control.............. 169
  TSA - trailer stability assist ........ 154, 334
  Tunnel detection................................ 92
  TV........................................................ 296
  Type approval, remote control key system............................................. 420
  Type designation.......................... 400
Tyres
  direction of rotation....................... 340
  driving characteristics................. 340
  maintenance..................................... 340
  pressure........................................... 348, 418
  puncture repair.......................... 350
  specifications.................................. 343, 418
  speed ratings................................. 343
  tread wear indicators.................. 341
  winter tyres................................. 342
  Trailer stability assist .............. 154
  Trailer Stability Assist................. 334
  Transmission...................................... 126
  Transponder.................................... 105
  Temperature........................................ 221
  Temperature control.................... 228
  Total airing function................... 58, 221
  Towbar
    detachable, attachment .............. 332
    detachable, removal ................. 333
  Towbar, see Towing equipment........... 330
  Towing............................................... 335
  Towing eye.......................................... 336
  Towing capacity.............................. 404
  Towing equipment............................ 330
  specifications.................................. 331
  Towing eye.......................................... 336
  Trailer............................................... 329
  cable.................................................. 329
  driving with a trailer................. 329
  snaking............................................. 334
  Trailer............................................... 345
### U

- Unlocking from the inside ........................................ 57
- Unlocking from the outside .................................... 57
- USB, connection ............................................... 277

### V

- Vanity mirror .................................................. 97, 250
- Ventilation ..................................................... 222
- Vibration damper ............................................. 330
- Voice control, mobile phone............................ 292
- Volvo Sensus .................................................. 80

### W

- Warning lamp
  - adaptive cruise control .................................... 161
  - collision warning system .............................. 183
  - stability and traction control system ............ 154
- Warning lamps
  - airbags SRS .............................................. 77
  - alternator not charging ................................ 77
  - fault in brake system .................................. 77
- Warning sound
  - collision warning system ................................ 183
- Warning symbol, airbag system .......................... 19
- Warning symbols .......................................... 75
- Warning triangle ............................................. 349
- Washer fluid, filling ...................................... 373
- Washer nozzles, heated ................................... 103
- Washers
  - rear window ............................................. 103
  - washer fluid, filling .................................... 373
  - windscreen ................................................ 103
- Water and dirt-repellent coating ........................ 105
- Water-repellent surface, cleaning .................... 393
- Waxing .......................................................... 393
- Weights
  - kerb weight ................................................ 404
- Wheels
  - changing ................................................... 345
  - installation ............................................... 346
  - rims .......................................................... 341
  - low oil pressure ........................................... 77
  - parking brake applied .................................. 77
  - seatbelt reminder ......................................... 77
  - warning ...................................................... 77
- Warning sound
  - collision warning system ................................ 183
- Warning symbol, airbag system .......................... 19
- Warning symbols ............................................. 75
- Warning triangle ............................................. 349
- Washer fluid, filling ...................................... 373
- Washer nozzles, heated ................................... 103
- Washers
  - rear window ............................................. 103
  - washer fluid, filling .................................... 373
  - windscreen ................................................ 103
- Water and dirt-repellent coating ........................ 105
- Water-repellent surface, cleaning .................... 393
- Waxing .......................................................... 393
- Weights
  - kerb weight ................................................ 404
- Wheels
  - changing ................................................... 345
  - installation ............................................... 346
  - rims .......................................................... 341
  - snow chains ................................................. 343
  - spare wheel ................................................ 345
- Wheels and tyres ............................................ 340
- Whiplash injury, WHIPS .................................. 26
- WHIPS
  - child seat/booster cushion .............................. 26
  - whiplash ................................................... 26
- Windows, rearview and door mirrors ................. 105
- Windscreen
  - Heating ...................................................... 108, 229
- Windscreen washing ....................................... 103
- Windscreen wipers ......................................... 102
  - rain sensor ................................................ 102
- Winter driving ............................................... 315
- Winter tyres .................................................. 342
- Wiper blades .................................................. 372
  - changing ................................................... 372
  - cleaning ..................................................... 373
  - replacing, rear window ................................ 373
  - service position ......................................... 372
- Wipers and washing ......................................... 102
- Wireless headphones ....................................... 303